



*W. W. ...*

*...*

35603

LIBRARY OF THE  
University of California.

CIRCULATING BRANCH.

Return in two-weeks or a week before the end of the term.

849  
F667  
P

1835

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

7

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



A

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

OF THE

GERMAN LANGUAGE.

---

BY CHARLES FOLLEN,  
PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE  
IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY.

---

THIRD EDITION.



BOSTON:  
HILLIARD, GRAY, AND COMPANY.  
1835.

Entered according to the act of Congress, in the year 1832,  
by HILLIARD, GRAY, AND CO.  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Massachusetts.

35603

---

CAMBRIDGE:

CHARLES FOLSOM, PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY.

## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

THE language, of which this grammar contains the practical rules, is frequently designated by the name of the High German. This epithet was originally applied to the language in order to distinguish it from the Low German, which comprehends all those dialects that are spoken in the level countries of the north of Germany. But as the language which is called the High German, differs from the dialects of the south of Germany, as well as from those of the north, this name is now applied exclusively to that general language, which is spoken and written by all wellbred Germans. Accordingly it is more properly called the *German language*, without any other epithet.

Among the various dialects which have existed and still exist in different parts of Germany, there is a characteristic difference between those of upper and of lower Germany. The dialects of the north of Germany are in general softer than those of the south, and the vowels are more protracted; while the southern dialects are characterized by greater variety and energy. In all these various dialects we discover the distinct traces of one common and original language, of which each dialect may be considered a more or less perfect copy. But of the time when this original language may have been used as the common instrument of speech by the whole German race, we have as little knowledge, as of the primeval history of the nation itself. If we examine the history of Germany, and particularly the remaining documents of its language from the fourth century to the fifteenth, we find that at different periods one of the various dialects was more than the other employed for literary productions. Such

a temporary ascendancy was owing partly to the fact, that sometimes one of the German tribes happened to possess a greater number of superior minds, and partly to political circumstances. As Germany was an elective kingdom, its government sometimes devolved on men of different German tribes, who had it in their power to increase the influence of their native dialect, particularly if they promoted literature and science. Thus in the reign of the emperors from the house of Hohenstaufen, the *Suabian* dialect gained the ascendancy, and became the classical language of the polite or, as it is commonly called, the romantic literature of Germany, in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

In the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, when the spirit of poetry died away, and writings in prose increased, the language also assumed a more prosaic character. This change was effected by various causes, as, by the language of the laws or customs, which were at that time committed to writing; moreover by translations, and novels, and particularly by the writings of those religious philosophers, who are known by the name of *mystics*. Tauler, who lived in the fourteenth century, and whose works still belong to the most interesting documents of ancient German prose, is particularly celebrated among the German mystics. These thinkers in theology, although they were frequently led into error by their imperfect knowledge of natural objects and an aversion to the examination of facts, on the other hand distinguished themselves by their independence of established prejudices, and by intense thought, by which they strove to sound the essence of religion. Their merits in developing the German language cannot be doubted. They arose in different parts of Germany, and seem to have intentionally avoided such provincial expressions, as might have prevented their writings from being generally diffused; and these writings could not but impress the minds of others with the difference between the general substance and the local ingredients of the lan-



guage. Thus one writing corrected another, and the language gained in generality, as well as in philosophical and grammatical exactness; while it lost by degrees its ancient poetical flow and richness.

This prosaic language, thus formed, is essentially the same which prevailed at the time of the Reformation in the sixteenth century, and which at present, with few alterations, is spoken and written by all wellbred Germans. It is a false notion which was first spread by Adelung,\* that Luther, in his writings, and particularly in his translation of the Bible, availed himself of his native dialect of the Electorate of Saxony, which by the signal success of his books became the general language of Germany. Luther cannot be considered as the father of the general language of his country; no more than he can be regarded as the father of the Reformation. He found them both already existing, and promoted and modified them according to his own views. With respect to the language, he says himself, "I have not a distinct, particular, and peculiar kind of German, but I use the *common German language*, in order that the inhabitants of both the *upper* and *lower* countries may understand me." But even without these express words of Luther, the above statement would be sufficiently evident from a considerable number of books which were published before, and at the same time with those of Luther, in all of which we find essentially the same language used for various subjects; as, for example, by the painter Albrecht Dürer for laying down the principles of geometry, drawing, and fortification. But the merit of Luther consists in his having written the common language with particular propriety and grammatical precision, and in having extended it more than any other author among the people at large.

---

\* This error has lately been repeated by Noehden in the Preface to his Grammar.

The poetic powers of this common language, which had been formed principally by prose writers, were developed by some eminent minds in the seventeenth century, among whom we mention particularly Frederic a Spee, and Martin Opitz, the founder of the Silesian school of poets. But in the course of the seventeenth and the beginning of the eighteenth century, the language was adulterated by French expressions and modes of speaking. From this debasement the language, as well as the literature of Germany, was redeemed by the great authors who have distinguished themselves during the last eighty years. They have shown its sufficiency for every branch of literature and science, and have restored to it that most precious of all its properties, the power of being developed and increased out of its own substance.

The works of these authors, the history and the genius of the language, and the manner in which it is used by wellbred people in different parts of Germany, are the true standards for speaking and writing it correctly. There is no part of Germany where the whole population speak the language correctly. Neither the public of Dresden or Meissen, nor that of Hanover or Göttingen, can be looked to as filling the place of an academy of the classical German language. Slight shades of provincial dialects enter into the manner of speaking even of the best educated persons. Some faults in pronunciation, which are peculiar to different parts of Germany, may be mentioned here. Sometimes *b* is confounded with *p*, and *d* with *t*; *ä* and *ö* are pronounced like *e*, and *ü* like *i*; *g* in the beginning of words is pronounced by some Germans like *k*, and by others like *j*. Sometimes *s* before *t* and *p* is pronounced like *sh* in English; and *sch* when it stands before a liquid consonant is sounded like *s*; final syllables in *e* (with or without other letters) are pronounced too short, and sometimes with a nasal sound. A gross grammatical fault consists in using the accusative

instead of the dative, and the dative instead of the accusative case.

After these observations on the history and actual state of the German language, I will add a few on German grammar. It is reported of Charlemagne, that among other plans for the advancement of knowledge he conceived also that of inducing the learned men of that age to compose a grammar of the German language. But this project remained unexecuted. Some German grammars were published in the sixteenth century; but none of great eminence until the eighteenth. During the first half of the eighteenth century, *Gotsched* wrote his grammar, which held the highest rank till, in the last half of the same century, that of *Adelung* appeared. Although the bad taste of *Gotsched* did great injury to the literature of his country, yet his merit as a German grammarian cannot be denied. He was however far surpassed by *Adelung*, the author of the most complete dictionary of the German language in German. After that of *Adelung* a great number of German grammars were published in Germany, of which I shall notice three, viz. the historical grammar by *Grimm*, the grammar by *Harnisch*, and that by *Heinsius*. The grammar of *Grimm* exhibits a profound grammatical inquiry into the gradual formation of the German language. The grammar of *Harnisch* is characterized by its metaphysical investigation of the German language; it abounds in deep and ingenious remarks, but sometimes runs into a sort of philological mysticism. The grammar of *Heinsius*, although it contains many general observations on the philosophical importance of each part of speech, is chiefly of a practical nature, and has on this account been introduced as a guide into most German schools.

With respect to German grammars written in foreign languages, I shall mention only two which are commonly used in England, and which have been employed in composing this grammar. I mean the grammar of *Noehden* (the fifth

edition of which was published in 1827), and that of *Rowbotham* (printed in 1824). These grammars contain many valuable rules and useful directions, most of which are derived from German grammars, particularly that of Adelung. Noehden indeed not unfrequently pretends to originality; but those passages of his grammar in which he speaks as the philosopher of the German language, and even those practical parts which he most boasts of, as being of his own invention, are certainly the weakest in his book. While the rules are better expressed in the grammar of Noehden than in that of Rowbotham, the latter is more useful on account of the exercises which are joined to each rule. The principal defect of Rowbotham consists in particularizing too much; of which method the natural consequence is, that many cases which belong together under the same general rule remain undecided.

In the Grammar which I now offer to the public, I have endeavoured to preserve all that is valuable in the two last mentioned grammars. I have altered wherever I thought it necessary, and will mention here some of the most important changes that have been made.

1. In the third chapter of Part First, Book First, I have tried to arrange the sounds of the German language in their natural order. In this arrangement I was guided by the excellent treatise of Mr. Duponceau on *Phonology*,\* in which he has laid down general directions for analyzing the sounds of every language, and then applied them to the English. In a few instances I have ventured to differ from the opinion of my learned friend, particularly with respect to the distinction between palatals and linguals, and in regard to the consonants *d* and *t*, which I have not ranked with the lingua-dentals, or dentals (as the grammarians commonly do), but with the palatals.

---

\* Transactions of the American Philosophical Society, at Philadelphia. Vol. I. New Series, No. xvii.



I have thought it best to found the distinction between palatals and linguals on the simple fact that some consonants are formed by a particular part of the palate being *touched* by the tongue, while others are produced by the position of the tongue when brought *near* the palate without touching it. Accordingly *l* and *n* have been ranked with the palatals, and *r* with the linguals. In regard to *d* and *t*, it may be observed, that they are pronounced as well by persons who have lost their teeth, as by those who retain them. The tongue may indeed touch the teeth in sounding these consonants, but if this circumstance had any influence upon their pronunciation, it would add a hissing sound to that of *d* and *t*, and consequently spoil the utterance of these letters. Accordingly I have ranked *d* and *t* among the palatal consonants.

The limits of this grammar have not allowed me to give more than a general analysis of the sounds of the German language; while a more minute investigation would have led to more satisfactory results.\*

2. In representing the German declensions (which have cost so much trouble to all German grammarians) I have been principally guided by Heinsius, whose arrangement I have endeavoured to render more complete and systematic; so that there should remain no exception to the principles laid down.†

---

\* English students of the German language, as well as German students of the English, may be surprised to find, that the only sound which Walker, in his *Critical Pronouncing Dictionary*, characterizes as a German sound (I mean the *broad German a*, as he calls it), does not exist in the German language; that this sound is confined to some dialects, and is never heard from the mouth of a wellbred German.

† There is no part of Noehden's *Grammar* of which the author boasts more than of his arrangement of the German declensions. To satisfy the reader in regard to the foundation of these pretensions, it is sufficient to observe, that Noehden mentions only one

I have added a mode of signifying by two letters the manner in which each noun is declined; which method I should think would be of still greater use to the student, if in the dictionary also every noun were marked in this manner.

3. With respect to the German verb, I have thought it best to treat first of its original parts, i. e. of those which are formed by the addition of letters to the radical syllables; and afterwards of those supplementary parts of the verb which are formed by means of auxiliary verbs. This distribution is evidently most congenial with the real nature of the German verb and its inflections; but it presents the additional advantage, that the distinction between regular and irregular verbs can, according to this method, be placed at the head of this doctrine; instead of having the regular forms of the verb preceded by the irregular auxiliary verbs. Moreover this difference between regular and irregular verbs affects only the original parts of the verb, and has no influence upon those, which are formed by means of auxiliary verbs. But according to the common mode of mixing together the original and supplementary tenses (in order to make the German verb appear as complete as the Latin or Greek verb), the distinction between regular and irregular verbs is carried also through those parts of the verb which are not at all affected by this difference.

4. As the German language in this country, as well as in England, is studied by many persons particularly on account of the polite literature of Germany, I have wished to contribute to the enjoyment of lovers of poetry by giving (in the Third Book) as full an account of German versification as the limits of this elementary work would admit. I have availed myself of the opinions of Voss and Schlegel on German prosody, as

---

characteristic of the fourth declension, viz. that it "comprehends all those masculines and neuters which are not included in the two foregoing declensions."

far as they coincided with those to which I was led in pursuing this study with particular and continued interest.

To facilitate the *pronunciation*, I have marked the principal accent on every word in this grammar; and experience has already convinced me of the eminent usefulness of this method. This idea was suggested to me by my friend, Mr. Folsom, to whose excellent judgment I am gratefully indebted for a great number of valuable suggestions in the definition of principles and choice of expressions.

In regard to *orthography*, which in some points is a matter of dispute among German writers, I have in general followed the principle of writing the words as they are pronounced, — a principle, which is generally acknowledged as correct, though with more or fewer exceptions. I have not adopted any mode of spelling in which I am not supported by some distinguished modern author. With regard to the letter  $\eta$  (*y*), and the compound  $\text{ß}$  (*sz*), which some authors use more or less frequently, while others entirely reject them, I have made a few remarks on the former letter, on pages 6 and 8. As to  $\text{ß}$ , it is to be observed, that whenever the  $\text{z}$  (*z*) modifies the sound of the  $\text{f}$  (*s*), it is not pronounced as  $\text{z}$ , but as an additional  $\text{f}$ , rendering the sound stronger and more acute. Accordingly in this Grammar, whenever the  $\text{z}$  has no effect on the pronunciation of the  $\text{f}$ , the  $\text{z}$  is omitted; but whenever it modifies the pronunciation of that letter,  $\text{ff}$  is used instead of  $\text{ß}$ , except at the end of words, where  $\text{ß}$  is retained instead of  $\text{ff}$ , in the same manner as  $\text{ß}$  is used instead of  $\text{f}$ .\*

I will conclude this preface by adding a few observations on the manner in which I think this (or any other) grammar may be used to the greatest advantage by beginners. The

---

\* The  $\text{ß}$  seemed preferable to  $\text{ff}$ , which is used by Harnish, simply because the latter has rather an unusual typographical appearance. — In those German writings which are printed in Roman type, *ss* is generally used instead of *sz*.

pronunciation ought, of course, to be first attended to.\* Then the beginner should acquaint himself thoroughly with all the ordinary inflections of articles, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs. I do not think it advisable to attend in this first study of the grammar to all the principles and minute observations which are contained in those chapters in which the grammatical forms are stated. It is sufficient, that the learner should be able to translate correctly and easily all the exercises which are added to illustrate those forms. — After having acquired this elementary knowledge, he ought to begin to translate some easy German book. For this purpose I published about two years ago a collection of extracts from the best modern German authors, under the title, “*Deutsches Lesebuch für Anfänger,*” *German Reader for Beginners*, Cambridge, University Press, 1826. This collection was made with the advice of my respected friend, Mr. Ticknor, who, being at the head of the department of modern languages in Harvard College, has introduced and most effectually promoted the study of the German language and literature at this University.

As the student is making progress in translating, he will himself feel the necessity of a more minute study of grammar. This study ought to consist, partly in the teacher’s referring the learner to that particular passage in the grammar which will explain any difficulty he has met with in translating, — and partly in a gradual, thorough study of the grammar from the beginning to the end. During this study, the translating should be continued, and be accompanied with exercises in writing, in addition to those contained in the grammar.

After having in this preface offered some views of the history and actual state of the German language and German

---

\* A correct pronunciation cannot be acquired by self-instruction; since all the means which are used to explain the sounds of one language by those of another, cannot effect more than an approximation to the true pronunciation.

grammar in general, and of the characteristics of *this* Grammar in particular, I present it to the public, with the assurance, that its severest critic cannot be more fully convinced of its imperfections, than

THE AUTHOR.

*Harvard College, 10 May, 1828.*

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

---

THE increased number of students of the German language in this country has called for a new edition of this Grammar. In preparing it I have availed myself of the suggestions of others, as well as of those of my own experience in teaching, to improve the work, or at least to correct its defects. Every part of the Grammar in its present form will, I hope, bear witness to the earnest endeavour of the author to make it a more thorough, correct, and practical book. In the "Elements," the German Verb in particular has been presented and explained in a somewhat different and, it is believed, more satisfactory manner. In the "Syntax," the combination of that part of it which treats of the *agreement* and *government*, with that which teaches the *arrangement* of words, will certainly meet with the approbation of instructors.

Before this edition of the Grammar could be prepared, a new edition of the "German Reader," was called for, and published, in German type, carefully revised and improved.\* About the same time an excellent collection of German and English Phrases and Dialogues was published by Mr. F. Graeter.† This book has ably supplied a want which was equally felt by teachers and students.

Some alterations in this edition have been suggested by a perusal of the German Grammar of C. F. Becker (published

---

\* German Reader for Beginners, — *Deutsches Lesebuch für Anfänger*. Boston. Hilliard, Gray, Little, & Wilkins. 1831.

† German and English Phrases and Dialogues, &c., collected by Francis Graeter. Boston. Hilliard, Gray, Little, & Wilkins. 1831.

in London, 1830), a work, which must be interesting and useful to those who, having acquired a competent knowledge of German, wish to extend their inquiries further, to the whole structure and philosophy of the language.

C. FOLLEN.

*Cambridge, 10 Dec. 1831.*

## PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

---

IN preparing the third edition of this Grammar, I have endeavoured to render it more valuable by such improvements as could be derived from a constant philosophical investigation of the language, combined with daily experience in teaching, from a continual study of the wants of learners, and from the observations of other instructors. Those who may take the trouble to compare this with the previous edition, will find here a number of corrections, and additional rules and illustrations, which I trust will prove useful both to students and teachers.

I am now preparing for the press the Gospel of St. John in German, with a literal interlinear translation for beginners, on a plan somewhat different from the Hamiltonian method. I hope that this book, together with the Grammar and Reader, will form a sufficient preparatory course to enable the faithful student to enter upon a thorough and extensive study of German literature.

C. FOLLEN.

*Cambridge, July, 1834.*



# CONTENTS.

---

## BOOK I. ELEMENTS.

### PART I. ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION.

	Page
CHAPTER I. THE ALPHABET . . . . .	1
CHAPTER II. USE OF CAPITAL LETTERS. . . . .	3
CHAPTER III. GENERAL RULES OF PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	4
CHAPTER IV. THE SOUNDS OF THE LANGUAGE . . . . .	4
§ 1. VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS . . . . .	4
§ 2. CONSONANTS . . . . .	7

### PART II. PARTS OF SPEECH.

CHAPTER I. ARTICLE . . . . .	11
CHAPTER II. SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN . . . . .	12
§ 1. GENDER . . . . .	12
§ 2. DECLENSION : . . . . .	13
A. <i>Declension of Common Nouns</i> . . . . .	14
B. <i>Declension of Proper Nouns</i> . . . . .	25
CHAPTER III. ADJECTIVES . . . . .	34
§ 1. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	34
§ 2. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	44

CHAPTER IV. NUMERALS . . . . .	48
I. <i>Cardinal Numbers</i> . . . . .	48
II. <i>Ordinal Numbers</i> . . . . .	50
III. <i>Numerals of Proportion</i> . . . . .	52
IV. <i>Numerals of Distribution</i> . . . . .	52
V. <i>Collective Numbers</i> . . . . .	53
CHAPTER V. PRONOUNS . . . . .	54
§ 1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	54
§ 2. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	56
§ 3. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	59
§ 4. RELATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	61
§ 5. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	62
§ 6. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS . . . . .	63
§ 7. SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	65
CHAPTER VI. VERBS . . . . .	69
<i>General Remarks</i> . . . . .	69
§ 1. REGULAR VERBS . . . . .	72
§ 2. IRREGULAR VERBS . . . . .	74
§ 3. MIXED VERBS . . . . .	75
§ 4. REFLECTIVE VERBS . . . . .	98
§ 5. IMPERSONAL VERBS . . . . .	101
§ 6. COMPOUND VERBS . . . . .	104
§ 7. AUXILIARY VERBS . . . . .	114
A. <i>Supplementary Tenses of Active and             Neuter Verbs</i> . . . . .	127
B. <i>Supplementary Tenses of Reflective             Verbs</i> . . . . .	136
C. <i>Supplementary Tenses of Impersonal             Verbs</i> . . . . .	137
D. <i>Supplementary Tenses of Compound             Verbs</i> . . . . .	138
§ 8. PASSIVE VERBS . . . . .	139

CHAPTER VII. ADVERBS . . . . .	150
§ 1. DIFFERENT KINDS OF ADVERBS . . . . .	151
§ 2. FORMATION OF ADVERBS . . . . .	156
A. <i>Adverbs derived from Nouns or</i> <i>Adjectives</i> . . . . .	156
B. <i>Compound Adverbs</i> . . . . .	157
§ 3. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . . . .	159
CHAPTER VIII. PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	159
CHAPTER IX. CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	160
CHAPTER X. INTERJECTIONS . . . . .	161
CHAPTER XI. ON THE MODE OF FORMING NEW WORDS	161
§ 1. MODES OF ENRICHING THE LANGUAGE FROM WITHIN ITSELF . . . . .	162
§ 2. INTRODUCTION OF FOREIGN WORDS INTO THE LANGUAGE . . . . .	170

## BOOK II. SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I. THE ARTICLE . . . . .	174
CHAPTER II. NOUNS . . . . .	180
CHAPTER III. ADJECTIVES . . . . .	195
CHAPTER IV. PRONOUNS . . . . .	201
CHAPTER V. VERBS . . . . .	210
§ 1. AGREEMENT AND GOVERNMENT . . . . .	210
A. <i>Persons and Numbers</i> . . . . .	210
B. <i>Tenses</i> . . . . .	212
C. <i>Moods</i> . . . . .	215
D. <i>The Passive Voice</i> . . . . .	223

E. <i>The Auxiliaries</i> . . . . .	224
F. <i>The Verb governing Cases</i> . . . . .	225
§ 2. ARRANGEMENT . . . . .	234
A. <i>Indicative Mood</i> . . . . .	234
B. <i>Subjunctive Mood</i> . . . . .	237
C. <i>Imperative Mood</i> . . . . .	238
D. <i>Infinitive Mood</i> . . . . .	238
E. <i>Participles</i> . . . . .	239
F. <i>Compound Verbs</i> . . . . .	241
CHAPTER VI. ADVERBS . . . . .	242
CHAPTER VII. PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	245
CHAPTER VIII. CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	251
CHAPTER IX. INTERJECTIONS . . . . .	259

### BOOK III. PROSODY.

CHAPTER I. DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES	260
CHAPTER II. QUANTITY . . . . .	261
CHAPTER III. ACCENT . . . . .	263
CHAPTER IV. GERMAN VERSE . . . . .	266
§ 1. RHYTHM . . . . .	266
1. <i>The Ancient Metres</i> . . . . .	266
2. <i>The German Rhythm</i> . . . . .	268
§ 2. CONSONANCE . . . . .	273
1. <i>Rhyme</i> . . . . .	273
2. <i>Assonance</i> . . . . .	274
3. <i>Alliteration</i> . . . . .	274



APPENDIX.

I. ACTS ix. 1-28, (in the German version of Van Esz) . . . . .	275
II. FAMILIAR DIALOGUES . . . . .	277
III. GERMAN ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	282



## NOTICE.

---

IN this Grammar, the principal accent in each word of several syllables has been marked by the sign ('); as, Berg'werk, mine. In German books in general, no accent is marked.

In translating the English Exercises, the student should omit the accents in writing.

In the Exercises, those words which, though expressed in English, are to be omitted in German, are printed in common type and enclosed in parentheses; thus, (which). Those which are omitted in English, but expressed in German, are printed in Italics; thus, (*which*). In those cases in which a different form of expression is substituted in German, the German idiom in a literal translation, enclosed and italicized, is added to the English text.

The figures over the English words indicate their position in German. Words without figures over them stand in the same place as in English; they sometimes separate one series of figures from another, in the same sentence. Example: Had you been<sup>2</sup> patient<sup>1</sup>, you would have<sup>4</sup> known<sup>3</sup> the<sup>1</sup> truth<sup>2</sup>. The words in German are thus arranged, *Had you patient been, you would the truth known have.*

In studying the Elements of the Adjective and the Numeral (before attempting to translate the exercises on pages 46, 47, and 53) the beginner should acquaint himself with the rules concerning the use of the declinable and indeclinable forms of them, contained in Book II. Ch. III. § 1. Rules I, II, III, and IV. In the same manner, together with the Elements of the Pronoun, the rules concerning the use of the different relative and interrogative pronouns, should be studied, in Book II. Ch. IV. § 1. Rule I. Obs. 6 and 7.

# GERMAN GRAMMAR.

---

## BOOK I.

### ELEMENTS.

---

## PART I.

### ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### THE ALPHABET.

#### *Simple Letters.*

Letters.	Usual Names.	English.
А, а, . . . . .	ah, . . . . .	A, a.
Ä, ä, . . . . .	the French <i>ai</i> , . . . . .	Ä, ä.
В, в, . . . . .	bay, . . . . .	B, b.
С, с, . . . . .	tsay, . . . . .	C, c.
Д, д, . . . . .	day, . . . . .	D, d.
Е, е, . . . . .	a, . . . . .	E, e.
Ф, ф, . . . . .	ef, . . . . .	F, f.
С, с, . . . . .	ghay, . . . . .	G, g.
Н, н, . . . . .	hah, . . . . .	H, h.
И, и, . . . . .	e, . . . . .	I, i.
Й, й, . . . . .	yot, . . . . .	J, j.
К, к, . . . . .	kah, . . . . .	K, k.

ɛ, l,	. . . . .	el,	. . . . .	L, l.
M, m,	. . . . .	em,	. . . . .	M, m.
N, n,	. . . . .	en,	. . . . .	N, n.
O, o,	. . . . .	o,	. . . . .	O, o.
Ö, ö,	. . . . .	the French <i>eu</i> ,	. . . . .	Ö, ö.
P, p,	. . . . .	pay,	. . . . .	P, p.
Q, q,	. . . . .	koo,	. . . . .	Q, q.
R, r,	. . . . .	err,	. . . . .	R, r.
Š, ſ (ɛ),	. . . . .	ess,	. . . . .	S, s.
T, t,	. . . . .	tay,	. . . . .	T, t.
U, u,	. . . . .	oo,	. . . . .	U, u.
Ü, ü,	. . . . .	the French <i>u</i> ,	. . . . .	Ü, ü.
V, v,	. . . . .	fow,	. . . . .	V, v.
W, w,	. . . . .	way,	. . . . .	W, w.
X, x,	. . . . .	iks,	. . . . .	X, x.
Y, y,	. . . . .	ip-si-lon,	. . . . .	Y, y.
Z, z,	. . . . .	tsett,	. . . . .	Z, z.

### Compound Letters.

Letters.	Usual Names.	English.
ch,	. . . . . tsay-hah,	. . . . . ch.
ç,	. . . . . tsay-kah,	. . . . . ck.
ff,	. . . . . ef-ef,	. . . . . ff.
pf,	. . . . . pay-ef,	. . . . . pf.
ph,	. . . . . pay-hah,	. . . . . ph.
sch,	. . . . . ess-tsai-hah,	. . . . . sch.
ſſ,	. . . . . ess-ess,	. . . . . ss.
ſt,	. . . . . ess-tay,	. . . . . st.
ſz,	. . . . . ess-tsett,	. . . . . sz.
th,	. . . . . tay-hah,	. . . . . th.
tz,	. . . . . tay-tsett,	. . . . . tz.

Instead of *ff* most authors write *ç*; and *ſz*, instead of *zz*.

*ɛ* is used only at the end of words, either separate or in composition.

*ſ* is used in this Grammar only at the end of words, instead of *ſɛ*. (For the reasons, see page 8.)



• The following letters, from the similarity of their form, may be easily mistaken for one another.

Capitals.	Small Letters.
B and 3,	b and h,
D and 0,	f and s,
E and 3,	m and w,
G and 6,	r and x,
K, N, and X,	v and y.
M and W,	
O and Q.	

## CHAPTER II.

### USE OF CAPITAL LETTERS.

WITH respect to the use of capital letters, it is to be observed :

1. All substantives, as well as all words used substantively, begin with capitals, and also all sentences; as,

der Tag, the day.

die Woch'e, the week.

der Wei'se, the wise man.

die Mei'nigen, my family.

das Mei'ne, mine (my property.)

das Le'sen, the reading.

Sobald' du von den lie'ben  
Mei'nigen et'was Neues  
erfährt', gieb mir sogleich'  
Nach'richt.

As soon as you learn any  
news about my dear  
friends, send me word im-  
mediately.

2. The pronouns answering to *you*, *your*, &c. must begin with a capital, when they refer to the person whom we address; as, *Sie*, you; *Ihr*, *Ih'rige*, your; *Du*, thou; *Dein*, thine, &c.; but the pronoun *ich*, I, is never written with a capital but at the beginning of a sentence, or when it is used as a substantive, as, *das Ich*, one's self.

The pronoun *sie*, when it answers to the pronoun *they*, or *she*, is written with a small letter, unless it begin a sentence.

3. Every word begins with a capital, when a stress is laid upon it; as, the numeral *ein* in the sentence, *Es giebt nur Ei'nen Shak'speare*, There is but *one* Shakspeare.\*

---

\* Leaving a space between the letters answers the same purpose; thus, *e i n e n*.

## CHAPTER III.

## GENERAL RULES OF PRONUNCIATION.

§ 1. In the German language each letter is pronounced in every word.

Some exceptions to this rule are mentioned in Chapter IV. Part I.; particularly with respect to double vowels, *e* (*e*) after *i* (*i*), and *h* (*h*) in some cases.

§ 2. Each sound is constantly represented by the same letter, and each letter has only one sound. Thus the letter *a* (*a*), which has in English four different sounds, has in German only one, and this one sound is never represented by any other letter than *a*.

A few exceptions are marked in Chapter IV. Part I., particularly in regard to the letters *g* (*g*), *t* (*t*), *v* (*v*), and *y* (*y*), in words taken from foreign languages.

§ 3. Words that belong to foreign languages preserve in German their original spelling and pronunciation. Thus the word *Cambridge* (*Cambridge*) is sounded in German as in English.

The dead languages are pronounced according to the German idiom. The letters *v* (*v*) and *t* (*t*) form exceptions; for which see Chapter IV. Part. I.

## CHAPTER IV.

## THE SOUNDS OF THE LANGUAGE.

## § 1. VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

A. *Vowels.*

The vowels in German are either long or short; which distinction does not (as in English pronouncing dictionaries) imply a difference in the *sound* of the vowel, but merely determines its relative duration.

The vowels are

α... an intermediate sound between *a* in *father*, and *a* in *water*; it is

long in *Gras*, grass; *ha'ven*, to have;

short in *Mann*, man; *Kat'ze*, cat.

â\*... nearly like *a* in *fat*; it is

long in *Bär*, bear; *Glâ'ser*, Glasses;

short in *äl'ter*, older; *Äp'fel*, apples.

ε... nearly like *a* in *fate*; yet closer, and without the sound of an *e* which is slightly heard at the end of long *a* in English; it is

long in *See*, sea; *ge'hen*, to go;

short in *Bett*, bed; *es'sen*, to eat.

This vowel is in some words frequently pronounced like short *e* in English. But elegant pronunciation in Germany seems to prefer in every instance the close and acute sound which is heard in *See*, and *sen'den*, to send.

The ε after *i* in the same syllable is not sounded, but merely protracts the sound of the *i*, as in *lie'be*, love.

i, y... like *e* in *bee*; it is

long in *mir*, to me; *Berlin'*, Berlin;

short in *Fisch*, fish; *Mit'te*, middle.

o... like *o* in *promote*; it is

long in *Strom*, river; *Ro'se*, rose;

short in *Koß*, horse; *Op'fer*, sacrifice.

ô\*... like the French *eu* in *peur*, which has no corresponding sound in English; it is

long in *schön*, fine; *Lô'ne*, sounds;

short in *Köp'fe*, heads; *Öff'nung*, aperture.

u... like *oo* in *moon*, and *u* in *full*; it is

long in *gut*, good; *Blu'me*, flower;

short in *Schuß*, protection; *Mut'ter*, mother.

---

\* That *â*, *ô*, and *û*, are simple sounds, and not diphthongs composed of *ae*, *oe*, and *ue*, is evident; for it is impossible to produce these three sounds, by any combination of other vowels, however rapidly pronounced. It is therefore better to write *Äpfel*, apples; *Öde*, solitude; *Übung*, exercise; instead of *Uepfel*, *Oede*, *Uebung*; and *Göthe*, instead of *Goethe*.

Two dots on the top of *a*, *o*, *u*, viz. *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, or *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, signify the same sounds as the small *ε* on the top of the same letters, *â*, *ô*, *û*.

û\*, y...like the French *u* in *vu*, to which there is no corresponding sound in English; it is  
*long* in *Thür*, door; mü'de, tired;  
*short* in dünn, thin; Hü'te, cottage.

*Observation.* The letter *y*, which some German authors retain in more or less words, and others entirely reject, has no peculiar sound of its own. It has the force of *i* in all words that are originally German, as well when sounded by itself, ex. Tilly, Tilly, a proper name, as in the diphthongs, (see B.) ex. seyn, to be; May, May. In words derived from the Greek, in which *y* represents the letter *v*, it is commonly sounded like *ü*, as in System', which is pronounced as if written Süstém'; and this mode of writing is also preferred by several modern scholars. — Some grammarians retain this letter wherever it serves to distinguish different words, which are spelled alike in every other respect, as seyn, to be; and sein, his. But this reason seems insufficient, as the signification of all such words is determined by the sense they have in the sentence in which they occur. Therefore, according to the general rules above stated, (Chap. III. § 1. and 2.) it seems proper to retain the *y*, only

1. In proper names, particularly names of persons, where the mode of writing them has an importance of its own separate from that which consists in their sound, as in Sey'ne, sey'den;

2. In words derived from foreign languages, where the *y* has the sound of the foreign letter it represents; for example, Synonymif, pronounced Sünönü'mif; York, pronounced Yorf. (The sound of the consonant *Y* is given, § 2. A. 4.)

In all other cases the *y* should be given up, and the simple *i* substituted, as in sein, to be; May, May.

## B. Diphthongs.

All diphthongs are long.

ei, (ey)...like *i* in *fine*; ex. Frei'heit, freedom; mein, mine.

ai, (ay)...nearly the same sound as *ei*, only a little more open; ex. Hain, grove; Mai, May.

---

\* See note on preceding page.

oi, (oy) . . . nearly as *oi* in *moist*; it occurs only in a few words, particularly proper names, as, *Hoy'er*.

ui, (uy) . . . nearly as *we*; it very seldom occurs; ex. *psui!* *fy!*

au . . . nearly as *ou* in *mouth* (as the Scotch pronounce it); ex. *Haus*, house; *Kraut*, herb.

eu . . . has no corresponding sound in any modern language; it comes nearest to the sound of *oi* in *voice*, ex. *Feu'er*, fire; *Freund*, friend.

äu . . . nearly the same sound as *eu*, only a little more open; ex. *Häu'ser*, houses; *Kräu'ter*, herbs.

There are no triphthongs in German.

## § 2. CONSONANTS.

### A. *Simple Consonants.*

There are in German five sorts of consonants, according to the different organs which are particularly employed in forming them.

#### 1. *Labials.*

*p* . . . like *p*; ex. *Per'le*, pearl; *plump*, clumsy.

*b* . . . generally like *b*; as in *But'ter*, butter; but at the end of words like *bp*, as in *laub*, foliage.

*m* . . . like *m*; ex. *Mann*, man; *Kamm*, comb.

*w* . . . nearly like *w*, (omitting the sound of *oo* with which *w* begins); ex. *Wind*, wind; *w'e'hen*, to blow.

#### 2. *Labio-dentals.*

*f*, *v*, *ph* . . . like *f*; ex. *Fels*, rock; *stif*, stiff; *voll*, full; *Philosoph'*, philosopher.

*Ph* is not originally German, but chiefly intended to represent the Greek  $\varphi$ , for which some modern authors substitute *f*, and accordingly write *Filosof'*, instead of *Philosoph'*.

**V** and **f** have in all genuine German words the same sound.\*

**V** has the English sound of *v* only in words belonging to foreign languages, in which this letter is sounded as in English.

### 3. *Palatals.*

**t**...like *t*; ex. *Tur'teltaube*, turtle-dove; *matt*, faint.

**d**...generally like *d*; as in *Du'delsack*, bagpipe; but at the end of words it sounds like *dt*; as in *Bad*, bath.

**n**...like *n*; ex. *nein*, no. — **N** becomes a nasal sound, when followed by *g* or *k* (as in English); ex. *Gesang*, song; *Dank*, thanks.

**l**...like *l*; ex. *li'lie*, lily; *Ball*, ball.

### 4. *Linguals.†*

**r**...like the Irish *r*; ex. *rol'sen*, to roll; *starr*, motionless.

**f** (**ß**)...like *s*; ex. *Sei'te*, side; *Reis*, rice.

**S** is never pronounced like *z*, neither has it the sharp hissing sound of the English *s*, as this is commonly pronounced.

The **z** is sometimes used as an addition to the **f** (**ß**), but then the **z** is never pronounced; it is sounded in some instances like **fs**, as in *Hatz*, hate, or like a simple **f**, as in *Hausß*, house. Some authors, therefore, never use **ß**, but substitute, according to its pronunciation, either **fs**, (*ss*) as in *Hass*, or **s**, as in *Haus*.

\* As **f** and **v** have the same sound, they seem to require only one sign, and **f** has already taken the place of **v** in several words, as in *fest*, *Grav*, which are now written *fest*, *firm*; *Graf*, count. But it seems as yet too bold a step, to dispense with the **v** altogether.

† The organic difference between *linguals* and *palatals* consists in the latter being formed particularly by that part of the palate to which the tongue is applied, while the former are produced by the position of the tongue, brought near the roof of the mouth without touching it.

sch ... like *sh*; ex. *Schu'le*, school; *Bu'sch*, bush.

The soft sound *zh* is heard only in words taken from the French language; as *Genie'* genius; *Pa'ge*, page.

ch ... when it is preceded by *e*, *i*, *â*, *ô*, *û*, or a consonant, is not a guttural, but a lingual, formed in the fore part of the mouth. There is no sound corresponding to it in English.

Ex. *Bâch'e*, rivulets; *Loch'er*, holes; *Bû'cher*, books; *Recht*, right; *ich*, I; *Milch*, milk.

j ... like *y* in *year*; ex. *ja*, yes; *Jahr*, year.

### 5. Guttural.

k, q, and in some instances, c, and ch ... are pronounced like *k*; ex. *Karl*, Charles; *Quel'se*, source.

C is pronounced like *k*, when it stands before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant, as in *Canon'icus*, prebendary; *Credit'*, credit.

Ch also, is in some cases pronounced like *k*, as in *Cha'racter*, character; *Chro'nik*, chronicle.

Many German authors make use of *k*, instead of *c* and *ch*, when these letters are sounded like *k*, particularly in those foreign words which are considered as naturalized in German. Accordingly they write *Kredit*, *Karakter*.

g ... in the beginning of words, like *g* hard; as in *Gast*, guest; at the end, and sometimes in the midst of a word, it has an intermediate sound between *g* hard and the lingual *ch*; ex. *Tag*, day; *Re'gen*, rain; after *u*, at the close of a syllable, it sounds like *g* in *singing*; ex. *sing'en*, to sing.

ch ... when preceded by *a*, *o*, or *u*, is formed in the throat, and sounded like *ch* in the Scotch word *Loch*; ex. *Bach*, rivulet; *Loch*, hole; *Buch*, book.

h ... like *h*, when it begins a syllable, as in *Hô'he*, height; after a vowel, in the midst or at the end of a syllable, the *h* is silent, and merely protracts the sound of the preceding vowel, as in *Mohu*, poppy; *fröh*, joyful; and it is silent and entirely lost, after *t* or *r*, as in *thun*, to do; *Rhein*, the Rhine.

B. *Compound Consonants.*

The most remarkable are

r, *rs*, or *rs*, and sometimes *chs*... like *ks*, (never like *gz*); ex. *Urt*, *ax*; *stracks*, straight on. *Chs* is sounded like *r*, when it belongs to a word in its simplest form, as in *der Dachs*, the badger. But when the final *s* is added merely by a change of termination, as in *das Dach*, the roof, genitive, *des Dachs*, of the roof, the original sound of *ch* is preserved.

z, *ts*, and in some instances *c* and *t*... are pronounced like *ts* (not *dz*); ex. *Zahn*, tooth; *bereits*', already.

*C* is pronounced like *z* (*ts*), when it precedes *e*, *i*, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, or *y*; ex. *O'cean*, ocean; *Cä'sar*, Cæsar.

*T* is commonly pronounced like *z*, in words of Latin origin, when the *t* is followed by *i* and another vowel; ex. *Nation'*, nation.

Many authors write *z*, instead of *c* or *t*, when these letters are pronounced like *z*, particularly in words which are considered as naturalized in German; as *Nazion'*, *O'zean*.  
*fn*... both letters are sounded; as in *Kna'be*, boy.

*gn*... both letters are sounded; as in *Gna'de*, mercy.

*pf*... the three letters are sounded; as in *Pflan'ze*, plant.

*fch*... the two sounds of *fch*, and *l* are pronounced, as in *Schleu'se*, sluice.

*fchw*... the two sounds, *fch*, and *w*, are uttered; as in *Schwal'ze*, swallow.

*Observations.* The doubling of vowels, when it does not create two syllables, protracts the sound, as in *See*, sea.

The doubling of consonants renders the sound stronger and more acute, as in *Don'nerwetter*, thunderstorm.

There is a slight difference in the manner in which certain sounds which are essentially the same in both languages, are pronounced in German and in English. Those German sounds which correspond to the English *t*, *d*, *l*, *r*, *s*, *sh*, viz. *t*, *d*, *l*, *r*, *s*, *fch*, are formed in the forepart of the mouth, i. e. nearer the teeth than in English; also *g* (*g*) *hard* and *k* (*t*) are not formed so deep in the throat as in English.



## PART II.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

There are ten parts of speech, viz. Article, Substantive or Noun, Adjective, Numeral, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection. Several of them, viz. the Article, the Substantive, the Adjective, some of the Numerals, the Pronoun, and the Verb, admit of inflection, that is, of a change of termination, indicating the principal relations of that which is expressed by the word inflected. The other parts of speech are not inflected.

The inflection of Articles, Substantives, Adjectives, Numerals, and Pronouns, is called *Declension*, and that of Verbs, *Conjugation*. Declension comprehends two *Numbers*, the *Singular* and the *Plural*, and each number four *Cases*, or relations, which are indicated by certain changes of termination. While in English the Accusative or Objective case is generally like the Nominative, and the Genitive and the Dative are commonly indicated by the Prepositions *of* and *to*, the German language expresses the same relations by changing the termination of the Nominative case.

That relation which in the Latin Grammar is denominated the Ablative case, is in German expressed by the Dative, and is generally preceded by the Preposition *von*, from; as, *von dem Va'ter*, from the father. The Vocative is nothing else than the Nominative, as used in an address or exclamation; ex. o *Va'ter*! O father!

## CHAPTER I.

## ARTICLE.

There are two articles, viz. the indefinite, *ein*, *a* or *an*, and the definite, *der*, *the*; which are declined in three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter.

*Ein, a*, is thus declined :

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ein,	ei'ne,	ein, a.
<i>Gen.</i>	ei'nes,	ei'ner,	ei'nes, of a.
<i>Dat.</i>	ei'nem,	ei'ner,	ei'nem, to a.
<i>Acc.</i>	ei'nen,	ei'ne,	ein, a.

*Der, the*, is thus declined :

	<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	der,	die,	das, the.
<i>Gen.</i>	des,	der,	des, of the
<i>Dat.</i>	dem,	der,	dem, to the.
<i>Acc.</i>	den,	die,	das, the.

*Plural, for all the genders.*

<i>Nom.</i>	die, the.
<i>Gen.</i>	der, of the.
<i>Dat.</i>	den, to the.
<i>Acc.</i>	die, the.

## CHAPTER II.

### SUBSTANTIVE, or NOUN.

#### § 1. GENDER.

All substantives, or nouns, are either masculine, or feminine, or neuter.

The gender of most nouns is determined by the following rules.

1. Of the *masculine* gender are

The names of male animals, and most nouns which convey the idea of superior power and energy; as *der Mann*, the man; *der Vater*, the father; *der Löwe*, the lion; *der Baum*, the tree; *der Hammer*, the hammer; *der Muth*, courage.

2. Of the *feminine* gender are

a. Most of the names of female animals, and most nouns which express what is tender and delicate; as, *die Frau*, the lady, or wife; *die Mutter*, the mother; *die Taube*, the dove;

die Blu'me, the flower; die Na'del, the needle; die Lie'be, love.

b. All proper names of countries and places made by the affix *ei*; as, die Tür'kei', die Wallachei'; and the following, die Sauf'iß, die Pfalz, die Schweiz.

3. Of the *neuter* gender are

a. The letters of the alphabet; as, das A, das B.

b. All diminutive nouns ending in *chen* or *lein*; as, das Pferd'chen, the little horse; das Büch'sein, the little book.

c. All infinitives used as substantives; as das Ess'en, the eating; das Trinf'en, the drinking.

d. The proper names of countries and places, which are not comprehended under 2. b., and the gender of which is not otherwise determined by the following rule.

4. The gender of compound substantives is determined by the last word which enters into the composition, expressing the general idea of the word; as, das Pla'tinabergwerk, the platina mine; from die Pla'tina, *f.* platina, der Berg, *m.* the mountain, and das Werk, *n.* the work; — die Wet'terfahne, *f.* the weathercock; from das Wet'ter, *n.* the weather, and die Fah'ne, *f.* the banner; — der Steu'ermann, *m.* the steersman; from das Steu'er, *n.* the helm, and der Mann, *m.* the man. For the same reason all proper names compounded with *land*, *n.* land, and with *Reich*, *n.* kingdom, are neuter; such as, Deutsch'land, Germany; Eng'land, England; Frank'reich, France; Öst'reich, Austria.

Some nouns vary their gender, according to their significations; as,

der Band, the volume,	das Band, the ribbon;
der Bund, the alliance,	das Bund, the bundle;
der Er'be, the heir,	das Er'be, the inheritance;
der Gei'sel, the hostage,	die Gei'sel, the scourge;
die Mark, the mark, boundary,	das Mark, the marrow;
der Reis, the rice,	das Reis, the twig;
der See, the lake,	die See, the sea;
der Thor, the fool,	das Thor, the gate.

## § 2. DECLENSION.

In many cases, *a*, *o*, and *u* are, in the plural number, changed into the corresponding vowels *ä*, *ö*, and *ü*; and the

diphthong *au* into the corresponding *äu*; as, *Thal*, valley, *plur.* *Thä'ler*, valleys; *Sohn*, son, *plur.* *Söh'ne*, sons; *Brü'der*, brother, *plur.* *Brü'der*, brothers; *Haus*, house, *plur.* *Häu'ser*, houses.

The endings of the nominative singular are various, and cannot be brought under certain rules.

The nominative, genitive, and accusative plural, have the same ending in all the declensions, and are distinguished only by the article; as, *die Brü'der*, the brothers, *gen. der Brü'der*, of the brothers, *acc. die Brü'der*, the brothers.

The dative plural, in all the declensions of nouns and adjectives, as well as of the article, ends in *n*; ex. *Tau'be*, dove, *dat. plur.* *Tau'ben*; *Mensch*, man, *dat. plur.* *Men'schen*; *Thier*, animal, *dat. plur.* *Thie'ren*.

All those nouns, which make the nominative plural in *n*, or *en*, retain the same termination in all the other cases of the plural number, without an additional *n* in the dative plural; as, *Tau'ben*, doves; *Kna'ben*, boys; *Au'gen*, eyes.

The mode of declining common nouns is different from that of nouns proper.

### A. Declension of Common Nouns.

The principal changes of termination in common nouns, are comprehended under three declensions.

The *characteristic* of each declension is the *genitive case singular*. In this case some nouns retain the ending of the nominative, as, *die Blü'me* the flower, *gen. der Blü'me*, of the flower; while other nouns receive an additional *n*, as *der Kna'be*, the boy, *gen. des Kna'ben*, of the boy; and others take an additional *s*, as, *das Le'ben*, the life, *gen. des Le'bens*, of the life.

#### First Declension.

The first declension comprehends all those nouns which remain *unchanged* in the genitive singular.

These nouns retain the termination of the nominative through all the cases of the singular number; but they differ in the nominative plural, where some of them keep the ending of the singular, as, *die Mut'ter*, the mother, *nom. plur. die*

Müt'ter, the mothers ; while others add *e*, as, die Besorg'niß, the apprehension, *nom. plur.* die Besorg'nisse, the apprehensions ; others *n*, as, die Blume, the flower, *nom. plur.* die Blumen, the flowers ; others *en*, as, die Frau, the lady, *nom. plur.* die Frauen, the ladies ; others *nen*, as, die Freundin, the female friend, *nom. plur.* die Freundinnen, the female friends.

Accordingly the first declension contains only one form of the singular, but five forms of the plural number.

*All nouns of the first declension are feminine ; and all feminine nouns belong to the first declension.*

### Second Declension.

The second declension comprehends all those nouns which form the genitive singular by *adding to the nominative a final n, either with or without another letter.*

If these nouns in the nominative singular terminate in *e*, they receive *only* an additional *n* in the genitive, as, der Knabe, the boy, *gen.* des Knaben, of the boy ; but if they end in any other letter, the genitive is formed by adding *en* to the nominative, as, der Fels, the rock, *gen.* des Felsen, of the rock.

With the exception of the nominative singular, all the cases of the singular and plural are like the genitive singular, and therefore always end in *en*.

Accordingly, the second declension comprehends only one form of the plural, but two forms of the singular number : the genitive singular being formed by the addition sometimes of *n*, and sometimes of *en*.

*All nouns which belong to the second declension are masculine ; and all masculine nouns belong either to this or to the third declension.*

### Third Declension.

The third declension contains all those nouns which form the genitive singular by *adding to the nominative a final s, either with or without other letters.*

This declension comprehends four forms of the singular, and five of the plural number.

*Singular.* Some nouns receive in the genitive case *merely*

an additional *s*, as, *der Wanderer*, the traveller, *gen. des Wanderers*, of the traveller; others *es*, as, *das Pferd*, the horse, *gen. des Pferdes*, of the horse; others *ns*, as, *der Gedanke*, the thought, *gen. des Gedankens*, of the thought; and one noun, *das Herz*, the heart, makes the genitive in *ens*, *des Herzens*, of the heart.

*Plural.* Some nouns retain the termination of the singular nominative, as, *der Wanderer*, *nom. plur. die Wanderer*; other nouns add *e*, as, *das Pferd*, the horse, *nom. plur. die Pferde*; others *n*, as, *der Gedanke*, the thought, *nom. plur. die Gedanken*; others *en*, as, *der Staat*, the state, *nom. plur. die Staaten*; and others *er*, as, *das Feld*, the field, *nom. plur. die Felder*.

*All neuter nouns are of the third declension.*

The following table exhibits the endings of nouns in each declension in all the cases except the nominative singular. The different declensions are marked by the figures, 1, 2, 3; the different forms of the singular by Roman letters, a, b, c, d, and those of the plural by German letters, a, b, c, d e.

# TABLE

OF THE

DECLENSION OF GERMAN COMMON NOUNS

# DECLENSION OF GERMAN COMMON NOUNS.

## FIRST DECLENSION,

Characterized by having the Genitive, as well as all the other Cases of the Singular Number, like the Nominative; and comprehending all the Nouns of the feminine Gender, and only these.

### ENDINGS.

#### SINGULAR.

	Mother. I. a.	Knowledge. I. b.	Flower. I. c.	Lady. I. d.	Songstress. I. e.
N. —	die Mutter	-Kerut'niss	-Blume	-Frau	-Säng'erin
G. as the N.	der Mutter	-Kerut'niss	-Blume	-Frau	-Säng'erin
D. as the N.	der Mutter	-Kerut'niss	-Blume	-Frau	-Säng'erin
A. as the N.	die Mutter	-Kerut'niss	-Blume	-Frau	-Säng'erin

#### PLURAL.

	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
N. as the N. Sing.	u	e	n	en	en
G. as the N.	e	e	n	en	en
D. u	en	en	n	en	en
A. as the N.	e	e	n	en	en

  

-Frauen	-Blumen	-Kerut'nisse	-Blumen	-Frauen	-Säng'erinnen
-Frauen	-Blumen	-Kerut'nisse	-Blumen	-Frauen	-Säng'erinnen
-Frauen	-Blumen	-Kerut'nissen	-Blumen	-Frauen	-Säng'erinnen
-Frauen	-Blumen	-Kerut'nisse	-Blumen	-Frauen	-Säng'erinnen

## SECOND DECLENSION.

Characterized by forming the Genitive Singular in n (n or en), added to the Nominative; and comprehending only Nouns of the masculine Gender.

### ENDINGS.

#### SINGULAR.

	(a)	(b)
N. —	n	en
G. n	n	en
D. n	n	en
A. n	n	en

  

	Boy. 2. a.	Man. 2. b.
N. der Knabe	-Mensch	-Mensch
G. des Knaben	-Menschen	-Menschen
D. dem Knaben	-Menschen	-Menschen
A. den Knaben	-Menschen	-Menschen



PLURAL.

N.	n	en	N. die Knaben
G.	n	en	G. der Knaben
D.	n	en	D. den Knaben
A.	n	en	A. die Knaben

  

			-Menschen
			-Menschen
			-Menschen
			-Menschen

THIRD DECLENSION.

Characterized by forming the Genitive Singular in *s* (*s*, *es*, *ns*, or *ens*), added to the Nominative; and commencing only Nouns of the masculine and neuter Gender.

ENDINGS.

(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
$\frac{s}{}$	$\frac{es}{}$	$\frac{ns}{}$	$\frac{ens}{}$
N. as the N.	e	n	en
G. as the N.	as the N. n as the N.		

PLURAL.

(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
$\frac{s}{}$	e	n	en
N. as the N.	e	n	en
G. as the N.	en	n	en
D. n	e	n	en
A. as the N.			

EXAMPLES.

SINGULAR.		Friend.		Thought.		Heart.		People.	
S. a. a.		S. b. b.		S. c. c.		S. d. d.		S. b. c.	
N. der Engel	der Engel	-Freund	-Gedanke	das Herz	das Herz	-Volk	-Volk		
G. des Engels	des Engels	-Freunde	-Gedanken	den Herzen	den Herzen	-Völke	-Völke		
D. dem Engel	dem Engel	-Freund	-Gedanken	das Herz	das Herz	-Völke	-Völke		
A. den Engel	den Engel	-Freunde	-Gedanken	-Herzen	-Herzen	-Völke	-Völke		

  

PLURAL.		Friend.		Thought.		Heart.		People.	
(e)		S. b. b.		S. c. c.		S. d. d.		S. b. c.	
N. die Engel	die Engel	-Freunde	-Gedanken	-Herzen	-Herzen	-Völke	-Völke		
G. der Engel	der Engel	-Freunde	-Gedanken	-Herzen	-Herzen	-Völke	-Völke		
D. den Engel	den Engel	-Freunde	-Gedanken	-Herzen	-Herzen	-Völke	-Völke		
A. die Engel	die Engel	-Freunde	-Gedanken	-Herzen	-Herzen	-Völke	-Völke		

*Observations on the first Declension.*

1. a. — There are only two nouns which retain in the nominative plural the termination of the singular, viz. *Mut'ter*, mother, and *Toch'ter*, daughter.
1. b. — The plural in *e* occurs particularly in those words which end in *ft*, *st*, and *niß*; as, *Kraft*, power; *Kunst*, art; *Betrüb'niß*, sorrow.
1. c. — The plural in *n* belongs to feminine nouns which end in *e*, *el*, and *er*; as, *Eh're*, honor; *Bi'bel*, bible; *Schwes'ter*, sister; *plur.* *Eh'ren*, *Bi'beln*, *Schwes'tern*.
1. d. — The plural in *en* is to be found in most words which end in *ei* (*ey*), *end*, *heit*, *keit*, *schaft*, *ung*, *st*, and *rt*; as, *Fischerei'*, fishery; *Zu'gend*, virtue; *Frei'heit*, freedom; *Ewigkeit*, eternity; *Freund'schaft*, friendship; *Ach'tung*, esteem; *Welt*, world; *Art*, manner; &c.
1. e. — The plural form *nen* is peculiar to those feminine nouns, which end in *in*, and have the accent not on their final syllable; as, *Sat'tin*, wife; *Lö'win*, lioness. This form was originally no other than the preceding 1. d., the nouns in *in* being formerly written with final *nn*, as, *Sat'tinn*, &c. But this practice of doubling the *n* in the singular, is retained by few modern authors.

Some nouns of the first declension, as, *Frau*, lady; *Sou'ne*, sun; *See'le*, soul; *Er'de*, earth; are, according to an old usage, still sometimes inflected in the genitive singular, as, *Frau'en*, *Sou'nen*, *See'len*, *Er'den*.

## EXERCISES.

To the actions, *Hand'lung*.  
 Of the Grecian women, *Griechin*.  
 The forks, *Gabel*.  
 To the sciences, *Wissenschaft*.  
 The daughters, *Toch'ter*.  
 Of the balls, *Kugel*.  
 To the pens, *Feder*.

*Observations on the Second Declension.*

2. a. — The termination of the genitive in *n* is common in masculine nouns which end in *e*; as, *der Lö'we*, the lion;

der Bo'te, the messenger. The names of nations which end in *e*, are inflected in the same manner; as, der Grie'che, the Greek; der Deut'sche, the German.

2. b. — The genitive in *en* is common in masculine nouns not ending in *e*; as, der Mensch, man; der Bär, the bear. In some cases euphony demands the omission of the *e*; as, der Herr, the master, *gen. des Herrn*.

In poetry the dative and accusative singular are sometimes formed like the nominative; as, dem Fels, and den Fels.

Almost all the nouns of this declension signify living beings. Exception, der Fels, 2. b. the rock.

### *Observations on the Third Declension.*

3. a. & b. — It depends on euphony whether the genitive singular ends in *s* or *es*. Nouns of more than one syllable, which end in one of the unaccented syllables *el*, *en*, *er*, and *lein*, take only an *s*; as, Flü'gel, wing; Mäd'chen, girl; Va'ter, father; Mann'lein, little man. But all those nouns of the third declension which end in *e* or *z*, make their genitive singular in *es*; as, Ros, steed, *gen. Ros'es*, of a steed; Satz, sentence, *gen. Satz'es*, of a sentence. Those nouns of one syllable which terminate in any other letter, make their genitive singular in the same manner, by adding *es*; but this is frequently contracted into *s*; as, der Weg, the way, *gen. des We'ges*, or *Wegs*, of the way.

These rules apply also to some proper nouns; as, December, 3. a. a.; der Rhein, 3. b. b., the Rhine.

It depends on euphony whether the *e* which is added to nouns of the second form of the singular in order to form the dative case, be omitted or retained. Ex. dem Gol'de, or Gold, to the gold; dem Stur'me, or Sturm, to the storm. The *e* is generally omitted when the noun, preceded by a preposition, and without an article or adjective or pronoun before it, is used in a general and indefinite signification, in the place of an adjective or an adverb, to express either the material of which a thing consists or the manner in which something is performed. Ex. ein Ring von Gold, a ring of gold; mit Sturm ein'nehmen, to take by-storm. But if the noun be rendered more definite by

an adjective or pronoun before it, the regular ending in *e* is used, unless euphony should require its omission, particularly for the purpose of avoiding the monotonous recurrence of the same sound. Thus we say, *ein Ring von diesem Golde* or *Gold*, a ring of this gold; *in dem ersten Sturme* or *Sturm*, in the first storm.

The accusative of those nouns which have *s* or *cs* in the genitive, is always like the nominative case.

3. c. — The addition of *ns* in the genitive is peculiar to those nouns, the nominative of which formerly ended in *en*, but is now commonly spelled without the final *u*, as, *Friede* (*Frieden*), peace; *Funk'e* (*Funk'en*), spark; *Fus'stapfe* (*Fus'stapfen*), footstep; *Glaub'e* (*Glaub'en*), belief; *Hau'fe* (*Hau'fen*), heap; *Na'me* (*Na'men*), name; *Saa'me* (*Saa'men*), seed; *Scha'de* (*Scha'den*), damage. But the old termination in *en* is not yet entirely out of use.

Some nouns of the second declension are sometimes, though not properly, inflected according to the form 3. c.; as, *der Knab'e*, the boy, *gen. des Knab'ens*; properly, *des Knab'en*.

If the genitive is formed by adding *ns* to the nominative, the dative and accusative singular always end in *en*.

3. d. — The substantive *Herz*, heart, is the only noun which forms its genitive by adding *ens* to the nominative.

The nominative formerly was *das Herz'e*, which is still used in poetry.

*Buch'stab*, letter, is declined either according to 3. b. d., or according to 3. c. c., and in this case the nominative is *Buch'stabe*.

3. a. — The nominative plural is like the nominative singular in almost all those nouns masculine and neuter, which end in *el*, *en*, *er*, and *lein*; as, *der Schlüssel*, the key; *das Mäd'chen*, the girl; *der Uhr'macher*, the watchmaker; *das Fräu'lein*, the young lady.

The plural form, *Mäd'chens*, *Fräu'leins*, is incorrect, though sometimes used by good authors in derision of bad taste.

3. b. — The addition of *e* to the nominative singular is the most common plural form of nouns of the third declension; as, *das Thier*, the animal; *der Baum*, the tree; *der Stein*, the stone; &c.

3. c. — All those nouns which make their genitive singular in

us (see p. 21, under 3. c.), form their nominative plural by adding *n* to the nominative singular.

3. d.—There are comparatively only a few nouns of this declension, which form their plural by adding *en*; as, *das Herz*, the heart; *der Staat*, the state; *der Strahl*, the ray; *das Ohr*, the ear.

3. e.—The singular of those nouns, which make their nominative plural by adding *er*, is declined according to the second form of the singular, 3. b.; as, *der Wald*, the wood, *gen. sing. des Wald'es*. In the same manner are declined, *Kleid*, dress; *Geld*, money; *Leib*, body; *Geist*, spirit.

The nominative plural cannot always be determined by the genitive singular. Ex. *das Auge*, 3. a. c., the eye, *gen. sing. des Aug'es*, *nom. plur. die Aug'en*.

## EXERCISES.

The travellers, *Wan'derer*.

Of the footstep, *Fus'stapfe*.

Of the swords, *De'gen*.

Of the floweret, *Blüm'lein*.

The horses, *Pferd*.

The sparks, *Funt'e*.

Of the treasure, *Schatz*.

Some nouns have no plural number; for example, many infinitives which are used as substantives. This peculiarity is, in this Grammar, marked by omitting the German letter by which the form of the plural is indicated; as, *das Lach'en*, 3. a., the laughing; *das We'n'en*, 3. a., the weeping.

Other nouns have no singular. This peculiarity is marked by omitting the Roman letter which indicates the form of the singular; as, *die Ä'tern*, 3. c., the parents; *die Leu'te*, 3. b., people; *die Gebrü'der*, 3. a., the brothers.

Some nouns have two plural forms; as, *das Land*, 3. b. b. & c., the land, *nom. plur. die Lan'de* and *die Län'der*, the lands; *das Gewand'*, 3. b. b. & c., the dress, *nom. plur. die Gewan'de* and *die Gewän'der*, the dresses.

The compounds of *Mann* (*man*) change *Mann* into *Leu'te* (*people*) in the plural; as, *der Land'mann*, the countryman,

*plur.* die Land'leute, country people; der Fuhr'mann, the wagoner, *plur.* die Fuhr'leute. So form the plural of U'fermann, husbandman; E'delmann, nobleman; Haupt'mann, captain; Kauf'mann, merchant. But the plural of der E'hemann, the husband or married man, is die E'hemänner, the husbands or married men; E'helente, means married people.

In some nouns the different formation of the plural, or the change of *a*, *o*, *u*, into *â*, *ô*, and *û*, expresses a different signification; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
der Band, the volume, or binding.	die Bân'de, the volumes.
das Band, the ribbon.	die Bân'der, the ribbons.
das Band, the bond.	die Bân'de, the bonds.
die Bank, the bench.	die Bân'ke, the benches.
die Bank, the bank.	die Bân'ken, the banks.
der Bauer, the peasant.	die Bau'ern, the peasants.
das Bau'er, the cage.	die Bau'er, the cages.
der Bo'gen, the sheet of paper.	die Bo'gen, the sheets of paper.
der Bo'gen, the bow.	die Bô'gen, the bows.
das Gesicht', the vision.	die Gesich'te, the visions.
das Gesicht', the face.	die Gesich'ter, the faces.
der La'den, the shutter.	die La'den, the shutters,
der La'den, the shop.	die Lâ'den, the shops.
der Schild, the shield.	die Schil'de, the shields.
das Schild, the sign.	die Schil'der, the signs.
der Strauß, the ostrich.	die Strau'sen, the ostriches.
der Strauß, the nosegay.	die Strâu'se, the nosegays.
der Thor, the fool.	die Tho'ren, the fools.
das Thor, the gate.	die Tho'r'e, the gates.

With respect to those common nouns which are derived from *foreign languages*, the following particular rules are to be observed.

These nouns either retain their original termination, as, Fiskus, Thé'ma, Dô'sis; or take a German one. This is done, either by retrenching their foreign ending, as in D'cean (oceanus), ocean; Dipsem' (diploma); or by transforming it into another more idiomatic termination; as, die Regel (regula), rule; die Syl'be (syllaba), syllable.

The rule is,—that all those foreign common nouns, the endings of which bear a similarity to German nouns, are declined like these, in the regular way. Thus :

1. All foreign common nouns feminine belong to the first declension, and add in the nominative plural either *n* or *en*; as, *die Urie*, 1. c., the tune; *die Formel*, 1. c., the formula; *die Poesie*, 1. d., the poetry; *die Person*, 1. d.; *die Republik*, 1. d.; *die Tyrannie*, 1. d., the tyranny.

2. Most of those foreign nouns masculine which end in *ant*, *arch*, *at*, *et*, *it*, and *og*, are of the second declension, 2. b.; as, *Adjutant*, *Patriarch*, *Advocat*, *Poet*, *Eremit*, *Theolog*.

3. Most of the foreign nouns neuter or masculine which end in *er*, *el*, *al*, *an*, *in*, *ou*, *ar*, *at*, *em*, *am*, *amm*, *om*, or, belong to the third declension; as, *Character*, 3. a. b.; *Capitel*, 3. a. a., chapter; *Portal*, 3. b. b.; *Capellan*, 3. b. b., chaplain; *Kamin*, 3. b. b., chimney; *Postillon*, 3. a. b.; *Exemplar*, 3. b. b., specimen; *Magistrat*, 3. b. b.; *Diadem*, 3. b. b.; *Balsam*, 3. b. b.; *Epigramm*, 3. b. b.; *Diplom*, 3. b. b.; *Professor*, 3. a. d.

### B. Declension of Proper Nouns.

Proper names terminating in one of the unaccented syllables *as*, *es*, *is*, *os*, or *us*, such as *Bar'kas*, *Fer'res*, *E'lis*, *U'mos*, *Coper'nicus*, do not change their termination in any case of the singular or plural. If the connexion in which they occur does not indicate the case or number in which they are used, the definite article, or a preposition is used to express the relation in which they stand. Ex. *Das System' des Coper'nicus*, or *von Coper'nicus*, the system of Copernicus; *das Geschlecht' der Bar'kas (plur.)*, the family of (the) Barcas.

Most proper nouns,\* particularly names of persons and countries, are declined either *with* or *without* the article; and this circumstance has an influence upon the declension of the singular number.

*Singular.* If the proper name is declined with the definite or indefinite article, the article alone is inflected, the noun itself remaining unaltered; as, *der Schle'gel*, *gen. des Schle'gel*, &c.; *die Anna*, *gen. der Anna*, &c.; *ein Ca'to*, *gen. eines Ca'to*.

If proper nouns are declined without the article, they commonly take, in the genitive singular, an additional *s* or *es*.

---

\* Some proper nouns are declined like common nouns. Page 20, under 2. a.; and page 21, under 3. a. & b.

In some nouns, particularly those which end in *s*, *ß*, *ß*, *sch*, *r*, and feminines in *e*, the genitive singular is formed by adding *ens* or *ns* to the nominative. In the dative and accusative, they commonly remain unaltered, or take *n* or *en*.

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i>	Schle'gel	An'na	Leib'nig	Ca'to
<i>G.</i>	Schle'gels	An'nas	Leib'nigens	Ca'tos
<i>D.</i>	{ Schle'gel or }	{ An'na or }	{ Leib'nig or }	Ca'to
	{ Schle'geln }	{ An'nen }	{ Leib'nigen }	
<i>A.</i>	{ Schle'gel or }	{ An'na or }	{ Leib'nig or }	Ca'to
	{ Schle'geln }	{ An'nen }	{ Leib'nigen }	

Luise and other nouns in *e*, are declined like Leib'nig, without an additional *e*; as, Luise, *gen.* Luisens, *dat. & acc.* Luise or Luisen.

Even the genitive, dative, and accusative cases of those nouns which end in *a* are sometimes formed in *ens*, and *en*, the *a* being dropped; as, Diana, *gen.* Dianas or Dianens, *dat. & acc.* Diana or Dianen. It seems better not to change the ending of the noun in the dative and accusative, except for the sake of distinctness. Thus we say, Marie sah Luise, Mary saw Louisa; but if the order of the nouns be inverted, we say, Luisen sah Marie, Mary saw Louisa.

Names of countries compounded with *land*, land, or *Reich*, kingdom, are declined only in the genitive case, in which they take an additional *s*; as, Deutsch'lands, of Germany; Frank'reichs, of France.

*Plural.* In the plural number, proper names are generally declined like common nouns, whether they be preceded by the article or not; sometimes they preserve their foreign termination entirely or in part, as,

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	die Schle'gel	An'nen	Leib'nige	{ Cato'ne or }
				{ Cato'nen }
<i>G.</i>	der Schle'gel	An'nen	Leib'nige	{ Cato'ne or }
				{ Cato'nen }
<i>D.</i>	den Schle'geln	An'nen	Leib'nigen	Cato'nen
<i>A.</i>	die Schle'gel	An'nen	Leib'nige	{ Cato'ne or }
				{ Cato'nen }

*Observations.* I. The mode of declining proper nouns with



the article, is the same, whether the noun stands alone, or is preceded by an adjective or pronoun.

Accordingly we say, *das Verdienst' Wash'ingtons*, the merit of Washington; but *das Verdienst' des Wash'ington*, or, *des gro'sen* (of the great) *Wash'ington*: and *die Dank'barkeit Mari'as*, the gratitude of Mary; but *die Dank'barkeit der from'men* (of the pious) *Mari'a*.

If the name of a person is immediately preceded by a common noun, expressing the office or character of that person, the proper noun alone is declined, if the common noun is *not* preceded by the definite article; as, *Doc'tor Frank'lin's Erfindungen*, the discoveries of Doctor Franklin; *König Ludwigs Tod*, the death of King Louis; but if the definite article precedes, the common noun is declined, and the proper noun remains unaltered; as, *der Tod des Königs Ludwig*; *die Erfindungen des Doctors Frank'lin*. The same is true of names of places, towns, or countries, being used without the article and preceded by a common noun which serves to define the proper name or is defined by it; as *die Geschichte des Königreichs Neapel*, the history of the kingdom of Naples.

If the name of a person is preceded by one or more christian names, none of these is declined, if they have the definite article before them; as, *die Schriften des Johann' Jakob Rouss'seau*, the works of John Jaques Rousseau: but when they are not preceded by the article, the family name of the person is declined, the christian names remaining unaltered; as, *Johann' Christoph Adelungs Sprach'lehre*, the Grammar of John Christopher Adelung.

But there is an exception to this rule, when the family name is separated from the christian name (or names) by a preposition, particularly by *von* (being commonly the mark of noble descent): in this case the christian names alone are inflected; as, *die Gedichte Hein'richs von Ofterdingen*, the poems of Henry of Osterdingen; *der Op'fertod Arnolds Strutt'hans von Winkelried*, the sacrifice of Arnold Strutthan of Winkelried. But even in this case, if the genitive precedes the substantive by which it is governed, the family name alone is inflected; as, *Johan'nes von Müll'ers Werke*, the works of John of Muller.

II. It was formerly usual to decline nouns of Roman origin according to the rules of the Latin Grammar; but this mode of declining has gone out of use, except in a few instances; as, *Christi Geburt'*, the birth of Christ.

*Promiscuous Exercises on the Declensions of Nouns.*

The following list of nouns possesses the advantage of having the gender and declension marked, the former by the letters, *m. f. n.*, and the latter by the numbers, 1, 2, 3; with the different forms of the singular and the plural number, those of the singular being denoted by Roman, and those of the plural by German letters. The asterisk (\*) prefixed to a noun in the singular, signifies that *a, o, u*, are in the plural changed into *â, ô, û*. If more than one of these letters, or any one of them more than once, should occur in the same noun, that one alone is changed which occurs last; as, *Altar'*, plur. *Altâr're*: the diphthong *au* excepted, in which the *a*, and not the *u*, is changed, whenever an asterisk is prefixed to the noun.

Of the eels,	<i>Ual</i> , <i>m. 3. b. b.</i> eel.
The evening, ( <i>Acc.</i> )	<i>U'bend</i> , <i>m. 3. b. b.</i> evening.
To the abbots,	* <i>Ubt</i> , <i>m. 3. b. b.</i> abbot.
Of the field or acre,	* <i>Uc'fer</i> , † <i>m. 3. a. a.</i> field or acre.
Of the fields,	.....
The shoulders,	<i>Uch'sel</i> , <i>f. 1. c.</i> shoulder.
Of the nobility,	<i>U'del</i> , <i>m. 3. a.</i> nobility.
To the ape,	<i>U'ffe</i> , <i>m. 2. a.</i> ape.
To the apes,	.....
Of the altars,	* <i>Ustar'</i> , <i>m. 3. b. b.</i> altar.
To the age,	<i>U'ter</i> , <i>n. 3. a. a.</i> age.
Of the antiquities,	* <i>U'terthum</i> , <i>n. 3. b. e.</i> antiquity.
To the blackbirds,	<i>Um'sel</i> , <i>f. 1. c.</i> blackbird.
The offices,	* <i>Umt</i> , <i>n. 3. b. e.</i> office.
The ants,	<i>U'meise</i> , <i>f. 1. c.</i> ant.
The nurses,	<i>Um'me</i> , <i>f. 1. c.</i> nurse.
Of the devotion,	<i>Un'dacht</i> , <i>f. 1.</i> devotion.
The preparations,	<i>Un'stalt</i> , <i>f. 1. d.</i> preparation.
To the replies,	<i>Ant'wort</i> , <i>f. 1. d.</i> reply.

---

† The beginner must not forget that the asterisk being prefixed to a noun signifies that a change of vowels takes place only when the noun is in the plural number, as, of the acres, *der Ufer*; but not when it is the singular number, as, of the acre, *des Ufers*.

Of the labors,	Ar'beit, <i>f.</i> 1. d. labor.
To the eyes,	Au'ge, <i>n.</i> 3. a. c. eye.
Of the oyster,	Au'ster, <i>f.</i> 1. c. oyster.
The brooks,	*Bach, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. brook.
The path,	Bahu, <i>f.</i> 1. d. path.
Of the ball,	*Ball, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. ball.
To the ribbons,	*Band, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c. ribbon.
To the ideas,	Begriff', <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. idea.
Of the mountain,	Berg, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. mountain.
To the bed,	Bett, <i>n.</i> 3. b. d. bed.
To the beds,	
Of the proofs,	Beweis', <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. proof.
To the pictures,	Bild, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c. picture.
Of the pears,	Birn, <i>f.</i> 1. d. pear.
Of the flowers,	Blu'me, <i>f.</i> 1. c. flower.
To the letters,	Brief, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. letter.
The breasts,	*Brust, <i>f.</i> 1. b. breast.
To the books,	*Buch, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c. book.
The books,	
To the canals,	*Canal', <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. canal.
To the cardinals,	*Cardinal', <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. cardinal.
To the roofs,	*Dach, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c. roof.
Of the badgers,	*Dachs, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. badger.
The dikes,	*Damm, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. dike.
To the thumbs,	Dar'men, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a. thumb.
Of the swords,	De'gen, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a. sword.
To the poets,	Dich'ter, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a. poet.
To the villages,	*Dorf, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c. village.
To the heirs,	Er'be, <i>m.</i> 2. a. heir.
The eggs,	Ei, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c. egg.
To the fables,	Fabel, <i>f.</i> 1. c. fable.
Of the threads,	*Faden, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a. thread.
Of the barrels,	*Fas, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c. barrel.
To the fists,	*Faust, <i>f.</i> 1. b. fist.
Of the enemies,	Feind, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. enemy.
To the fields,	Feld, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c. field.
Of the rocks,	Fels, <i>m.</i> 2. b. rock.
To the fetters,	Fess'el, <i>f.</i> 1. c. fetter.
Of the plains,	Flur, <i>f.</i> 1. d. plain.
To the rivers,	*Fluß, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. river.
The wives,	Frau, <i>f.</i> 1. d. wife.
Of the female friends,	Freun'din, <i>f.</i> 1. c. (female) friend.
To the feet,	*Fus, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. foot.

The forks,  
 The geese,  
 To the guest,  
 The prayers,  
 Of the dangers,  
 The countries,  
 The spirits,  
 Of the money,  
 The ghosts,  
 To the conversation,  
 To the limbs,  
 The gods,  
 The graves,  
 Of the count,  
 The property,  
 The cocks,  
 Of the hands,  
 Of the skins,  
 Of the heroes,  
 Of the master,  
 To the wood,  
 To the fowl,  
 Of the hats,  
 Of the islands,  
 To the year,  
 Of the Jew,  
 Of the boy,  
 To the calves,  
 To the children,  
 Of the churches,  
 To the coats,  
 The cloisters,  
 Of the buttons,  
 To the heads,  
 Of the salmon,  
 To the countries,  
 Of the burdens,  
 To the holes,

Ga'bel, *f.* 1. *c.* fork.  
 \*Gans, *f.* 1. *b.* goose.  
 \*Gast, *m.* 3. *b. b.* guest.  
 Gebet', *n.* 3. *b. b.* prayer.  
 Gefahr', *f.* 1. *d.* danger.  
 Ge'gend, *f.* 1. *d.* country.  
 Geist, *m.* 3. *b. e.* spirit.  
 Geld, *n.* 3. *b. e.* money.  
 Gespenst', *n.* 3. *b. e.* ghost.  
 Gespräch', *n.* 3. *b. b.* conversation.  
 Glied, *n.* 3. *b. e.* limb.  
 \*Gott, *m.* 3. *b. e.* God.  
 \*Grab, *n.* 3. *b. e.* grave.  
 Graf, *m.* 2. *b.* count.  
 \*Gut, *n.* 3. *b. e.* property.  
 \*Hahn, *m.* 3. *b. b.* cock.  
 \*Hand, *f.* 1. *b.* hand.  
 \*Haut, *f.* 1. *b.* skin.  
 Held, *m.* 2. *b.* hero.  
 Herr, *m.* 2. *b.* master.  
 \*Holz, *n.* 3. *b. e.* wood.  
 \*Huhn, *n.* 3. *b. e.* fowl.  
 \*Hut, *m.* 3. *b. b.* hat.  
 Insel, *f.* 1. *c.* island.  
 Jahr, *n.* 3. *b. b.* year.  
 Ju'de, *m.* 2. *a.* Jew.  
 Junge, *m.* 2. *a.* boy.  
 \*Kalb, *n.* 3. *b. e.* calf.  
 Kind, *n.* 3. *b. e.* child.  
 Kir'che, *f.* 1. *c.* church.  
 Kleid, *n.* 3. *b. e.* coat.  
 \*Klo'ster, *n.* 3. *a. a.* cloister.  
 \*Knopf, *m.* 3. *b. b.* button.  
 \*Kopf, *m.* 3. *b. b.* head.  
 Lachs, *m.* 3. *b. b.* salmon.  
 \*Land, *n.* 3. *b. b. & e. †* country.  
 Last, *f.* 1. *d.* burden.  
 \*Loch, *n.* 3. *b. e.* hole.

---

† The *a* in *Land* is changed into *â*, and the *o* in *Ort* into *ö* (in the plural number), only when these nouns are declined according to 3. *b. e.*; but they preserve their original vowels, when declined according to 3. *b. b.*

Of the maids,	*Magd, <i>f.</i> 1. b. maid.
To the almonds,	Mandel, <i>f.</i> 1. c. almond.
Of the mice,	*Maus, <i>f.</i> 1. b. mouse.
Of the mothers,	*Mut'ter, <i>f.</i> 1. a. mother.
To the nightingales,	Nacht'igall, <i>f.</i> 1. d. nightingale.
Of the fools,	Narr, <i>m.</i> 2. b. fool.
The nuts,	*Nuss, <i>f.</i> 1. b. nut.
Of the places,	*Ort, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. & c.† place.
To the popes,	*Paps't, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. pope.
Of the path,	Pfad, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. path.
The plants,	Pflan'ze, <i>f.</i> 1. c. plant.
Of the jaw,	Kack'en, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a. jaw.
The borders,	*Rand, <i>m.</i> 3. b. c. border.
Of the rank,	Rang, <i>m.</i> 3. b. rank.
The spaces,	*Raum, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. space.
The riches,	*Reich'thum, <i>m.</i> 3. b. c. riches.
To the judge,	Rich'ter, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a. judge.
To the juices,	*Saft, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. juice.
To the songstresses,	Säng'eriu, <i>f.</i> 1. c. songstress.
The troops,	Schaar, <i>f.</i> 1. d. troop.
Of the shadow,	Schat'ten, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a. shadow.
The treasures,	*Schatz, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. treasure.
To the ships,	Schiff, <i>n.</i> 3. b. b. ship.
The shields,	Schild, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. shield.
To the serpents,	Schlange, <i>f.</i> 1. c. serpent.
The castles,	*Schloß, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c. castle.
The debts,	Schuld, <i>f.</i> 1. d. debt.
The swallows,	Schwal'be, <i>f.</i> 1. c. swallow.
Of the soldier,	Soldat', <i>m.</i> 2. b. soldier.
Of the looking-glass,	Spie'gel, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a. looking-glass.
The storks,	*Storch, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. stork.
The stockings,	*Strumpf, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. stocking.
Of the actions,	That, <i>f.</i> 1. d. action.
To the daughters,	*Toch'ter, <i>f.</i> 1. a. daughter.
To the dreams,	*Traum, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. dream.
The cloths,	*Tuch, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c. cloth.
Of the virtues,	Tu'gend, <i>f.</i> 1. d. virtue.
Of the watches,	Uhr, <i>f.</i> 1. d. watch.
The nations,	*Volk, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c. nation.
To the forests,	*Wald, <i>m.</i> 3. b. c. forest.

---

† See note on preceding page.

Of the walls,	*Wand, <i>f.</i> 1. <i>b.</i> wall.
Of the women,	Weib, <i>n.</i> 3. <i>b. c.</i> woman.
Of the worlds,	Welt, <i>f.</i> 1. <i>d.</i> world.
Of the wind,	Wind, <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i> wind.
The wishes,	*Wunsch, <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i> wish.
The worms,	*Wurm, <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. c.</i> worm.
Of the numbers,	Zahl, <i>f.</i> 1. <i>d.</i> number.
To the tooth,	*Zahn, <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i> tooth.
To the times,	Zeit, <i>f.</i> 1. <i>d.</i> time.
To the tents,	Zelt, <i>n.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i> tent.
Of the circle,	Zirkel, <i>m.</i> 3. <i>a. a.</i> circle.
The tolls,	*Zoll, <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i> toll.
The aims,	Zweck, <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i> aim.
Of the onion,	Zwiebel, <i>f.</i> 1. <i>c.</i> onion.
Of Catherine,	Kathari'na, Catherine.
Of the Hague,	Der Haag, the Hague.
Of Huss,	Huss, Huss.
Of the Indies,	Indien, <i>n.</i> India.
To the Netherlands,	Die Nie'derlande, the Netherlands.
Of the Sibyl,	Sibyl'le, Sibyl.

## Recapitulatory Exercises.

Die Vo'gel flie'gen in der Luft.  
 Die Fisch'e schwim'men in dem Wasser.  
 Die Blät'ter säu'seln in dem Win'de.  
 Die Schmet'terlinge flat'tern um die Blu'men.  
 Die Vie'nen sam'meln Ho'nig von den Blu'men und tra'gen  
 ihn nach den Vie'nenkörben für ih're Zel'len.  
 Die Sper'linge le'sen Hal'me auf und bau'en Nes'ter für  
 ih're Brut.  
 Die Ju'gend ist die Früh'lingszeit des le'bens.

*Vo'gel, <i>m.</i> 3. <i>a. a.</i> bird.	säu'seln, rustle.
flie'gen, fly.	Wind, <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i> wind.
in, in. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	Schmet'terling, <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i>
*Luft, <i>f.</i> 1. <i>b.</i> air.	butterfly.
Fisch, <i>m.</i> 3. <i>b. b.</i> fish.	flat'tern, flutter.
schwim'men, swim.	um, about. ( <i>Acc.</i> )
Wass'er, <i>n.</i> 3. <i>a. a.</i> water.	Blume, <i>f.</i> 1. <i>c.</i> flower.
*Blatt, <i>n.</i> 3. <i>b. c.</i> leaf.	Vie'ne, <i>f.</i> 1. <i>c.</i> bee.

sam'meln, collect.	Sper'ling, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. sparrow.
Ho'nig, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. honey.	le'sen - auf, pick up.
von, from. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	Stalm, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. straw.
und, and.	bau'en, build.
tra'gen, carry.	Nest, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c.
ihn, it.	Brut, <i>f.</i> 1. brood.
nach, to. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	die Ju'gend, <i>f.</i> 1. youth.
*Bie'nenkorb, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b. bee-hive.	ist, is.
für, for. ( <i>Acc.</i> )	Früh'lingszeit, <i>f.</i> 1. d. spring-time.
ih're, their.	das le'ben, <i>n.</i> 3. a. a. life.
Zel'le, <i>f.</i> 1. c. cell.	

The hen sees the kite in the air, and gathers her chickens under her wings.

Fire has its uses and its dangers; we call it a good servant, but a cruel master.

The Thebans, under the command of Pelopidas and Epaminondas, freed themselves from the yoke of the Spartans.

By a sloop we understand a boat with one mast, and four or five sails.

Truth triumphs over superstition and skepticism, by means of investigation and reflection.

The whole earth appears, to the philanthropist, as one family mansion.

hen, Hen'ne, <i>f.</i> 1. c.	we, wir.
sees, sieht.	call, nen'nen.
kite, Sei'er, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a.	it, es.
in, in. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	good, gu'ten.
air, *Luft, <i>f.</i> 1. b.	servant, Die'ner, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a.
and, und.	but, a'ber.
gathers, versam'melt.	cruel, grau'samen.
her, ih're.	master, Herr, <i>m.</i> 2. a.
chickens, Küch'lein, <i>n.</i> 3. a. a.	Theban, Theba'ner, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a.
under, un'ter. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	command, An'führung, <i>f.</i> 1.
her, ih'ren.	of, <i>def. art. sing.</i>
wing, Flü'gel, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a.	freed, befrei'ten.
fire, das Feu'er, <i>n.</i> 3. a. a.	themselves, sich.
has, hat.	from, von. ( <i>Dat.</i> )
its, sei'ne.	yoke, Joch, <i>n.</i> 3. b. b.
use, Vor'theil, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.	Spartan, Sparta'ner, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a.
danger, Gefahr', <i>f.</i> 1. d.	by, un'ter. ( <i>Dat.</i> )

sloop, Schalup'pe, <i>f.</i> 1. c.	by means, mit der Hil'fe.
we understand, verste'hen wir.	of, von. ( <i>Dat.</i> )
boat, Fahr'zeug, <i>n.</i> 3. b. b.	investigation, Untersu'chung,
with, mit. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	<i>f.</i> 1. d.
one, ei'nem.	reflection, Nach'denken, <i>n.</i> 3. a.
mast, Mast, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.	whole, ganze.
four, vier.	earth, Er'de, <i>f.</i> 1. c.
or, o'der.	appears, erscheint'.
five, fünf.	to, ( <i>Dat.</i> )
sail, Segel, <i>n.</i> 3. a. a.	philanthropist, Men'schen-
truth, die Wahr'heit, <i>f.</i> 1. d.	freund, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.
triumphs, triumphirt'.	as, als.
over, u'ber. ( <i>Acc.</i> )	one, Ein.
superstition, U'berglaube, <i>m.</i>	family mansion, *Stamm'-
3. c.	haus, <i>n.</i> 3. b. e.
skepticism, Zwei'felsucht, <i>f.</i> 1.	

## CHAPTER III.

## ADJECTIVES.

The Adjective appears in its simple or adverbial form, when its termination is not affected by gender or declension; as, Die Bür'ger, gut und frei, The citizens, good and free.

## § 1. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are declined by adding certain letters to their simple form.

For the use of the simple and the declinable forms see Book II. Chapter 3. § 1. Rules I. II. and III.

Every adjective is declined in *three* different forms.

## First Declension.

Adjectives are inflected according to the first declension, *when they are not preceded by an article or a pronoun.* The form of this declension is nearly like that of the article, *der, die, das.* The adjective *gut*, good, for example, is thus declined :



*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	gu'ter,	gu'te,	gu'tes,	good.
<i>G.</i>	gu'tes, or gu'ten* <sup>†</sup>	gu'ter,	gu'tes, or gu'ten,*	of good.
<i>D.</i>	gu'tem,	gu'ter,	gu'tem,	to good.
<i>A.</i>	gu'ten,	gu'te,	gu'tes,	good.

*Plural for the three genders.*

	gu'te,	good.
	gu'ter,	of good.
	gu'ten,	to good.
	gu'te,	good.

The following is an example of an adjective in the first declension, as joined to nouns of different genders :

*Singular.**Masc.*

<i>N.</i>	gu'ter Wein,	good wine.
<i>G.</i>	gu'ten or gu'tes Wei'nes,	of good wine.
<i>D.</i>	gu'tem Wei'ne,	to good wine.
<i>A.</i>	gu'ten Wein,	good wine.

*Fem.*

<i>N.</i>	gu'te Frucht,	good fruit.
<i>G.</i>	gu'ter Frucht,	of good fruit.
<i>D.</i>	gu'ter Frucht,	to good fruit.
<i>A.</i>	gu'te Frucht,	good fruit.

*Neut.*

<i>N.</i>	gu'tes Brod,	good bread.
<i>G.</i>	gu'tes or gu'ten Bro'des,	of good bread.
<i>D.</i>	gu'tem Brode,	to good bread.
<i>A.</i>	gu'tes Brod,	good bread.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i>	gu'te Wei'ne, Fruch'te, Brode,	good wines, fruits,
<i>G.</i>	gu'ter Wei'ne, Fruch'te, Bro'de,	of good, &c. [loaves.
<i>D.</i>	gu'ten Wei'nen, Fruch'ten, Bro'den,	to good, &c.
<i>A.</i>	gu'te Wei'ne, Fruch'te, Bro'de,	good, &c.

So decline gro'ser \*Mann, 3. b. e., great man; wah're Geschich'te, 1. c., true history; lie'bes Kind, 3. b. e., dear child.

---

\* The use of the one or the other of these two forms (gu'tes, gu'ten,) depends on euphony alone.

## Second Declension.

Adjectives are inflected according to the second declension, when they are preceded by the definite article, *der, die, das*; or by a demonstrative or relative pronoun; as, *die'ser*, this; *je'ner*, that; *der'jenige*, that; *dersel'be*, the same; *wel'cher*, who; or by the indefinite pronouns, *je'der*, *jeg'licher*, *jed'weder*, every, (the last three having no plural.) Ex.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>der gu'te,</i>	<i>die gu'te,</i>	<i>das gu'te,</i>	the good.
<i>G.</i>	<i>des gu'ten,</i>	<i>der gu'ten,</i>	<i>des gu'ten,</i>	of the good.
<i>D.</i>	<i>dem gu'ten,</i>	<i>der gu'ten,</i>	<i>dem gu'ten,</i>	to the good.
<i>A.</i>	<i>den gu'ten,</i>	<i>die gu'te,</i>	<i>das gu'te,</i>	the good.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i>	<i>die gu'ten,</i>	the good.
<i>G.</i>	<i>der gu'ten,</i>	of the good.
<i>D.</i>	<i>den gu'ten,</i>	to the good.
<i>A.</i>	<i>die gu'ten,</i>	the good.

*Der gu'te*, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i>	<i>der gu'te Mann,</i>	the good man.
<i>G.</i>	<i>des gu'ten Man'nes,</i>	of the good man.
<i>D.</i>	<i>dem gu'ten Man'ne,</i>	to the good man!
<i>A.</i>	<i>den gu'ten Mann,</i>	the good man.

*Die gu'te*, with a feminine noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i>	<i>die gu'te Frau,</i>	the good woman.
<i>G.</i>	<i>der gu'ten Frau,</i>	of the good woman.
<i>D.</i>	<i>der gu'ten Frau,</i>	to the good woman.
<i>A.</i>	<i>die gu'te Frau,</i>	the good woman.

*Das gu'te*, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i>	<i>das gu'te Werk,</i>	the good work.
<i>G.</i>	<i>des gu'ten Wer'kes,</i>	of the good work.
<i>D.</i>	<i>dem gu'ten Wer'ke,</i>	to the good work.
<i>A.</i>	<i>das gu'te Werk,</i>	the good work.

*Plural for the three genders.*

- N.* die gu'ten Män'ner, Frau'en, Wer'ke,  
the good men women, works.  
*G.* der gu'ten Män'ner, Frau'en, Wer'ke, of the good, &c.  
*D.* den gu'ten Män'nern, Frau'en, Wer'ken, to the good, &c.  
*A.* die gu'ten Män'ner, Frau'en, Wer'ke, the good, &c.

So decline, der klei'ne Kna'be, 2. a., the little boy; die klü'ge Frau, 1. d., the prudent woman; das klei'ne Mäd'chen, 3. a. a., the little girl.

## Third Declension.

Adjectives are inflected according to the third declension, when they are preceded by the indefinite article, ein, ei'ne, ein; or by a personal or a possessive pronoun, as, ich, I; du, thou; er, he, &c.; mein, mine; dein, thine; sein, his, &c., or the indefinite pronoun kein, none. This declension is like the first in the accusative and nominative singular, and like the second in the genitive and dative singular and in all the cases of the plural.

The declension is as follows :

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	mein gu'ter,	mei'ne gu'te,	mein gu'tes,	my good.
<i>G.</i>	mei'nes gu'ten,	mei'ner gu'ten,	mei'nes gu'ten,	of my good.
<i>D.</i>	mei'nem gu'ten,	mei'ner gu'ten,	mei'nem gu'ten,	to my good.
<i>A.</i>	mei'nen gu'ten,	mei'ne gu'te,	mein gu'tes,	my good.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i>	mei'ne gu'ten,	my good,
<i>G.</i>	mei'ner gu'ten,	of my good.
<i>D.</i>	mei'nen gu'ten,	to my good.
<i>A.</i>	mei'ne gu'ten,	my good.

Mein gu'ter, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i>	mein gu'ter Bru'der,	my good brother.
<i>G.</i>	mei'nes gu'ten Bru'ders,	of my good brother.
<i>D.</i>	mei'nem gu'ten Bru'der,	to my good brother.
<i>A.</i>	mei'nen gu'ten Bru'der,	my good brother.

Mei'ne gu'te, with a feminine noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

N.	mei'ne gu'te Schwes'ter,	my good sister.
G.	mei'ner gu'ten Schwes'ter,	of my good sister.
D.	mei'ner gu'ten Schwes'ter,	to my good sister.
A.	mei'ne gu'te Schwes'ter,	my good sister.

Mein gu'tes, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

N.	mein gu'tes Kind,	my good child.
G.	mei'nes gu'ten Kin'des,	of my good child.
D.	mei'nem gu'ten Kin'de,	to my good child.
A.	mein gu'tes Kind,	my good child.

*Plural for the three genders.*

N.	mei'ne gu'ten Brü'der, Schwes'tern, Kin'der,	my good brothers, sisters, children.
G.	mei'ner gu'ten Brü'der, Schwes'tern, Kin'der,	of my, &c.
D.	mei'nen gu'ten Brü'dern, Schwes'tern, Kin'dern,	to my, &c.
A.	mei'ne gu'ten Brü'der, Schwes'tern, Kin'der,	my, &c.

So decline, ein wei'ser \*Mann, 3. b. c., a wise man ; ei'ne schö'ne Frau, 1. d., a fair lady ; ein klei'nes Haus, 3. b. c., a small house ; dei'ne treu'e Freun'din, 1. c., thy faithful (female) friend.

The following table exhibits the terminations of the adjectives, according to the three declensions.

First Declension, like *gu'ter*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	er	e	eſ	e
<i>Gen.</i>	eſ or en	er	eſ or en	er
<i>Dat.</i>	em	er	em	en
<i>Acc.</i>	en	e	eſ	e

Second Declension, like *der gu'te*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	e	e	e	en
<i>Gen.</i>	en	en	en	en
<i>Dat.</i>	en	en	en	en
<i>Acc.</i>	en	e	e	en

Third Declension, like *mein gu'ter*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	er	e	eſ	en
<i>Gen.</i>	en	en	en	en
<i>Dat.</i>	en	en	en	en
<i>Acc.</i>	en	e	eſ	en

*Promiscuous Exercises on the Adjectives and Nouns.*

Of the fine children.	schön.	Kind, n. 3. b. e.
To a fine child.	glücklich.	Tag, m. 3. b. b.
Of happy days.	gut.	*Mann, m. 3. b. e.
Of good men.	unwissend.	Leute, m. 3. b.
The ignorant people.	flüchtig.	*Luft, f. 1. b.
The liquid air.	fleißig.	*Magd, f. 1. b.
The industrious maid.	leicht.	Arbeit, f. 1. d.
An easy work.	schwer.	Wahlzeit, f. 1. d.
Of hard labor.	sparfam.	Sichte, f. 1. c.
My frugal meal.	erhaben.	Eiche, f. 1. c.
Tall firs.	hart.	Ulme, f. 1. c.
Of the hard oak.	schattig.	Eisen, n. 3. a. a.
A shady elm.	hart.	Erche, f. 1. c.
Of hard iron.	früh.	*Land, n. 3. b. b. & e.
The early lark.	unbekannt.	Held, m. 2. b.
An unknown land.	trojanisch.	Europa, n.
Of the Trojan hero.	gesittet.	Amerika, n.
Of civilized Europe.	frei.	Hesla, m.
Free America.	feurig.	Helena, f.
To the fiery Hecla.	schön.	Diana, f.
Of the fair Helen.	keusch.	Meile, f. 1. c.
The chaste Diana.	geographisch.	Donner, m. 3. a. a.
The geographical miles.	schrecklich.	Spiel, n. 3. b. b.
Terrible thunder.	olympisch.	*Thal, n. 3. b. c.
The Olympic games.	entfernt.	Blume, f. 1. c.
Of distant valleys.	schön.	*Vater, m. 3. a. a.
Of fine flowers.	fromm.	Butter, f. 1.
To my pious father.	frisch.	Kleid, n. 3. b. e.
To fresh butter.	roth.	Brod, n. 3. b. b.
To a red coat.	schwarz.	
Black bread.		

*Observation I.* When several adjectives are, one after another, joined to the same substantive, they are generally declined as each of them would be, if it stood alone, according to the above rules. Thus, in the example, mein guter alter Freund, my good old friend, both adjectives, guter and alter, are inflected according to the third declension; in die treue zärtliche Mutter, the faithful, tender mother, both adjectives are inflected according to the second declension; only when adjectives are put together without being preceded by an

article or pronoun, as, gu'ter ro'ther Wein, good red wine; gu'te ro'the Far'be, good red color; gu'tes ro'thes Tuch, good red cloth, the first adjective is inflected according to the first declension, while the subsequent adjectives may be inflected either according to the first or third; except the genitive case singular of the masculine and the neuter genders, in which the subsequent adjectives must be inflected after the third declension. The following examples exhibit these two modes of declining.

## Masculine.

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i> gu'ter ro'ther Wein,	good red wine.
<i>G.</i> gu'tes or gu'ten* ro'then Wei'nes,	of good red wine.
<i>D.</i> gu'tem ro'them or ro'then Wei'ne,	to good red wine.
<i>A.</i> gu'ten ro'then Wein,	good red wine.

## Feminine.

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i> gu'te ro'the Far'be,	good red color.
<i>G.</i> gu'ter ro'ther or ro'then Far'be,	of good red color.
<i>D.</i> gu'ter ro'ther or ro'then Far'be,	to good red color.
<i>A.</i> gu'te ro'the Far'be,	good red color.

## Neuter.

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i> gu'tes ro'thes Tuch,	good red cloth.
<i>G.</i> gu'tes or gu'ten* ro'then Tu'ches,	of good red cloth.
<i>D.</i> gu'tem ro'them or ro'then Tu'che,	to good red cloth.
<i>A.</i> gu'tes ro'thes Tuch,	good red cloth.

---

\* The difference between *es* and *en* in the genitive singular of the *first* adjective masculine or neuter, has nothing to do with the two modes of declining here exhibited, but is a matter of euphony, as has been before observed, page 35. But the genitive of the *subsequent* adjectives never ends in *es*, according to the first declension, but always in *en*, according to the third. Thus we cannot say, gu'tes ro'thes Wei'nes, but we must say, gu'tes (or gu'ten) ro'then Wei'nes.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i> gu'te ro'the or ro'then	Wei'ne,	Far'ben,	Zü'cher,
good red	wines,	colors,	cloths.
<i>G.</i> gu'ter ro'ther or ro'then	Wei'ne,	Far'ben,	Zü'cher, of, &c.
<i>D.</i> gu'ten ro'then	Wei'nen,	Far'ben,	Zü'chern, to, &c.
<i>A.</i> gu'te ro'the or ro'then	Wei'ne,	Far'ben,	Zü'cher, fine, &c.

In good writing and speaking, the choice between these two modes of declining an adjective when subsequent to another, though frequently depending on euphony, is sometimes determined by the degree of importance assigned to the subsequent adjective. Thus, in speaking of "good domestic cloths," we may design either to distinguish good *domestic* from good *foreign* cloths, or *good* domestic from *bad* domestic cloths. The first meaning is expressed in German by inflecting the subsequent like the preceding adjective, according to the first declension; as, gu'ter ein'heimischer Zü'cher, of good *domestic* cloths; but in order to express the last mentioned meaning we decline the subsequent adjective according to the third declension; as, gu'ter ein'heimischen Zü'cher, of *good* domestic cloths.

The above observation concerning the declension of an adjective subsequent to another, applies also to adjectives preceded by the indefinite pronouns, meh'rere, several; ei'nige, some; et'liche, some; wel'che, some\*; man'che, some; we'nige, few; vie'le, many; al'le, all. Thus to distinguish "all good men," from all that are not so, we say, al'le gu'te Men'schen; but in order to distinguish "all good men" from *some* good ones, we say, al'le gu'ten Men'schen.

*Observation II.* When indeclinable words precede, whether numerals, adjectives, or adverbs, they have no influence upon the adjective; as,

Et'was gu'ter Wein,	some good wine.
Viel frisch'e Milch,	much fresh milk.
We'nig kal'tes Wasser,	a little cold water.
Sehr gu'te Men'schen,	very good men.

---

\* This indefinite pronoun is not to be confounded with the relative, wel'cher, wel'che, wel'ches, who, which. If the latter precedes an adjective, this is always inflected according to the second declension, as has been remarked, page 36.



Vier baa're Tha'ler,	four dollars in cash.
Fünf lang'e Jah're,	five long years.
Nach zehn lang'en Jah'ren,	after ten long years.

But the adjective is declined according to the above rules concerning subsequent adjectives (*Obs. I.*), when it is preceded by *zwei* or *drei*, as these two numerals may be declined in the genitive and dative. Examples :

G. <i>Zwei'er lang'er</i> or <i>lang'en Tage</i> ,	of two long days.
G. <i>Drei'er baa'rer</i> or <i>baa'ren Tha'ler</i> ,	of three dollars in cash.
D. <i>Drei'en gu'ten Men'schen</i> ,	to three good men.

*Observation III.* If an adjective in its simple form is put before another adjective, the termination of which agrees with the following substantive, in gender, number, and case, the first adjective is not to be considered as denoting a quality of the substantive, but as an adverb, qualifying the adjective after it. The following examples will explain this difference.

Ein gan'zes neu'es Haus,	a whole, new house.
Ein ganz neu'es Haus,	a house wholly or quite new.
Ein neu'es ein'gebundnes Buch,	a new book, bound up.
Ein neu ein'gebundnes Buch,	a book newly bound.
Ein hal'bes gebra'tenes Huhn,	half a roasted chicken.
Ein halb gebra'tenes Huhn,	a chicken half roasted.

*Observation IV.* In familiar language, and in poetry, the termination of an adjective, when it precedes a neuter noun, is sometimes dropped in the nominative and accusative case singular, and its simple form alone is retained; as, *schön Wetter*, fine weather, instead of *schö'nes Wetter*; *ein froh Gesicht*, a cheerful face, instead of *ein fro'hes Gesicht*.

*Observation V.* When two adjectives of the same termination come together, coupled by the conjunction *und*, and, it is usual in familiar discourse, to drop the termination of the first; as, *ein roth: und weißes Gesicht*, a red and white face; *ein genug: und ar'beitsamer Mensch*, a contented and industrious man.

Adjectives may be used as substantives, both in the singular and plural; as, *der Weise*, the wise man; *die Weise*, the wise woman; *die Weisen*, the sages; *das Erhabene*, the sublime; *der Gelehr'te*, the learned man; *die Schö'ne*, the fair woman; *der Bekann'te*, the male acquaintance; *die Bekann'te*, the female acquaintance; *der Verwand'te*, the male

relative; die Verwand'te, the female relative; un'sere Bekann'ten und Verwand'ten, our acquaintances and relations.

## § 2. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The degrees of comparison are the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*. The comparative is formed by adding *r* or *er*, and the superlative by adding *st* or *est*, to the end of the simple word, or positive; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Klein, little;	klei'ner, less;	kleinst, least.
Weise, wise;	wei'ser, wiser;	wei'sest, wisest.
Dreist, bold;	drei'ster, bolder;	drei'stest,* boldest.

So form :

hohl, hollow.	lahm, lame.
rauh, rough.	stolz, proud.
blau, blue.	roh, raw.
schlecht, bad.	fest, firm.
sanft, soft.	zähm, tame.
mü'de, weary.	schlank, slender.

The preceding adjectives do not change their vowels in the comparative and superlative, but most adjectives change the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, in the comparative and superlative; as.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
alt, old;	äl'ter, older;	äl'test, oldest.
roth, red;	rö'ther, redder;	rö'thest, reddest.
kurz, short;	kür'zer, shorter;	kür'zest, shortest.

So form :

*arm, poor.	*kalt, cold.
*bang'e, fearful.	*klug, prudent.
*dumm, stupid.	*nass, wet.

---

\* The superlative degree is seldom used in its simple form, but is commonly made to agree, in gender, number, and case, with the noun to which it refers, by adding to the superlative such endings as the declension of adjectives requires (see page 39); ex. klein'ste Gab'e, smallest gift; der wei'seste Rath, the wisest counsel; sein drei'stestes Unterneh'men, his boldest enterprise.

\*grob, coarse.

\*schwach, weak.

\*groß, great.

\*stark, strong.

Some adjectives form their comparison irregularly ; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
gut, good ;	besser, better ;	best, best.
hoch, high ;	hö'her, higher ;	höchst, highest.
na'he, near ;	nä'her, nearer ;	nächst, nearest.
viel, much ;	mehr, more ;	meist, most.

The comparative and superlative of adjectives are declined like the positive.

The adjective rein, pure, comparative rei'ner, superlative rein'st, is thus declined in its comparative degree :

First Declension :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
rei'nerer,	rei'ner,	rei'neres,

pur, &c.

Second Declension :

der rei'ner, die rei'ner, das rei'ner, the purer, &c.

Third Declension :

mein rei'nerer, mei'ne rei'ner, mein rei'neres, my purer, &c.

In the same manner is declined the superlative of rein ; viz.

First Declension :

rein'ster, rein'ste, rein'stes, purest, &c.

Second Declension :

der rein'ste, die rein'ste, das rein'ste, the purest, &c.

Third Declension :

mein rein'ster, mei'ne rein'ste, mein rein'stes, my purest, &c.

Thus inflect through the three declensions :

Ein ed'lerer \*Mann, 3. b. c., a more noble man.

Bes'ter Freund, 3. b. b., best friend.

Die wär'mere \*Luft, 1. b., warmer air.

Mein jü'ng'eres Kind, 3. b. c., my younger child.

Das frei'ste \*Land, 3. b. c., the freest country.

*Observations on the Comparison of Adjectives.*

I. The *e* is often dropped in the comparative of adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, and *er*; as,

*Positive.*

*e'del*, noble;  
*sich'er*, safe;  
*vollkom'men*, perfect;

*Comparative.*

*ed'ler*, nobler, (for *e'deler*.)  
*sich'rer*, safer, (for *sich'erer*.)  
*vollkomm'ner*, more perfect,  
(for *vollkom'mener*.)

II. Most primitives change their vowels in the comparative and superlative; as, *stark*, strong; *stär'ker*, stronger; *der stärk'ste*, the strongest; *kurz*, short; *kür'zer*, *der kür'zeste*. But the following are exceptions, as well as some others previously noticed, (page 44); *falsch*, false; *gera'de*, straight; *hold*, affectionate; *lo'se*, loose; *glatt*, smooth; *matt*, faint; *nackt*, naked; *rund*, round; *stumpf*, dull; *platt*, flat; *satt*, satiated; *schlaff*, slack. Derivatives never change their vowels; as, *last'erhaft*, vicious; *last'erhafter*, more vicious; *der last'erhaf'teste*, the most vicious.

Recapitulatory Exercises on Adjectives.

Die Natur' zeigt uns schön'ere Gegenstände als die Kunst.

Die berg'ichten Gegenden sind an'genehmer als die e'benen.

Die Wolle der säch'sischen Schaa'fe ist fei'ner als die Wolle der englischen.

Die Mandeln ha'ben ei'nen fei'neren Geschmack' als die Nü'sse.

Die Figur' des Zir'fels ist die vollkom'menste unter den geometrischen Figur'en.

Die Grie'chen wa'ren ein gebil'deteres Volk als die Rö'mer.

Der treffliche Mann fand un'ter Wil'den ei'ne freund'lichere Aufnahme als in dem gest'iteten Euro'pa.

die Natur, nature.

zeigt, exhibits.

uns, to us.

schön, fine.

\*Gegenstand, object.

als, than.

die Kunst, art.

bergicht, mountainous.

Gegend, country.

sind, are.

angenehm, pleasant.

eben, plain.

Wolle, wool.

säch'sisch, Saxon.

Schaa'f, sheep.

ist, is.

fein, fine.

englisch, English.

Mandel, almond.	gebildet, cultivated.
haben, have.	Volk, people.
Geschmack, taste.	der Römer, the Roman.
Nuß, nut.	trefflich, excellent.
Figur, figure.	Mann, man.
Zirkel, circle.	fund, found.
vollkommen, complete.	wild, savage.
unter, among.	freundlich, friendly.
geometrisch, geometrical.	Aufnahme, reception.
der Grieche, the Greek.	gestittet, civilized.
waren, were.	

The English and the German are kindred languages.

These little things are great to little men.

His style, though uncultivated, is the richest and boldest in (*the*) modern literature.

The strange man gave the cloak to me, poor forsaken child.

This gentleman possesses the choicest collection of ancient and modern historical works.

You find in this public library a smaller number of volumes, but a larger number of excellent old manuscripts than in the other.

To whom belongs the glory of this wonderful discovery; to Leibnitz, or to Newton?

English, en'glisch.	bold, kühn.
and, und.	in, in. ( <i>Dat.</i> )
German, deutsch.	modern, neu'er.
are, sind,	literature, Literatur', f. 1. d.
kindred, verwandt'.	strange, fremd.
language, Spra'che, f. 1. c.	man, *Mann, m. 3. b. e.
these, die'se.	gave, gab.
little, klein.	cloak, *Mau'tel, m. 3. a. a.
thing, Ding, n. 3. b. b.	to me, mir.
are, sind.	poor, arm.
great, gros.	forsaken, verlas'sen.
to, für. ( <i>Acc.</i> )	child, Kind, n. 3. b. e.
man, Mensch, m. 2. b.	this, die'ser.
his, sei'ne.	gentleman, Herr. m. 2. b.
style, Schreib'art, f. 1. d.	possesses, besitzt'.
though, wie'wohl.	choice, aus'ersuchen.
uncultivated, un'gebildet.	collection, Samm'lung, f. 1. d.
is, ist.	of, ( <i>Gen.</i> )
rich, reich.	ancient, alt.

historical, *geschichtlich*.  
 work, *Werk*, *n.* 3. b. b.  
 you, *ihr*.  
 find, *fin'det*.  
 in, *in.* (*Dat.*)  
 this, *die'ser*.  
 public, *öffentlich*.  
 library, *Bibliothek'*, *f.* 1. d.  
 small, *gering'*.  
 number, *An'zahl*, *f.* 1.  
 of, *von.* (*Dat.*)  
 volume, *\*Band*, *m.* 3. b. b.  
 but, *a'ber*.  
 large, *\*groß*.  
 excellent, *trefflich*.

old, *alt*.  
 manuscript, *Hand'schrift*, *f.* 1. d.  
 than, *als*.  
 in, *in.* (*Dat.*)  
 other, *an'der*.  
 to whom, *wem*.  
 belongs, *gehört'*.  
 glory, *Ruhm*, *m.* 3. b.  
 of, (*Gen.*)  
 this, *die'ser*.  
 wonderful, *wun'derbar*.  
 discovery, *Entdeck'ung*, *f.* 1. d.  
 to, (*Dat.*)  
 or, *o'der*

## CHAPTER IV.

## NUMERALS.

The numbers are divided into *cardinal*, *ordinal*, *proportional*, *distributive*, and *collective*.

I. The *cardinal* numbers are as follows :

(Null or *Ze'ro*, nothing.)

*Ein* or *eins*, one.

*Zwei* (or *zwey*), two.

*Drei* (or *drey*), three.

*Vier*, four.

*Fünf*, five.

*Sechs*, six.

*Sie'ben*, seven.

*Acht*, eight.

*Neun*, nine.

*Ze'hen* or *zehn*, ten.

*Elf* (or *eils*), eleven.

*Zwölf*, twelve.

*Drei'zehn*, thirteen.

*Vier'zehn*, fourteen.

*Fünf'zehn* or *fünf'zehn*, fifteen.

*Sech'zehn*, sixteen.

*Sie'ben'zehn* or *sieb'zehn*, seven-  
 teen.

*Acht'zehn*, eighteen.

*Neun'zehn*, nineteen.

*Zwan'zig*, twenty.

*Ein und zwan'zig*, one and  
 twenty.

*Zwei und zwan'zig*, two and  
 twenty, &c.

*Drei'sig*, thirty.

*Ein und drei'sig*, thirty-one,  
 &c.

*Vier'zig*, forty, &c.

*Fünf'zig* or *Fünf'zig*, fifty, &c.

*Sech'zig*, sixty, &c.

*Sie'ben'zig* or *sieb'zig*, seventy,  
 &c.

*Acht'zig*, eighty, &c.

*Neun'zig*, ninety, &c.

*Hun'dert*, a hundred.

Hun'dert und ein or eins, a hundred and one.

Hun'dert und zwei, a hundred and two, &c.

Zwei hun'dert, two hundred, &c.

Taus'end, a thousand.

Zehn tau'send, ten thousand.

Ei'ne Millio'n, one million.

Zwei Millio'nen, two millions.

Drei Millio'nen, three millions, &c.

Ein tau'send acht hun'dert und ein und drei'sig, 1831.

Some of the cardinal numbers are declinable.

The numeral ein, one, when put before a substantive, is commonly declined like the article ein, a; but, when it stands by itself, it is inflected according to the three declensions of adjectives; as,

1. Ei'ner, ei'ne, ei'nes one; *gen.* ei'nes, ei'ner, ei'nes, of one; &c.

2. Der ei'ne, die ei'ne, das ei'ne, the one; *gen.* des ei'nen, der ei'nen, des ei'nen, of the one; &c.

3. Mein ei'ner, mei'ne ei'ne, mein ei'nes, my one; *gen.* mei'nes ei'nen, mei'ner ei'nen, mei'nes ei'nen, of my one; &c. Zwei\* and drei make zwei'er and drei'er in the genitive, zwei'en and drei'en in the dative (see page 43); most of the other numerals admit of declension in the dative only, by adding en, as, vie'ren, fin'fen, &c.

#### Observations on the Cardinal Numbers.

1. Ein is joined to the noun; as, ein Mann, one man; ei'ne Frau, one woman; and in order to distinguish it from the article, it is pronounced with a stronger accent. Ei'ner is used when the noun is understood; as, hier ist ei'ner, here is one, (that is, one man, or one thing, understood) &c.; hier ist ei'ne, here is one, (that is, one woman) &c. Ein'mal eins ist eins, once one is one. Haben Sie ein Messer, have you a knife? hier ist ei'nes, here is one, (that is, one knife.)

2. The cardinal numbers are converted into substantives, by the addition of er, and in; as, ein Fünf'ziger, a man of fifty; ei'ne Drei'sigerin, a woman of thirty.

3. The ordinal numbers are formed by adding te to the cardinal; except, der er'ste, the first; der drit'te, the third; but after the number nineteen, ste is added.

---

\* The cardinal number, zwei, two, admits of three genders; as, *Masc.* zween, *Fem.* zwö, *Neut.* zwei, two. But, in modern German, zwei is commonly used for all the genders.

II. The *ordinal* numbers are as follows :

Der er'ste, the first.	Der zwei und zwan'zigste, the two and twentieth.
Der zwei'te, the second.	Der drei und zwan'zigste, the three and twentieth.
Der drit'te, the third.	Der drei'zigste, the thirtieth.
Der vier'te, the fourth.	Der ein und drei'zigste, the one and thirtieth, &c.
Der fünf'te, the fifth.	Der vier'zigste, the fortieth.
Der sech'ste, the sixth.	Der fünf'zigste or fünf'zigste, the fiftieth.
Der sie'bente, the seventh.	Der sech'zigste, the sixtieth.
Der ach'te, the eight.	Der sie'benzigste or sieb'zigste, the seventieth.
Der neun'te, the ninth.	Der acht'zigste, the eightieth.
Der zehn'te, the tenth.	Der neun'zigste, the ninetieth.
Der elfte or eilfte, the eleventh.	Der hundertste, the hundredth.
Der zwölf'te, the twelfth.	Der zwei hundertste, the two hundredth.
Der drei'zehnte, the thirteenth.	Der drei hundertste, the three hundredth, &c.
Der vier'zehnte, the fourteenth.	Der tausendste, the thousandth.
Der fünf'zehnte or fünf'zehnte, the fifteenth.	Der zwei tausendste, the two thousandth.
Der sech'zehnte, the sixteenth.	Der drei tausendste, the three thousandth, &c.
Der sie'benzehnte or sieb'zehnte, the seventeenth.	
Der acht'zehnte, the eighteenth.	
Der neun'zehnte, the nineteenth.	
Der zwan'zigste, the twentieth.	
Der ein und zwan'zigste, the one and twentieth.	

In compound numbers the last only assumes the form of an ordinal ; as, *der tausend acht hundert und vier und zwan'zigste*, the one thousand eight hundred and twenty-fourth.

These adjectives may be declined in all three forms.

## 1. Without the article ; as,

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>zwei'ter,</i>	<i>zwei'te,</i>	<i>zwei'tes,</i>	second.
<i>G.</i>	{ <i>zwei'tes</i>	{ <i>zwei'ter,</i>	{ <i>zwei'tes</i>	of a second,
	{ or <i>zwei'ten,</i>			



2. With the definite article ; as,

*N.* der *zwei'te*, die *zwei'te*, das *zwei'te*, the second.

*G.* des *zwei'ten*, der *zwei'ten*, des *zwei'ten*, of the second, &c.

*Der an'dere*, the other, is used as synonymous with *der zwei'te*, where there are only two persons or things spoken of.

3. With the indefinite article ; as,

*N.* ein *zwei'ter*, ei'ne *zwei'te*, ein *zwei'tes*, a second.

*G.* ei'nes *zwei'ten*, ei'ner *zwei'ten*, ei'nes *zwei'ten*, of a second, &c.

The Germans always say, *ein und zwan'zigste*, one and twentieth ; *zwei und drei'zigste*, two and thirtieth, and the like ; but never, as in English, *zwan'zig er'ste*, twenty-first ; *drei'sig zwei'te*, thirty-second, &c.

*Observations.* Partitive and fractional numbers are formed by a composition of ordinal and cardinal numbers, with various words or letters.

1. With *halb* (half), thus :

*Un'derthalb*,\* (for *zwei'tehalb*,) one and a half.

*Drit'tehalb*, two and a half.

*Bier'tehalb*, three and a half.

*Fünf'tehalb*, four and a half.

*Sech'stehalb*, five and a half.

*Sie'bentehalb*, or *sieb'tehalb*, six and a half.

*Zehn'tehalb*, nine and a half, &c.

*Examples.* *Vor an'derthalb Jah'ren*, a year and a half ago ; in *drit'tehalb Stun'den*, in two hours and a half ; but in speaking of the hour of the day, the Germans say, *halb eins*, half past twelve ; *halb zwei*, half past one, &c.

2. With *theil* (part), as :

*Das Drit'theil*, the third or third part.

*Das Bier'theil*, the quarter or fourth part.

*Das Fünf'theil*, the fifth or fifth part.

*Das Vier'theil Hun'dert*, or *das Vier'tel Hun'dert*, the quarter of a hundred, &c.

---

\* This mode of compounding seldom exceeds *zwölf'tehalb*, eleven and a half.

In the above compound words, *theil* is frequently contracted into *tel*; as,

Ein *Drit'tel*, a third part, or one third.

Ein *Bier'tel*, a fourth part, or quarter.

Ein *Fünftel*, a fifth, or one fifth.

Ein *Sechstel*, one sixth.

Ein *Zehn'tel*, one tenth.

Ein *Zwan'zigstel*, one twentieth, &c.

So in the plural, as :

*Zwei Drit'tel*, two thirds.

*Drei Bier'tel*, three fourths.

*Bier Sie'bentel*, four sevenths, &c.

These are regarded as substantives, and of the neuter gender; but *Theil*, when used separately, is masculine.

III. Numerals of *proportion* are :

Ein'fach or ein'fältig, single.

Zwei'fach or zwei'fältig, double.

Drei'fach or drei'fältig, treble.

Bier'fach or vier'fältig, fourfold, &c.

Hun'dertfach or hun'dertfältig, centuple, or a hundred fold.

Tau'sendfach or tau'sendfältig, a thousand fold, &c.

The above numerals, in *fach*, or *fältig*, are regularly declined, like other adjectives.

IV. Numbers of *distribution* are thus formed :

Er'stens, or erst'lich, firstly, or in the first place.

Zwei'tens, or zum an'dern, secondly.

Drit'tens, or zum drit'ten, thirdly.

Bier'tens, or zum vier'ten, fourthly.

Ein'zeln, singly, or ein und ein, one by one.

Zwei und zwei, two and two, or two by two.

Drei und drei, three and three, &c.

Paar'weise, in pairs, &c.

To denote the same thing, or different sorts of things, *erlei* is added to the cardinal numbers; as,

Ei'nerlei, of one sort, or the same.

Zwei'erlei, of two sorts, or two different things, &c.

Je eins, je zwei, je drei, one, two, three, at a time.

V. *Collective* numbers are :

Die Hälfte, the half.

Ein Paar, a pair, or couple, a few.

Ein Dutzend, a dozen.

Ein hal'bes (or halb) Dutzend, half a dozen.

Ei'ne Man'del, fifteen, &amp;c.

The English word, *time*, or *times*, is expressed by the termination *mal*\* ; as,

Ein'mal, once.

Zwei'mal, twice, &amp;c.

Ein an'dermal, another time.

Die'sesmal, this time.

Manch'mal, many a time.

Oft'mal, oftentimes.

Viel'mal, many times.

Wie viel'mal? how many times ?

*Mal* is also used in multiplying ; as, *zwei mal zwei sind vier*, twice two are four (that is, literally, two times two are four) ; *drei mal drei sind neun*, three times three are nine, &c.

## Recapitulatory Exercises on the Numerals, &amp;c.

One and one make two.

Ten times ten make a hundred.

A Roman legion consisted of six thousand six hundred and sixty-six soldiers.

Germany was divided<sup>4</sup> into<sup>1</sup> ten<sup>2</sup> circles<sup>3</sup>.

America was discovered by Christopher Columbus in the fifteenth century after the birth of Christ.

Vienna, the capital of Austria, lies in the sixteenth degree of (*the*) longitude, and forty-eighth degree of (*the*) latitude.

Your friends live seven miles and a half from this place.

The meat weighs four pounds and three quarters.

One half of this apple is mellow, but the other is still hard.

He wore a treble coat of mail.

I saw three kinds of roses on one bush.

times, *mal*.make, *macht*.Roman, *römisch*,legion, *Legion'*, *f. l. d.*consisted, *bestand'*.of, *aus. (Dat.)*soldier, *Krieger, m. 3. a. a.*Germany, *Deutschland*.

---

\* The word *mal*, in old German, signifies *time*.

was, war.	live, woh'nen.
into, in. ( <i>Acc.</i> )	mile, Mei'le, <i>f.</i> 1. c.
circle, Kreis, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.	from, von. ( <i>Dat.</i> )
divided, getheilt'.	this, die'sem,
America, Ame'rika.	place, *Platz, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.
was, wur'de.	meat, Fleisch, <i>n.</i> 3. b.
discovered, entdeckt'.	weighs, wiegt. ( <i>Acc.</i> )
by, von.	pounds, Pfund.
Christopher Columbus, Chris'toph Colum'bus.	of, ( <i>Gen.</i> )
in, in. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	this, die'ses.
century, Jahrhun'dert, <i>n.</i> 3. b. b.	apple, *Ap'fel, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a.
after, nach.	is, ist.
Christ, Chris'tus.	mellow, weich.
birth, Geburt', <i>f.</i> 1. d. (See page 27.)	but, a'ber.
Vienna, Wien.	other, an'der.
capital, Haupt'stadt, <i>f.</i> 1. b.	is, ist.
of, von.	still, noch.
Austria, Öst'reich.	hard, hart.
lies, liegt.	he, er.
in, in. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	wore, trug.
degree, Grad, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.	coat of mail, Pan'zer, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a.
longitude, Läng'e, <i>f.</i> 1. c.	I, ich.
latitude, Brei'te, <i>f.</i> 1. c.	saw, sah.
your, Ihr'e.	rose, Ro'se, <i>f.</i> 1. c.
friend, Freund, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.	on, an. ( <i>Dat.</i> )
	bush, *Busch, 3. b. b.

## CHAPTER V.

## PRONOUNS.

There are seven kinds of pronouns, viz. *personal*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *indefinite*, and *substantive*.

## § 1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

In German, as in English there are five personal pronouns; viz. *ich*, I; *du*, thou; *er*, he; *sie*, she; *es*, it; with their plurals, *wir*, we; *ihr*, you; *sie*, they.

The personal pronouns are declined as follows :

## First Person.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>N.</i> ich,	I.	<i>N.</i> wir,	we.
<i>G.</i> mei'ner or mein,	of me.	<i>G.</i> un'ser,	of us.
<i>D.</i> mir,	to me.	<i>D.</i> uns,	to us.
<i>A.</i> mich,	me.	<i>A.</i> uns,	us.

## Second Person.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>N.</i> du,	thou.	<i>N.</i> ihr,	you.
<i>G.</i> dei'ner or dein,	of thee.	<i>G.</i> eu'er,	of you.
<i>D.</i> dir,	to thee.	<i>D.</i> euch,	to you.
<i>A.</i> dich,	thee.	<i>A.</i> euch,	you.

## Third Person.

<i>Singular.</i>					
<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i> er,	he.	sie,	she.	es,	it.
<i>G.</i> sei'ner or sein,	of him.	ih'rer,	of her.	sei'ner or sein,	of it.
<i>D.</i> ihm,	to him.	ihr,	to her.	ihm,	to it.
<i>A.</i> ihn,	him.	sie,	her.	es,	it.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i> sie,	they.
<i>G.</i> ih'rer,	of them.
<i>D.</i> ih'nen,	to them.
<i>A.</i> sie,	them.

The personal pronouns, in the genitive, dative, and accusative cases, are used also as reflective pronouns, particularly with reflective verbs, as, *ich lie'be mich*, I love myself; *du f'lei'dest dich*, thou dressest thyself. The personal pronouns when used with reflective verbs, are declined in the same manner, except in the dative and accusative cases, singular and plural, of the third personal pronoun. In these cases the reflective pronoun *sich* takes the place of the datives, *ihm*, *ihr*, *ihm*, and *ih'nen*, and of the accusatives, *ihn*, *sie*, *es*, and *sie*. Ex. *er, sie, or es erlaub't sich* (*dat. sing.*), he, she, or it permits himself, herself, or itself; *sie erlau'ben sich*, (*dat. plur.*) they permit themselves; *er, sie, or es liebt sich* (*acc. sing.*) he, she, or it loves himself, herself, or itself; *sie*

ſie'ben ſich (*acc. plur.*) they love themſelves. — In the plural number, reflective pronouns are alſo uſed to ſignify a reciprocal relation. Thus, ſie ſie'ben ſich, may mean, *they love themſelves* (reflective), or *they love one another* (reciprocal). But in order to prevent confuſion of ideas, the adverb *einander*, one another, is frequently put inſtead of ſich; as, ſie ſie'ben *einander*, they love one another.

Sometimes, to give a greater ſtreſs to the meaning of a personal pronoun, or noun, one of the indeclinable words, *ſelbſt*, or *ſel'ber*, is added; as, *ich ſelbſt* (or *ſel'ber*), I myſelf; *ſei'ner ſelbſt*, of himſelf; *wir ſelbſt*, we ourſelves; *ſich ſelbſt*, to himſelf, or, himſelf; to themſelves, or, themſelves, (as the ſentence may require); *Cæſar ſelbſt*, Cæſar himſelf.

## § 2. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Poſſeſſive pronouns are either *conjunctive*, or *absolute*.

### *Conjunctive Poſſeſſive Pronouns.*

The conjunctive poſſeſſive pronouns, which are formed from the personal pronouns in the genitive (or *poſſeſſive*) caſe, are as follows :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. F. &amp; N.</i>	
<i>mein,</i>	<i>mei'ne,</i>	<i>mein,</i>	<i>mei'ne,</i>	my.
<i>dein,</i>	<i>dei'ne,</i>	<i>dein,</i>	<i>dei'ne,</i>	thy.
<i>ſein,</i>	<i>ſei'ne,</i>	<i>ſein,</i>	<i>ſei'ne,</i>	his, its.
<i>ihr,</i>	<i>ih're,</i>	<i>ihr,</i>	<i>ih're,</i>	her.
<i>un'ſer,</i>	<i>un'ſere</i> or <i>un'ſre,</i>	<i>un'ſer,</i>	<i>un'ſere</i> or <i>un'ſre,</i>	our.
<i>eu'er,</i>	<i>eu'ere</i> or <i>eu're,</i>	<i>eu'er,</i>	<i>eu'ere</i> or <i>eu're,</i>	your.
<i>ihr,</i>	<i>ih're,</i>	<i>ihr,</i>	<i>ih're,</i>	their.

Theſe pronouns are declined in the ſingular like the article *ein*, a, and in the plural like the adjective *gut*, good, in the firſt declenſion; as,

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. F. &amp; N.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>mein,</i>	<i>mei'ne,</i>	<i>mein,</i>	<i>mei'ne,</i>	my.
<i>G.</i>	<i>mei'nes,</i>	<i>mei'ner,</i>	<i>mei'nes,</i>	<i>mei'ner,</i>	of my.
<i>D.</i>	<i>mei'nem,</i>	<i>mei'ner,</i>	<i>mei'nem,</i>	<i>mei'nen,</i>	to my.
<i>A.</i>	<i>mei'nen,</i>	<i>mei'ne,</i>	<i>mein,</i>	<i>mei'ne,</i>	my.

These possessive pronouns are called *conjunctive*, because they are joined to substantives. The pronouns *sein, ihr, eu'er, &c.*, agree in gender, respectively, with the possessor; but the termination must agree in gender, number, and case, with the thing possessed.

According to this rule, the following examples may be easily declined; *mein Bru'der, m. 3. a. a.*, my brother; *mei'ne Schwester, f. 1. c.*, my sister; *mein \*Buch, n. 3. b. e.*, my book; *dein Vet'ter, m. 3. a. c.*, thy male cousin; *sei'ne Ba'se, f. 1. c.*, his female cousin; *ihr Freund, m. 3. b. b.*, her friend; *un'ser Nef'fe, m. 2. a.*, our nephew; *eu're Nichte, f. 1. c.*, your niece; *ihr \*Haus, n. 3. b. e.*, their house.

### *Absolute Possessive Pronouns.*

They are called *absolute* possessive pronouns, because they stand for some noun, which precedes them, expressed or understood, and with which they must agree in gender, number, and case. They are inflected like adjectives. In most cases they are preceded by the definite article, and on this account inflected according to the second declension, like *der gu'te, die gu'te, das gu'te*. So decline the following:

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
der mei'nige,	die mei'nige,	das mei'nige,	mine, &c.
der dei'nige,	die dei'nige,	das dei'nige,	thine, &c.
der sei'nige,	die sei'nige,	das sei'nige,	his, its, &c.
der ih'rige,	die ih'rige,	das ih'rige,	hers, &c.
der un'srige,	die un'srige,	das un'srige,	ours, &c.
der eu'rige,	die eu'rige,	das eu'rige,	yours, &c.
der ih'rige,	die ih'rige,	das ih'rige,	theirs, &c.

### *Plural.*

die mei'nigen,	mine, &c.
die dei'nigen,	thine, &c.
die sei'nigen,	his, its, &c.
die ih'rigen,	hers, &c.
die un'srigen,	ours, &c.
die eu'rigen,	yours, &c.
die ih'rigen,	theirs, &c.

The substantive *Hut*, hat, with a conjunctive possessive pronoun before it, and an absolute possessive pronoun after it, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

<i>N.</i> sein <i>Hut</i> und der mei'nige,	his hat and mine.
<i>G.</i> sei'nes <i>Hu'tes</i> und des mei'nigen,	of his hat and mine.
<i>D.</i> sei'nem <i>Hu'te</i> und dem mei'nigen,	to his hat and mine.
<i>A.</i> sei'nen <i>Hut</i> und den mei'nigen,	his hat and mine.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i> sei'ne <i>Hü'te</i> und die mei'nigen,	his hats and mine.
<i>G.</i> sei'ner <i>Hü'te</i> und der mei'nigen,	of his hats and mine.
<i>D.</i> sei'nen <i>Hü'ten</i> und den mei'nigen,	to his hats and mine.
<i>A.</i> sei'ne <i>Hü'te</i> und die mei'nigen,	his hats and mine.

So decline :

mein <i>Freund</i> und der sei'nige,	my friend and his.
sei'ne <i>Freun'din</i> und die mei'nige,	his ( <i>female</i> ) friend and mine.
ihr <i>Bru'der</i> und der dei'nige,	their brother and thine.
mein <i>Bru'der</i> und der eu'rige,	my brother and yours.
mei'ne <i>Schwes'ter</i> und die sei'nige,	my sister and his.
sei'ne <i>Schwes'ter</i> und die ih'rige,	his sister and hers.
ih're <i>Mut'ter</i> und die mei'nige,	her mother and mine.
mein <i>Buch</i> und das sei'nige,	my book and his.
un'ser <i>Va'terland</i> und das ih'rige,	our country and theirs.
ihr <i>Va'terland</i> und das un'srige,	their country and ours.

Instead of the pronouns, *der mei'nige*, *die mei'nige*, *das mei'nige*, mine, the Germans make use, also, of the pronouns, *der mei'ne*, *die mei'ne*, *das mei'ne*, as synonymous terms, declined in the same manner. In the same way the pronouns, *der dei'ne*, *der sei'ne*, *der ih're*, *der un'sere*, *der eu're*, *der ih're*, are used instead of the complete forms, *der dei'nige*, *der sei'nige*, *der ih'rige*, *der un'srige*, *der eu'rige*, *der ih'rige*.

There are also absolute possessive pronouns, not preceded by the article, and consequently inflected according to the first declension. Such are the following :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. F. &amp; N.</i>	
mei'ner,	mei'ne,	mei'nes,	mei'ne,	mine.
dei'ner,	dei'ne,	dei'nes,	dei'ne,	thine.



sei'ner,	sei'ne,	sei'nes,	sei'ne,	his, its.
ih'rer,	ih're,	ih'res,	ih're,	hers.
un'serer or	un'sere or	un'seres or	un'sere or	} ours.
un'srer, }	un'sre, }	un'sres, }	un'sre, }	
eu'erer or	eu'ere or	eu'eres or	eu'ere or	} yours.
eu'rer, }	eu're, }	eu'res, }	eu're, }	
ih'rer,	ih're,	ih'res,	ih're,	theirs.

The absolute possessive pronouns are always used without a noun, the noun being understood or referred to; as, That is my hat, *Das ist mein Hut*; No, it is mine, *Nein, es ist mei'ner*, or, *der mei'ne*, or, *der mei'nige*.

The pronouns, *mei'ner*, mine; *dei'ner*, thine, &c., are declined like *gu'ter*, *gu'te*, *gu'tes*, according to the first declension; and *der mei'ne*, *der dei'ne*, &c. like *der gu'te*, *die gu'te*, *das gu'te*, according to the second declension.

*Observation.* In addressing a person, where in English the pronouns, *you*, *your*, and *yours*, are used, the Germans, in speaking to intimate friends, make use of *du*, thou; *dein*, thy; *dei'ner*, thine; but in addressing others they employ the plural of the *third* person, *Sie*, which in this case does not mean *they* but *you*. This alteration of the original meaning of the pronoun, is denoted by writing it with a capital letter (see p. 3.) in all its cases; as, *Nom. & Acc. Sie*, you; *Gen. Ih'rer*, of you; *Dat. Ih'nen*, to you. The same remark applies to the corresponding possessive pronouns, *Ihr*, *Ih're*, *Ihr*, your; *Ih'rer*, *Ih're*, *Ih'res*, or *der Ih'rige*, *die Ih'rige*, *das Ih'rige*, or *der Ih're*, *die Ih're*, *das Ih're*, yours. Ex. *Sie* you sind are *Ihr* your ei'gener own *Herr* master.

In the old German language, the pronouns *Ihr*, you, *Eu'er*, your, were used to address a person in a dignified manner, and this mode (which corresponds to the English), is still sometimes used in poetry. But in common life this mode of addressing persons is rarely used, except in speaking to inferiors in rank, for which purpose, also, the third person singular, *er*, he, or *sie*, she, is sometimes employed.

### § 3. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns are those which point out the persons or things spoken of. They are declined generally like adjectives; and as most of them are not preceded by the

definite article, they are inflected according to the first declension. Ex.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	die'ser,	die'se,	die'ses or dies,	this, &c.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

*N.* die'se, these, &c.

So decline the following :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
je'ner,	je'ne,	je'nes, that ;	je'ne, those.
sel'bigcr,	sel'bigc,	sel'biges,	sel'bigc, the same.
sol'cher,	sol'che,	sol'ches,	sol'che, such.

The demonstrative pronouns, like adjectives, are joined to substantives with which they must agree in gender, number, and case. So decline the following :

Die'ser Kna'be, *m.* 2. a., this boy.  
 Je'nes Mäd'chen, *n.* 3. a. a., that girl.  
 Je'ner \*Bru'der, *m.* 3. a. a., that brother.  
 Sol'che Nach'richt, *f.* 1. d., such a report.  
 Sol'ches Wet'ter, *n.* 3. a., such weather.

The pronoun *der'jenige*, he that, is declined like *der gu'te*, according to the second declension of adjectives.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	der'jenige,	die'jenige,	das'jenige,	he, she, it, or that, &c.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

*N.* die'jenigen, they or those, &c.

So decline :

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
	dersel'be,	diesel'be,	dassel'be,	diesel'ben,	the same, or he,
					she, it, — they
	dersel'bigc,	diesel'bigc,	dassel'bigc,	diesel'bigen,	the same, &c.

So decline the following :

Derfel'be \*Mann, *m.* 3. b. e., the same man.

Der'jenige \*Mann, that man.

Die'jenige Tu'gend, *f.* 1. d., that virtue.

Diesel'be Tu'gend, the same virtue.

Das'jenige, \*Buch, *n.* 3. b. e., that book.

Dassel'be, \*Buch, the same book.

The demonstrative pronoun *der*, that, is declined in a peculiar manner, nearly like the article *der*, the :

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>der</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,	<i>das</i> ,	that.
<i>G.</i>	<i>des</i> or <i>des'sen</i> ,	<i>der</i> or <i>de'ren</i> ,	<i>des</i> or <i>des'sen</i> ,	of that.
<i>D.</i>	<i>dem</i> ,	<i>der</i> ,	<i>dem</i> ,	to that.
<i>A.</i>	<i>den</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,	<i>das</i> ,	that.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i>	<i>die</i> , those.
<i>G.</i>	<i>de'rer</i> or <i>de'ren</i> , of those.
<i>D.</i>	<i>de'nen</i> , to those.
<i>A.</i>	<i>die</i> , those.

§ 4. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Relative pronouns relate to some word or phrase going before, which word or phrase is called the antecedent.

They are declined in the following manner.

*Wel'cher*, who, is declined according to the first declension of adjectives :

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>wel'cher</i> ,	<i>wel'che</i> ,	<i>wel'ches</i> ,	who, which, or that, &c.

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i>	<i>wel'che</i> ,	who, which, or that, &c.
-----------	------------------	--------------------------

The relative pronoun, *der, die, das*, that, is declined like the demonstrative pronoun, *der, die, das*, that.

*Wer*, who, and *was*, what, as relatives, are used in the singular only, and are thus declined :

<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. wer</i> , who, whosoever, which, he who, she who.	<i>N. was</i> , what.
<i>G. wessen</i> , <i>wes</i> , of whom, of whomsoever, of which, &c.	<i>G. wessen</i> , <i>wes</i> , of what.
<i>D. wem</i> , to whom, to whomso- ever, &c.	<i>D. wem</i> , to what.
<i>A. wen</i> , whom, whomsoever, &c.	<i>A. was</i> , what.

*Observations.* *Wer* and *was* are sometimes relative and sometimes interrogative pronouns.

*Wer*, is sometimes Englished by *he who*, or *whoever*; as, *Wer ihn kennt, sieht ihn*, whoever knows him, loves him. *Was*, is sometimes Englished by *that which*; as, *Was ich gesagt' ha'be, ist wahr*, That which, or what, I have said, is true.

The ancient relative *so*, which, who, is indeclinable; ex. *Die Freundschaft so ihr mir bewiesen habt*, The friendship which you have shown me.

For the use of the different relative pronouns, see Syntax, Book II. Chapter 4. § 1. Obs. 6 and 7.

### § 5. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogative pronouns are, *wer*, who? *was*, what? *welcher*, who? which? *was für ein*, what sort of? or, *was für*, what?

The interrogative *welcher*, is declined like the relative *welcher*. *Wer*, *was*, are thus declined :

*Singular and Plural.*

<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> wer, who?	<i>N.</i> was, what?
<i>G.</i> wessen, wess, whose?	<i>G.</i> von was or wovon', of what?
<i>D.</i> wem, to whom?	<i>D.</i> zu was or wozu', to what?
<i>A.</i> wen, whom?	<i>A.</i> was, what?

Was für ein, what? or, what sort of? is thus declined :

*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> was für ein or ei'ner.*	} was für ei'ne,	{ was für ein or ei'nes,* what? or what sort of?
<i>G.</i> was für ei'nes,		
<i>D.</i> was für ei'nem,	<i>D.</i> was für ei'ner,	<i>D.</i> was für ei'nem, to what?
<i>A.</i> was für ei'nen,	<i>A.</i> was für ei'ne,	<i>A.</i> was für ein or ei'nes, what?

*Plural, for the three genders.*

<i>N.</i> was für,	what? or, what sort of?
<i>No genitive.</i>	
<i>D.</i> was für,	to what?
<i>A.</i> was für,	what?

Instead of *was für ein*, the synonymous pronoun *welch ein* is used, and declined like the former; ex. *Welch ei'ne That!* what a deed! *Welch ei'nen Men'schen ha'be ich geliebt'*, what a man have I loved!

## § 6. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite pronouns are so called, because they refer to things in an indefinite manner. Some are *numeral*; as, *ei'ner*,

---

\* *Was für ein* is always used before a noun with which it agrees; *was für ei'ner*, and *was für ei'nes* (or *eines*), are used by themselves, with reference to a preceding noun. Ex. *Quest.* *Ha'ben Sie das Gemäl'de gese'hen?* Have you seen the picture? *Ans.* *Was für ein Gemäl'de?* What picture? or simply, *Was für ei'nes?* Which one?

one; *fei'ner*, no one, &c.; others *distributive*; as, *je'der*, each, every, &c.

These pronouns are generally declined like adjectives, in the first, the second, or the third declension, according to the general rules.

So decline the following :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>fei'ner</i> ,	<i>fei'ne</i> ,	<i>fei'nes</i> , no one <i>or</i> none.
<i>sol'cher</i> ,	<i>sol'che</i> ,	<i>sol'ches</i> , such.
<i>ein'ziger</i> ,	<i>ein'zige</i> ,	<i>ein'ziges</i> , only.
<i>ei'niger</i> ,	<i>ei'nige</i> ,	<i>ei'niges</i> , some <i>or</i> any.
<i>man'cher</i> ,	<i>man'che</i> ,	<i>man'ches</i> , many a one.
<i>al'ler</i> ,	<i>al'le</i> ,	<i>al'les</i> , all.
<i>je'der</i> ,	<i>je'de</i> ,	<i>je'des</i> , every <i>or</i> each.
<i>jed'weder</i> ,	<i>jed'wede</i> ,	<i>jed'wedes</i> , every.
<i>jeg'licher</i> ,	<i>jeg'liche</i> ,	<i>jeg'liches</i> , every.
<i>ei'ner</i> ,	<i>ei'ne</i> ,	<i>ei'nes</i> , one <i>or</i> some one.
<i>solch ei'ner</i> ,	<i>solch ei'ne</i> ,	<i>solch ei'nes</i> , such a one.
<i>ei'ner von bei'den</i> ,	<i>ei'ne von bei'den</i> ,	<i>ei'nes von bei'den</i> , ei- ther.
<i>fei'ner von bei'den</i> ,	<i>fei'ne von bei'den</i> ,	<i>fei'nes von bei'den</i> , neither.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>fei'ne</i> ,	none.
<i>sol'che</i> ,	such.
<i>ein'zige</i> ,	only.
<i>ei'nige</i> ,	some <i>or</i> any.
<i>man'che</i> ,	many.
<i>al'le</i> ,	all.

*Je'der*, *jed'weder*, *jeg'licher*, *ei'ner*, *ei'ner von bei'den*, and *fei'ner von bei'den*, have no plural.

The plural, *bei'de*, both, is declined like that of *fei'ner*. The singular of that pronoun is used only in the neuter gender; viz. *N.* *bei'des*, both; *G.* *bei'des*, of both; *D.* *bei'dem*, to both; *A.* *bei'des*, both.

Some of these pronouns are declined as adjectives, with *ein* or *der*. Thus, *ein je'der*, *ei'ne je'de*, *ein je'des*, each, is inflected according to the third declension, and in the singular number

only. *Der ei'ne, die ei'ne, das ei'ne*, is inflected according to the second declension, singular and plural.

So decline :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
ein an'drer,	ei'ne an'dre,	ein an'dres,	another.
der an'dre,	die an'dre,	das an'dre,	the other.
ein ein'ziger,	ei'ne ein'zige,	ein ein'ziges,	an only one.
der ein'zige,	die ein'zige,	das ein'zige,	the only one.
ein ei'niger,	ei'ne ei'nige,	ein ei'niges,	an only one.
der ei'nige,	die ei'nige,	das ei'nige,	the only one.
ein jed'weder,*	ei'ne jed'wede,	ein jed'wedes,	every.
ein jeg'licher,	ei'ne jeg'liche,	ein jeg'liches,	any, every one.

The indefinite pronoun *sein, sei'ne, sein*, which is joined to substantives, like the conjunctive possessive pronouns, *mein, dein, sein, &c.*, is also declined like them.

#### § 7. SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

The substantive pronouns, *Je'mand, some or any body; Nie'mand, nobody*, are used in the singular only, and are declined both as adjectives and as nouns, as follows :

<i>N.</i>	<i>je'mand</i> ,	somebody.
<i>G.</i>	<i>je'mands</i>	or <i>je'mandes</i> ,
		of somebody.
<i>D.</i>	<i>je'mand</i>	or <i>je'mandem</i> ,
		to somebody.
<i>A.</i>	<i>je'mand</i>	or <i>je'manden</i> ,
		somebody.
<i>N.</i>	<i>nie'mand</i> ,	nobody.
<i>G.</i>	<i>nie'mands</i>	or <i>nie'mandes</i> ,
		of nobody.
<i>D.</i>	<i>nie'mand</i>	or <i>nie'mandem</i> ,
		to nobody.
<i>A.</i>	<i>nie'mand</i>	or <i>nie'manden</i> ,
		nobody.

*Je'derman*, every body, is declined as a noun.

<i>N.</i>	<i>je'derman</i> ,	every body.
<i>G.</i>	<i>je'dermans</i> ,	of every body.
<i>D.</i>	<i>je'derman</i> ,	to every body.
<i>A.</i>	<i>je'derman</i> ,	every body.

\* *Jed'weder* is generally used without the article, and is then inflected like *je'der*, or *sei'ner*, according to the first declension.

The substantive pronouns, *man*, *one*; *et'was*, something; and *nichts*, nothing, are indeclinable.

*Man*, *one*, *we*, *people*, *they*, &c., like the French pronoun, *on*, is used only in the third person singular; ex. *Man sagt*, *der Krieg sei geen'digt*, *people say the war is ended*.

Recapitulatory Exercises on all the Pronouns.

*Wir sind Menschen und wir sind sterblich.*

*Tho'ren*, die ihr seid, indem' ihr hoffet, daß ihr oh'ne euch Mü'he zu ge'ben, gelehrt' und wei'se wer'den kö'n'net.

*Socrates* sag'te oft zu sei'nen Freun'den: Mein Le'ben ist mir nicht so schät'z'bar als die Ju'gend.

Mein Geschmack' ist nicht der dei'nige, und dein Geschmack' ist nicht der mei'nige; ich fin'de Vergnü'gen an Gemäl'den aus der Nie'derländischen Schu'le, und du, an Gemäl'den aus der Italia'nischen.

Woher' die'ser Un'terschied? da doch soust mei'ne Nei'gung mit der dei'nigen beina'he ganz überein'stimmt.

Ein je'der schöpft aus der Quel'le sei'ner Lei'denschaften, sein Glück o'der Un'glück.

Ich frag'te nach je'mand, fand a'ber nie'manden zu Hau'se.

Je'des Land hat sei'ne Gebräu'che.

Es giebt Feh'ler de'ren man sich nicht leicht bewusst' wird, und wel'che man sorg'fältig verbirgt'.

sind, are.

sterblich, mortal.

Thor, fool.

seid, are.

indem ihr hoffet, to hope.

daß, that.

ohne zu geben, without giving.

Mü'he, trouble.

werden kö'nnet, can become.

gelehrt, learned.

weise, wise.

sagte oft, often said.

zu, to.

Freund, friend.

leben, life.

ist nicht so schät'z'bar, is not so valuable.

als, as.

die Jugend, virtue.

Geschmack, taste.

finde Vergnügen an, am pleased with.

das Gemälde, picture.

aus, (out) of.

niederländisch, Flemish.

Schule, school.

italiänisch, Italian.

woher, whence.

Unterschied, difference.

da doch, since.

soust, otherwise.

Neigung, inclination.

beina'he ganz übereinstimmt, coincides almost entirely.



schöpft, draws.	Land, country.
aus, from.	hat, has.
Quelle, source.	Gebrauch, custom.
Leidenschaft, passion.	Es giebt, there are.
Glück oder Unglück, good or ill fortune.	Fehler, fault.
fragte, inquired.	leicht, easily.
nach, after.	sich bewußt wird, becomes con- scious.
fund, found.	sorgfältig, carefully.
zu Hause, at home.	verbirgt, conceals.

I know him. He knows them. She knows us. You know her. They know them. He gives it to them. We give it to him. She gives it to me. They give it to us. Tell it to him. He told it to them. Take pity on (*of*) me. He is ashamed (*shames himself*) of thee. We remember (*ourselves of*) you. There are ten<sup>2</sup> of<sup>1</sup> us<sup>1</sup>. There are six<sup>2</sup> of<sup>1</sup> them<sup>1</sup>. Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. I deny it to myself. He was not<sup>2</sup> master<sup>3</sup> of<sup>1</sup> himself<sup>1</sup>. When thy days are<sup>2</sup> dark,<sup>1</sup> then<sup>3</sup> thy<sup>5</sup> false<sup>6</sup> friends<sup>7</sup> depart<sup>4</sup> from<sup>8</sup> thee<sup>9</sup>, but thy true friends forsake thee not.

They gave it not to my friend, but to thine.

We owe it not to your desert, but to theirs.

This is not thy lot but mine. I mean this house.

This is the man (*this man is it*) of whom I speak.

Thou must do<sup>2</sup> this,<sup>1</sup> but not<sup>2</sup> leave<sup>3</sup> that<sup>1</sup> (undone).

This is his own estate.

He does as those people of the torrid zone, who shoot<sup>5</sup> arrows<sup>1</sup> at<sup>2</sup> the<sup>3</sup> sun<sup>4</sup>.

Who is the most estimable among men? The most virtuous.

What (*which*) man can promise<sup>4</sup> himself<sup>1</sup> constant<sup>2</sup> happiness<sup>3</sup>?

Which season is the pleasantest?

know, ken'ne.

knows, kennt.

you — know, ken'net.

they — know, ken'nen.

gives, giebt.

give, ge'ben.

tell, sa'ge.

told, sag'te.

take pity, erbar'met euch.

ashamed, schämt.

remember, criu'neru.

there are, es sind.

shalt, sollst.

love, lie'ben.

neighbor, Nach'bar, <i>m.</i> 3. a. c.	must, mußst.
as, wie.	this, ( <i>Acc. Neut.</i> )
deny, verſa'ge.	do, thun.
was, war.	but, a'ber.
not, nicht.	that, ( <i>Acc. Neut.</i> )
master, Herr, <i>m.</i> 2. b.	not leave, nicht laſſ'en.
when, wenn.	own, ei'gen.
day, Tag, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.	estate, *Gut, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c.
dark, dunk'el.	does, macht es.
are, ſind.	as, wie.
then, dann.	people, *Volk, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c.
depart, wei'chen.	torrid, heiß,
false, falſch.	zone, Zo'ne, <i>f.</i> 1. c.
friend, Freund, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.	arrow, Pfeil, <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.
from, von. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	at, ge'gen.
but, a'ber.	sun, Son'ne, <i>f.</i> 1. c.
true, wahr.	to shoot, ab'schieſen.
forsake, verlaſſ'en.	estimable, ſchät'bar.
gave, ga'ben.	among, un'ter. ( <i>Dat.</i> )
but, ſon'dern.	man, der Menſch, <i>m.</i> 2. b.
owe, verdank'en.	virtuous, tu'gendhaft.
desert, Verdienſt', <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.	can, kann.
lot, Loos, <i>n.</i> 3. b. b.	himself. ( <i>Dat.</i> )
mean, mei'ne.	constant, beſtän'dig.
house, *Haus, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c.	happiness, Glück, <i>n.</i> 3. b.
man, Mann, <i>m.</i> 3. b. c.	promise, verſprech'en.
is, iſt.	season, Jahr'zeit, <i>f.</i> 1. d.
of, von. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	pleasant, an'genehm.
speak, re'de.	

Many persons suffer themselves to<sup>5</sup> be<sup>5</sup> deceived<sup>5</sup> by<sup>1</sup> no-body<sup>2</sup> except<sup>3</sup> themselves<sup>4</sup>.

Apply thyself to virtue ; this will never<sup>2</sup> forsake<sup>3</sup> thee<sup>1</sup>.

Whoever is<sup>6</sup> not<sup>4</sup> diligent<sup>5</sup> in<sup>1</sup> his<sup>2</sup> youth<sup>3</sup>, will<sup>1</sup> not<sup>6</sup> know<sup>9</sup> (how) to<sup>7</sup> employ<sup>8</sup> himself<sup>5</sup> in<sup>2</sup> his<sup>3</sup> manhood<sup>4</sup>.

Who did (*has*<sup>1</sup> *done*<sup>3</sup>) that<sup>2</sup>? his brother or your sister?

His sister and mine.

Which house (do) you<sup>2</sup> mean<sup>1</sup>?

What book is this?

Who will get<sup>3</sup> the<sup>1</sup> prize<sup>2</sup>? my cousin or his?

Judges must be<sup>8</sup> just<sup>7</sup> towards<sup>1</sup> every one<sup>2</sup>, even<sup>3</sup> towards<sup>4</sup> their<sup>5</sup> enemies<sup>6</sup>.

Put these coins again in their places.

I know no one who is<sup>3</sup> so<sup>1</sup> happy<sup>2</sup> as he.

(We must give) to every one his own.

person, Mensch.  
 suffer, lassen.  
 by, von. (*Dat.*)  
 except, außer,  
 to be deceived, betrügen.  
 apply, befeigen.  
 to, (*Gen.*)  
 virtue, die Tugend, *f.* 1. d.  
 will, wird.  
 never, nie.  
 forsake, verlassen.  
 in, in. (*Dat.*)  
 youth, Jugend, *f.* 1.  
 not, nicht.  
 diligent, fleißig.  
 is, ist.  
 will, wird.  
 manhood, Man'nesalter, *m.*  
 3. a.  
 to employ, zu beschäftigen.  
 know, wissen.  
 has, hat.  
 that, das.  
 done, gethan'.  
 brother, \*Bru'der, *m.* 3. a. a.

or, o'der.  
 sister, Schwes'ter, *f.* 1. c.  
 mean, mei'net.  
 what, was für ein.  
 book, \*Buch, *n.* 3. b. e.  
 will, wird.  
 prize, Preis, *m.* 3. b. b.  
 get, davontragen.  
 cousin, Vet'ter, *m.* 3. a. c.  
 judge, Rich'ter, *m.* 3. a. a.  
 must, müß'en.  
 towards, ge'gen.  
 even, selbst. (*Acc.*)  
 enemy, Feind, *m.* 3. b. b.  
 put, le'get.  
 just be, gerecht' sein.  
 coin, Mün'ze, *f.* 1. c.  
 again, wie'der.  
 in, auf. (*Acc.*)  
 place, \*Platz, *n.* 3. b. b.  
 know, ken'ne.  
 happy, glück'lich.  
 as, als.  
 his own, das sei'nige.

## CHAPTER VI.

### VERBS.

#### *General Remarks.*

VERBS express the connexion between subjects (nouns), and qualities (adjectives or adverbs). The various modes in which qualities are connected with subjects, are expressed by different kinds of verbs and the different parts of each verb.

I. Verbs are divided into *neuter*, *active*, *reflective*, and *passive*. Some verbs are defective, as the impersonal verbs. A complete verb comprehends, besides the *participles*, four moods,

the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, and the *imperative*; and these principal parts of the verb contain different tenses; with the exception of the imperative, which has only the present tense. Each tense contains two numbers, and three persons in each number.

II. Some of the different forms of the verb are *original*, and others *supplementary*.

The original forms are the infinitive present of the active or neuter verb, and all those parts which are formed from the infinitive mood, by altering, increasing, or diminishing it, viz. the Present, Imperfect, Imperative, and the Participles. Thus from the infinitive *lieben*, to love, is formed the imperfect, *ich liebte*, I loved.

The supplementary forms are made by joining the past participle, or the infinitive mood, to an auxiliary verb; as, *ich habe geliebt*, I have loved; *ich werde lieben*, I shall love.

III. In their original forms, all German verbs are active or neuter; except the past participle, which, when it stands by itself, has (as in English) a *passive* meaning; as *geliebt*, loved. This passive meaning is preserved when the past participle is joined to the auxiliary *werden*, to become, which in this instance is Englished *to be*, and forms the passive voice; as, *ich werde geliebt*, I am loved. But the past participle takes an active signification when it is joined to the auxiliary *haben*, to have; as, *ich habe geliebt*, I have loved.

The indicative and the subjunctive contain two original tenses, the present and the imperfect.

There is no difference between active and neuter verbs with respect to the original tenses.

IV. The verb is inflected by adding certain letters to the *substance* of the verb. The substance of the verb consists of those letters which, in the infinitive mood, precede the final letters *en* (or the final letter *n*, in those which do not end in *en*). Thus the substance of the verb *lieben*, to love, is *lieb*; that of *erweitern*, to enlarge, is *erwei*; and that of *thun*, to do, is *th*.

V. The additional letters, by means of which the verb is inflected, are joined to the end of the substance of the verb; as, *ich liebe*, I love; *du liebest*, thou lovest; *ich liebete*, I loved, &c. But in the past participle most verbs have also the augment, i. e. the syllable *ge*, prefixed to the substance of the word; as, *lieben*, to love, *past. part. geliebt*, loved; *fechten*, to fight, *past. part. gefochten*, fought.

VI. The augment *ge* is not prefixed, when the verb is compounded with *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ver*, *zer*, or *ge*, which are frequently prefixed to it to express particular modifications of the original meaning of the verb. Thus, the past participle of the regular verb, *geso'ben*, to vow (derived from *so'ben*, to praise), is not *gegelobt*, but *gelobt'*. But when the above-mentioned syllables are not prefixed by way of composition, but are part of the original verb itself, the syllable *ge* is prefixed; as in *be'ten*, to pray, *past. part. gebe'tet*, prayed; and in the irregular verb, *ge'ben*, to give, *past. part. gege'ben*, given.

VII. All the original forms of the verb which are made of the infinitive, are either regular or irregular, or partly regular and partly irregular.\* This variety of forms, though it is found in all parts of the verb, occurs particularly in the formation of the imperfect tense and the past participle. Upon this difference three modes of conjugation are founded, the *regular*, or modern, the *irregular*, or ancient, and the *mixed* conjugation.

VIII. A verb is *regular*, if, in its conjugation, the letters of the substantial part remain unchanged, and if, at the same time, the *imperfect* tense, in the first and the third person of the singular number, ends in *te* or *ete*, and the *past participle* in *et*, or *t*; as, *lie'ben*, to love, *imp. ich* (or *er*) *lieb'te*, or *lie'bete*, I (or he) loved; *past. part. gelie'bet*, or *geliebt'*, loved.

A verb is *irregular*, if, in its conjugation, one or several of the substantial letters of the word are changed, and if, in the first and third person singular of the imperfect tense, the letters *te* or *ete* are not added, and the past participle ends in *en* or *n*; as, *flie'hen*, to flee, *ich* (or *er*) *floh*, I (or he) fled, *gesto'hen*, or *gestohn'*, fled.

A verb is *mixed*, if, in its conjugation, one or the other of the substantial letters is changed, but at the same time the imperfect and the past participle are formed in the regular way, in *te*, and *t*; as, *bring'en*, to bring; *ich* (or *er*) *brach'te*, I (or he) brought; *gebracht'*, brought.

IX. The substance of all primitive verbs, that is, of all those which are not formed by composition or derivation, consists of one syllable.

---

\* This division affects the supplementary forms only in as much as most of them are made by joining an auxiliary verb to the past participle, which is either regular or irregular.

## § I. REGULAR VERBS.

In every regular verb the additional syllables are conformable to the following table.

All those verbs, the substance of which consists of more than one syllable, are regular.

Indicative.			Subjunctive.			
<i>Present.</i>						
1st Per.	2d Per.	3d Per.	1st Per.	2d Per.	3d Per.	
<i>Sing.</i>	e	ſt or eſt	t or et	e	eſt	e
<i>Plur.</i>	en	t or et	en	en	et	en
<i>Imperfect.</i>						
<i>Sing.</i>	te or ete	teſt or eteſt	te or ete	ete	eteſt	ete
<i>Plur.</i>	ten or eten	tet or etet	ten or eten	eten	etet	eten
Imperative.			Participle.			
<i>Sing.</i>	—	e	e	<i>Present, end.</i>		
<i>Plur.</i>	en	et or t	en	<i>Past, ge — et or t.</i>		
<i>Infinitive.</i>						
<i>Present, en.</i>						

*Observation.* The choice between the endings ſt and eſt, t and et, te and ete, teſt and eteſt, ten and eten, tet and etet, depends on euphony. Thus, in the imperfect tense of the verb lo'ben, to praise, we may use either lo'b'te, or lo'b'ete; but in re'den, to speak, we must say, ich re'dete, I spoke, and not red'te, because, in pronouncing, this could not be distinguished from the present, ich re'de, I speak.

Conjugation of the Regular Verb, *lie'ben*, to love.

Infinitive.

Participle.

*lie'ben*, to love.*Present.* *lie'bend*, loving.*Past.* *geliebt'*, loved.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Present.**Singular.**Singular.*ich *lie'be*, I love, do love, *or*  
am loving.ich *lie'be*, I may love.du *liebst* *or lie'best*, thou lov-  
est, dost love, *or* art loving.du *lie'best*, thou mayst love.er, *sie*, *or es* *liebt* *or lie'bet*,  
he, she, *or* it loves, does  
love, *or* is loving.er *lie'be*, he may love.*Plural.**Plural.*wir *lie'ben*, we love, do love,  
*or* are loving.wir *lie'ben*, we may love.ihr *liebt* *or lie'bet*, you love.ihr *lie'bet*, you may love.sie *lie'ben*, they love.sie *lie'ben*, they may love.*Imperfect.**Singular.**Singular.*ich *lieb'te* *or lie'bete*, I loved  
*or* did love.ich *lie'bete*, I might love.du *lieb'test* *or lie'betest*, thou  
lovedst.du *lie'betest*, thou mightst love.er *lieb'te* *or lieb'ete*, he loved.er *lie'bete*, he might love.*Plural.**Plural.*wir *lieb'ten* *or lie'beten*, we  
loved.wir *lie'beten*, we might loveihr *lieb'tet* *or lie'betet*, you  
loved.ihr *lie'betet*, you might love.sie *lieb'ten* *or lie'beten*, they  
loved.sie *lie'beten*, they might love.

## Imperative.

*Singular.*

. . . . .  
 lie'be (du), love (*thou*).  
 lie'be er, let him love.

*Plural.*

lie'ben wir, let us love.  
 lie'bet or liebt (ihr), love (*you*) or do (*you*) love.  
 lie'ben sie, let them love.

So conjugate, lo'ben, to praise; glau'ben, to believe.

## § 2. IRREGULAR VERBS.

The change of letters in the substantial part of irregular verbs commonly affects only the vowels; and, in this case, the first and the third person of the imperfect indicative end with the final letter of the substantial part; as, spring'en, to spring, *imperf. indic.* ich sprang, I sprang; er sprang, he sprang; *past part.* gesprung'en. But sometimes the change affects also the consonants; as, schnei'den, to cut, *imperf.* ich schnitt; sein, to be, *pres.* ich bin, *imperf.* ich war; *past part.* gewe'sen.\*

The imperfect subjunctive is formed by adding *e* to the imperfect indicative, and is inflected like the present subjunctive; as, spring'en, to spring, *imperf. indic.* ich sprang; *imperf. subj.* ich spräng'e, &c.

When either of the vowels *a*, *o*, or *u*, occurs in the imperfect indicative, they are changed into *ä*, *ö*, or *ü*, in the subjunctive; as, flie'gen, to fly; *imperf. indic.* ich flog; *imperf. subj.* ich flö'ge.

---

\* The different tenses of the substantive verb, sein, to be, are, in German, as well as in English, composed of three distinct verbs, which have ceased to exist, except in those tenses.



Conjugation of the Irregular Verb, *sing'en*, to sing.

Infinitive.

Participle.

*Present.* *sing'en*, to sing.*Present.* *sing'end*, singing.*Past.* *gesung'en*, sung.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Present.*

	Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
1.	<i>sing'e.</i>	<i>sing'en.</i>		<i>sing'e.</i>	<i>sing'en.</i>
2.	<i>sing'est.</i>	<i>sing'et.</i>		<i>sing'est.</i>	<i>sing'et.</i>
3.	<i>sing'et.</i>	<i>sing'en.</i>		<i>sing'e.</i>	<i>sing'en.</i>

*Imperfect.*

	Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
1.	<i>sang.</i>	<i>sang'en.</i>		<i>sång'e.</i>	<i>sång'en.</i>
2.	<i>sang'est.</i>	<i>sang'et.</i>		<i>sång'est.</i>	<i>sång'et.</i>
3.	<i>sang.</i>	<i>sang'en.</i>		<i>sång'e.</i>	<i>sång'en.</i>

Imperative.

	Singular.	Plural.
1.	.	<i>sing'en wir.</i>
2.	<i>sing'e (du).</i>	<i>sing'et (ihr).</i>
3.	<i>sing'e er.</i>	<i>sing'en sie.</i>

## § 3. MIXED VERBS.

The conjugation of the mixed verb is like that of regular verbs, with regard to the endings of the imperfect tense and the past participle, and it resembles that of the irregular verbs as to the change of letters in the substance of the verb.

Conjugation of the Mixed Verb, *denk'en*, to think.

Infinitive.

Participle.

*Present.* *denk'en*, to think.*Present.* *denk'end*, thinking.*Past.* *gedacht'*, thought.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.*

Singular.		Plural.	Singular.		Plural.
1.	denk'e.	denk'en.	denk'e.	denk'en.	denk'en.
2.	denk'est.	denk'et.	denk'est.	denk'et.	denk'et.
3.	denk'et.	denk'en.	denk'e.	denk'en.	denk'en.

*Imperfect.*

Singular.		Plural.	Singular.		Plural.
1.	dach'te.	dach'ten.	däch'te.	däch'ten.	däch'ten.
2.	dach'test.	dach'tet.	däch'test.	däch'tet.	däch'tet.
3.	dach'te.	dach'ten.	däch'te.	däch'ten.	däch'ten.

## Imperative.

Singular.		Plural.
1.	. . . . .	denk'en wir.
2.	denk'e (du).	denk'et (ihr).
3.	denk'e er.	denk'en sie.

*A List of all the Irregular and Mixed Verbs.*

The following list of irregular and mixed verbs exhibits in alphabetical order all the anomalous forms of each. Those parts of the verb which are not given, are regular, except when the sign "&c." is put after the first or second person of a tense, to indicate that the other persons of that tense are formed in the same irregular way, according to page 75.

If for the same tense or person, two or more forms are set down, the first of them is to be considered as the most usual; and when the regular form is also in use, it is inserted in a parenthesis.

This table is complete in regard to simple verbs; but of the compound verbs it contains only such as either occur very frequently, or are not easy to be traced to their origin, or differ in some respect from the simple verbs from which they are derived. (The section on *Compound Verbs*, containing a list of the particles with which simple verbs are most frequently compounded, will enable the learner to trace any compound verb to the simple one from which it is derived, and by this means to find out any irregularity of the former by referring to the latter in the following list.)

## A LIST OF ALL THE IRREGULAR VERBS IN ALPHABETICAL ORDER.

Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperat.	Past Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
B. Bac'ken, to bake	du bäckst, er bäckt (or du bäckst, er bäckt,) thou bakest, he bakes.		ich back, &c. (or ich bäcke, &c.) I bake baked	ich bäcke, &c. I.		gebac'ken, baked
Beding'en, to stipulate			ich bedang', &c. ich beding'e, &c. (or beding'te, &c.) or bedung', &c.	ich beding'e, &c.		bedung'en
Befeh'len, to command	du befehl'st, er befehlt'		ich befaht', &c. or ich beföh'te, &c. befohl', &c.	ich beföh'te, &c.	befiehl' or befeh'le du	befoh'len
Beflei'sen, (sich, reflect- ive,) to study, or apply one's self			ich befließ, &c.	ich befließe, &c.		besessen
Begin'nen, to begin			ich begann', &c. ich began'ne, &c. or begon'n', &c.	ich began'ne, &c.		begon'nen
Beis'sen, to bite			ich biß, &c.	ich biße, &c.		gebissen
Ber'gen, to conceal	du birgst, er birgt		ich barg, &c.	ich bär'ge, &c. or bür'ge, &c.	birg, (or ber'ge)	gebor'gen
Ber'sten, to burst	(du ber'stest, er ber'stet, or) du bir'stest, er birst		ich borst, &c. or barst, &c.	ich bör'ste, &c. or bär'ste, &c.	birst, (or ber'ste)	gebor'sten

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Past</i>	
	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Bestimmen, (sich, reflective) to recollect	. . . . .	ich besann', &c. or besann', &c.	ich besän'ne, &c. or besän'ne, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	beson'nen
Besitz'en, to possess	. . . . .	ich besaß', &c.	ich besäße, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	besessen
Betrü'gen or betrug'en, to deceive	. . . . .	ich betrog', &c.	ich betröge, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	betro'gen
Bewe'gen, to induce	. . . . .	ich bewog', &c.	ich bewöge, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	bewo'gen
Bie'gen, to bend	. . . . .	ich bog, &c.	ich böge, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	gebo'gen
Bie'ten, to bid, to offer	du (bie'test or) beutest, er (bie'tet or) beut	ich bot, &c.	ich böte, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	gebo'ten
Bind'en, to bind	. . . . .	ich band, &c.	ich bände, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	gebun'den
Bitt'en, to beg, to ask	. . . . .	ich bat, &c.	ich bäte, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	gebe'ten
Blas'en, to blow	du bläs'est, er bläset or bläst	ich blies, &c.	ich bliese, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	geblas'en
Blei'ben, to remain	. . . . .	ich blieb, &c.	ich bliebe, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	geblie'ben
Blei'chen, to grow pale	. . . . .	ich bliich, &c.	ich bliche, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	geblich'en
Bra'ten, to roast	(du bra'test, er brätet, or) du brätst, er brät	ich brätete, &c. (or) bra'tete, &c.)	ich bräte, &c. (or) brätete, &c.)	. . . . .	. . . . .	gebra'ten
Brech'en, to break	du brichst, er bricht	ich brach, &c.	ich bräthe, &c.	. . . . .	brich, or brech'e du	gebroch'en
Bren'nen, to burn, &c.	. . . . .	ich brannte, &c. (or) brennte, &c.)	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	gebrannt'
Bring'en, to bring, &c.	. . . . .	ich brachte, &c.	ich brächte, &c.	. . . . .	. . . . .	gebracht'

D.	Denk'en, to think	. . . . .	ich däch'te, &c.	ich däch'te, &c.	. . . . .	gedacht'
	Ding'en, to bargain, to hire	. . . . .	ich (ding'te, &c. or) dung, &c. or dang, &c.	ich (ding'te, or) düng'e, &c. or däng'e, &c.	. . . . .	gedung'en
	Dresch'en, to thresh	du drisch'est (or dresch'est), er drischt	ich drasch, &c. or drosch, &c. (or dresch'te, &c.)	ich dräsch'e, &c. or dresch'e, &c. (or dräng'e, &c. or drüung'e	drisch (or dresch'e du)	(or gedrosch'en)
	Dring'en, to press, to urge	. . . . .	ich drang, &c. or drung, &c.	ich dräng'e, &c. or drüung'e	. . . . .	gedrung'en
	Dür'fen, to be permitted	ich darf, du darfst, er darfst	ich dürft'e, &c.	ich dürft'e, &c.	. . . . .	gedürft'
E.	Empfang'en, to receive	du empfängst', er empfängt'	ich empfang', &c.	ich empfang'e, &c.	. . . . .	empfang'en
	Empfeh'len, to recommend	du empfiest', er empfiest', du empfiehlst', er empfiehlst'	ich empfiel', &c. or empfehl', &c.	ich empfiöh'te, &c. or empfiöh'te, &c.	empfiel' (or empfiöh'te du)	empfoh'len
	Empfin'den, to feel, to perceive	. . . . .	ich empfund', &c.	ich empfan'de, &c.	. . . . .	empfan'den
	Entrin'nen, to escape	. . . . .	ich entran'n', &c. or entron'n', &c.	ich entran'ne, &c. or entron'ne, &c.	. . . . .	entron'nen
	Erblei'chen, to grow pale	. . . . .	ich erblich', &c.	ich erblich'e, &c.	. . . . .	erblich'en
	Erkür'en, to choose	. . . . .	ich erkür', &c.	ich erkür'te, &c.	. . . . .	erkür'en
	Erlösch'en, to become extinct	du erlischt'est, er erlischt'	ich erlösch', &c.	ich erlösch'e, &c.	erlischt' (or erlösch'te du)	(or erlösch'en)

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>		
Erschal'ten, to resound	. . . . .	ich erschall', &c. (or erschall'te, &c.)	ich erschöll', &c. (or erschall'te, &c.)	ich erschöl'te, &c. (or erschall'te, &c.)	. . . . .	erscholl'ten
Erschrec'ken, to be frightened	du erschrickst', er erschrickt'	ich erschreck', &c. (or erschrock'te, &c.)	ich erschrick', &c. (or erschrock'te, &c.)	ich erschrick'te, &c. (or erschrock'te, &c.)	erschrick' (or erschreckte du)	erschrock'en
Ermä'gen, to consider	. . . . .	ich ermög', &c. (or ermög'te, &c.)	ich ermö'ge, &c. (or ermög'te, &c.)	ich ermög'te, &c. (or ermög'te, &c.)	. . . . .	ermög'en (or ermög't')
Ess'en, to eat	du issest, er isset or isst	ich esse, &c.	ich ässe, &c.	ich ässe, &c.	iß (or esse du)	gegess'en
Fah'ren, to ride, to go	du fährst, er fährt	ich fuhr, &c.	ich füh're, &c.	ich füh're, &c.	. . . . .	gefahr'en
Fal'ten, to fall	du fällst, er fällt	ich fiel, &c.	ich fiele, &c.	ich fiele, &c.	. . . . .	gefall'en
Fang'en, to catch	du fängst, er fängt	ich fing, &c.	ich finge, &c.	ich finge, &c.	. . . . .	gefang'en
Fech'ten, to fight.	du fuchst, er sicht	ich focht, &c.	ich focht, &c.	ich focht'te, &c.	sicht (or gefoch'ten focht'te)	gefocht'en
Fin'den, to find	. . . . .	ich fand, &c.	ich fänd, &c.	ich fänd'te, &c.	. . . . .	gefunden
Flech'ten, to twist	du flichst, er slicht	ich flocht, &c.	ich flocht, &c.	ich flocht'te, &c.	flicht (or geflocht'ten flecht'te)	gestoht'en
Flie'gen, to fly	du (flie'gest or) fliegst, er (flie'get or) fliegt	ich flog, &c.	ich flog, &c.	ich flog'te, &c.	(flie'ge, or) flieg (flie'he, or) fliech	gesto'gen
Flie'hen, to flee, to run away	(du fliehst, er flieht or) du fluchst, er flucht	ich floh, &c.	ich floh, &c.	ich floh'te, &c.	flieh (or flieh'he, or) flieh	gesto'hen

Flie'sen, to flow	er (flie'set or) fließt	ich fließ, &c.	ich flöß'se, &c.	• • • • •	• • • • •	geflo'ssen
Frä'gen, to ask	du frä'gst, er frägt, du frä'gst, er frägt	(or) ich frug, &c. frä'ge, &c.)	ich fräg'te, &c.	ich frä'gte, &c.	frif (or) gefro'ssen	gefro'ren
Frö'ssen, to eat, devour	du frif'stest, er frifft	ich fror, &c.	ich frör'te, &c.	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •
Frö'ren, to freeze	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •
Frö'hen, to ferment	• • • • •	ich; (gäh'r'te &c. or) gohr, &c.	ich (gäh'r'te, or) göh'r'te, &c.	ich (gäh'r'te, or) göh'r'te, &c.	• • • • •	gegoh'ren
Ge'bären, to bring forth	(du gebär'st, er gebärt, or) du gebier'st, er gebiert	ich gebär', &c.	ich gebä'r'te, &c.	ich gebä'r'te, &c.	(gebä'r'te or) gebier'	gebo'ren
Ge'ben, to give	du giebst, er giebt	ich gab, &c.	ich gä'b'te, &c.	ich gä'b'te, &c.	gieb (or) ge= be du)	gege'ben
Ge'bie'ten, to command	du (gebie'test, or) ge= beur'st, er (gebie'tet or) gebeut'	ich gebot', &c.	ich gebö'te, &c.	ich gebö'te, &c.	(gebie'te or) gebeut'	gebo'ten
Ge'die'hen, to prosper	• • • • •	ich gedieh', &c.	ich gedie'h'te, &c.	ich gedie'h'te, &c.	• • • • •	gedie'hen
Ge'fal'sen, to please	du gefäll'st, er gefäll't	ich gefiel', &c.	ich gefie'l'te, &c.	ich gefie'l'te, &c.	• • • • •	gefal'sen
Ge'hen, to go, to walk	• • • • •	ich ging, &c.	ich ging'te, &c.	ich ging'te, &c.	• • • • •	gegang'en
Ge'lung'en, <i>impers.</i> to succeed	• • • • •	es gelang', &c.	es gelang'te, &c.	es gelang'te, &c.	• • • • •	gelung'en
Ge'lf'ten, to be worth, to cost	to du gulf'st, er gult	ich galt, &c.	ich gäl'te, &c.	ich gäl'te, &c.	(or) gult gulf'te)	gegel'ten
Ge'ue'fen, to recover (from illness)	• • • • •	ich genas', &c.	ich genä's'te, &c.	ich genä's'te, &c.	• • • • •	gene'fen

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Past Participle.</i>	
	<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	
Genie'sen, to enjoy	er (geniest' or) geneust'		ich genosß, &c.	ich genösse, &c.	(genie'se or) geneus'	genos'sen
Gera'then, to hit upon	du geräthst', er geräth'		ich geriech, &c.	ich gerieche, &c.	. . . . .	gera'then
Gesche'hen, to happen	es geschieht'		es geschah', &c.	es geschähe, &c.	. . . . .	gesche'hen
Gewin'nen, to gain, to win	. . . . .		ich gewann', &c. or gewonn', &c.	ich gewönne, &c. or gewänne, &c.	. . . . .	gewon'nen
Gie'sen, to pour, to spill	er (gießt or) geußt		ich goß, &c.	ich gösse, &c.	(gie'se or) geuß	gegoss'en
Glei'chen, to resemble	. . . . .		ich glich, &c.	ich gleiche, &c.	. . . . .	geglich'en
Glei'ten, to glide	. . . . .		ich glitt, &c.	ich glitte, &c.	. . . . .	gegлит'en
Glim'men, to shine, to glimmer	. . . . .		ich glomn, &c. (or glimm'te, &c.)	ich glömme, &c. (or glimm'ete, &c.)	. . . . .	geglom'men
Gra'ben, to dig	du gräbst, er gräbt		ich grub, &c.	ich grübe, &c.	. . . . .	gegra'ben
Grei'fen, to seize, to grasp	. . . . .		ich griff, &c.	ich griffe, &c.	. . . . .	gegriff'en
Ha'ben, to have	du hast, er hat		ich hat'te, &c.	ich hätte, &c.	. . . . .	geha'ten
Hal'ten, to hold	du hältst, er hält		ich hielt, &c.	ich hiel'te, &c.	. . . . .	gehal'ten
Häng'en, to hang	du hängst, er hängt		ich hing, &c.	ich hing'e &c.	. . . . .	gehang'en

5.



Hau'en, to hew	ich hie, &c.	ich hie/be, &c.	gehan/en
Hör'en, to hear	ich hob, &c.	or ich hö/be, &c.	gehö/ben
	hub, &c.	hür/be, &c.	
Hör'en, to bid	ich hies, &c.	ich hie/se, &c.	gehör/en
Hül'fen, to help	ich half, &c.	or ich höl'fe, &c.	gehöl'fen
	holf, &c.	hül'fe, &c.	or hül'f (or hel'fe du)
		häl'fe, &c.	
Jagen, to chase	ich jag'te, &c.	ich jag'te, &c.	
	or jug, &c.	or jü'ge, &c.	
Kriegen, to chide	ich kiff, &c.	ich kif/se, &c.	gekiffen
Kenn'en, to know	ich kan'te, &c.		gekann't
Klei'ben, to cleave	ich klob, &c.	ich klö/be, &c.	geklo'ben
Klim'men, to climb	ich klonn, &c.	ich klöm'me, &c.	geklim'men
	(or klimm'te, &c.)	(or klim'mete, &c.)	
Kling'en, to sound	ich klang, &c.	ich kläng'e, &c.	gekling'en
Knei'fen, to pinch	ich kniif, &c.	(or ich kniif'e, &c.)	gekniif'en
	kneif'te, &c.)		
Kom'men, to come	du köm'mst, er kömmt (or du komm'st, er kommt, &c.)	ich köm'me, &c.	gekomm'en
Könn'en, to be able	ich kann, du kannst, er kann, &c.	ich köm'te, &c.	gekonn't

Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperat.	Past Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Krie'chen, to creep	du (krie'chest, or) kreichst, er (krie'chet, or) krecht	ich krich, &c.	ich krich'e, &c.	(krie'che, or) krecht	gefroch'en	
↳ la'den, to load	du lädst, er lädt (or du lädest, er lädet)	du ich lud, &c.	ich läde, &c.	. . . . .	gela'den	
lassen, to let	du lässest, er lässt or du lässt, er lässt	ich lies, &c.	ich lie'se &c.	. . . . .	gela'ssen	
laufen, to run	du läuffst, er läuft (or du lauffst, er laufft)	ich lief, &c.	ich lie'se, &c.	. . . . .	gelaufen	
lei'den, to suffer	. . . . .	ich litt, &c.	ich lit'te, &c.	. . . . .	geli'ten	
lei'hen, to lend	. . . . .	ich lieh, &c.	ich lie'h'e, &c.	. . . . .	geli'e'hen	
le'sen, to read	du sie'sest, er siest	ich las, &c.	ich lä'se, &c.	sies (or lese du)	gese'sen	
lie'gen, to lie down	. . . . .	ich lag, &c.	ich lä'ge, &c.	. . . . .	gele'gen	
lü'gen, to lie, to utter a falsehood	(du lü'gest, er lügt, or) du leugst, er leugt	ich log, &c.	ich lö'ge, &c.	. . . . .	gelo'gen	
↳ Ma'h'en, to grind	. . . . .	ich mied, &c.	ich mie'de, &c.	. . . . .	gemah'en	
Mei'den, to avoid	. . . . .	ich mied, &c.	ich mie'de, &c.	. . . . .	gemie'den	

Mel'sen, to milk	du milst, er milkt (or duich melst, er melst, &c.) melst, er melkt	melst, &c. melst, &c.	(or melst, or melst, &c.)	milk milch	gemol'sen (or gemelst)
Messen, to measure	du misst, er misst, er misst, er misst misst	ich mass, &c.	ich misst, &c.	mess messen	gemessen (or gemessen)
Misfallen, to displease	du misfallst, er misfällt, er misfällt	ich misfall, &c.	ich misfall, &c.	misfall	gemisfallen
Mögen, to be willing, to be able, to like	ich mag, du magst, er mag, er mag mag	ich mocht, &c.	ich möcht, &c.	mögen	gemocht
Müssen, to be obliged	ich muß, du mußt, er muß, er muß muß	ich mußt, &c.	ich muß, &c.	muß	gemußt
Nehmen, to take	du nimmst, er nimmt	ich nahm, &c.	ich nahm, &c.	nimm nehm	genommen (or genommen)
Nennen, to name	du nennst, er nennt	ich nann, &c.	ich nann, &c.	nenn nenn	genannt
Pfeifen, to whistle	du pfeifst, er pfeift, er pfeift, er pfeift	ich piff, &c.	ich piff, &c.	pfeiff pfeiff	gepfeiffen
Spiegen, to cherish	du spiegest, er spiegt, er spiegt, er spiegt	ich spiegt, &c.	ich spiegt, &c.	spiege spiege	gespiegen
Preisen, to extol, to praise	du preist, er preist, er preist, er preist	ich preise, &c.	ich preise, &c.	preise preise	gepreisen (or gepreist)
Quellen, to spring forth, to gush, (of fluids)	du quillst, er quillt	ich quoll, &c.	ich quoll, &c.	quill quill	gequollen (or gequollen)

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Past Participle.</i>
	<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	
<b>R.</b> Räch'en, to avenge	. . . . .		ich (räch'te, &c. or roch, &c.	ich (räch'te, &c. or) röch'te, &c.	geroch'en (or rächt')
Ra'then, to advise	du räth'st, er räth		ich rieh, &c.	ich rie'the, &c.	gera'then
Rei'ben, to rub	. . . . .		ich rieb, &c.	ich rie'be, &c.	gerie'ben
Reiß'en, to tear	. . . . .		ich riß, &c.	ich riß'se, &c.	geriß'en
Rei'ten, to ride	. . . . .		ich ritt, &c.	ich rit'te, &c.	gerit'ten
Ren'nen, to run	. . . . .		ich rann'te, &c. (or renn'te, &c.)	. . . . .	gerann't'
Rie'chen, to smell	. . . . .		ich roch, &c.	ich röch'te, &c.	geroch'en
Ring'en, to wrestle	. . . . .		ich rang, &c.	ich räng'e, &c.	gerung'en
Rin'nen, to run, to drop, (of fluids)	. . . . .		ich rann, &c.	ich rän'ne, &c. or rän'ne, &c.	geron'nen
Ruf'en, to call	. . . . .		ich rief, &c. (or ruf'te, &c.)	ich rie'fe, &c.	geruf'en
<b>S.</b> Saug'en, to drink (strictly used only of animals)	du säuffst, er säuft		ich soff, &c.	ich söß'se, &c.	gesoff'en
Saug'en, to suck	. . . . .		ich sog, &c. (or saug'te, &c.)	ich sö'ge, &c.	geso'gen

erschaffen, to create	. . . . .	ich schuf, &c.	ich schüfse, &c.	. . . . .	geschaffen
erschallen, to sound	. . . . .	ich scholl, &c. (or schallte, &c.)	ich schälte, &c. (or schällete, &c.)	. . . . .	geschieden
erschneiden, to separate, to part	. . . . .	ich schnid, &c.	ich schnide, &c.	. . . . .	geschien
erscheinen, to appear, to shine	. . . . .	ich schien, &c.	ich schie'ne, &c.	. . . . .	geschien
erschelten, to scold, to chide	du schiltst, er schilt	ich schalt, &c.	ich schälte, &c.	schilt (or schelte)	gescholten
erschneiden, to shear	du schierst, er schiert	ich scher, &c.	ich schdre, &c.	(schre'ne or) schier	geschoren
erschoben, to push, to shove	. . . . .	ich schob, &c. (or schiebte, &c.)	ich schöbe, &c. (or schiebete, &c.)	. . . . .	geschoben
erschossen, to shoot	. . . . .	ich schoss, &c.	ich schöfse, &c.	. . . . .	geschossen
erschinden, to flay	. . . . .	ich schund, &c. (or schundete, &c.)	ich schün'de, &c. (or schundete, &c.)	. . . . .	geschunden
erschlafen, to sleep	du schläfst, er schläft	ich schlief, &c.	ich schliefse, &c.	. . . . .	geschlafen
erschlagen, to beat, to strike	du schlägst, er schlägt	ich schlug, &c.	ich schlugse, &c.	. . . . .	geschlagen
erschleichen, to sneak	. . . . .	ich schlich, &c.	ich schliche, &c.	. . . . .	geschlichen
erschleifen, to grind, to sharpen	. . . . .	ich schliß, &c.	ich schlißse, &c.	. . . . .	geschliffen
erschleifen, to split, to slit	. . . . .	ich schliß, &c.	ich schlißse, &c.	. . . . .	geschliffen
erschließen, to shut, to lock up	er (schließet or) schließt	ich schloß, &c.	ich schloßse, &c.	(schließse, or) schloß	geschlossen

	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperat.	Past Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
<i>Eschling'en</i> , to sling	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schlang, &c.	ich schlänge, &c.	. . . . .	geschlung= en
<i>Eschmeißen</i> , to throw	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schmiß, &c.	ich schmiss'e, &c.	. . . . .	geschmiss'en
<i>Eschmelzen</i> , to melt	du schmilzest, er schmilzt	. . . . .	ich schmolz, &c.	ich schmolze, &c.	(schmelze, or) schmilz	geschmolzen
<i>Eschnaub'en</i> , to pant	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich (schnaub'te, &c. or) schnob, &c.	ich (schnaub'te, &c. or) schnöbe, &c.	. . . . .	(geschnaubt' or) ge= schnob'en
<i>Eschneiden</i> , to cut	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schnitt, &c.	ich schnit'te, &c.	. . . . .	geschnit'ten
<i>Eschraub'en</i> , to screw	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich (schraub'te, &c. or) schrob, &c.	ich schraub'te, &c. (or schröbe, &c.)	. . . . .	(geschraubt' or) ge= schrob'en
<i>Eschrei'b'en</i> , to write	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schrieb, &c.	ich schriebe, &c.	. . . . .	geschrie'b'en
<i>Eschrei'en</i> , to cry	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schrie, &c.	ich schrie'e, &c.	. . . . .	geschrie'en
<i>Eschreit'en</i> , to stride	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schritt, &c.	ich schrit'te, &c.	. . . . .	geschrit'ten
<i>Eschwä'ren</i> , to fester, to suppurate	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schwor, &c.	ich schwö're, &c.	. . . . .	geschwo'ren
<i>Eschwei'gen</i> , to be silent	. . . . .	. . . . .	ich schwieg, &c.	ich schwie'ge, &c.	. . . . .	geschwie= gen
<i>Eschwell'en</i> , to swell	du schwillst, er schwillt	. . . . .	ich schwoll, &c.	ich schwölle, &c.	. . . . .	geschwoll= ten

Schwim'men, to swim	ich schwamm, &c. or schwam, &c.	ich schwam'me, &c. or schwam'me, &c.	geschwom'men
Schwim'den, to vanish	ich schwand, &c.	ich schwän'de, &c.	geschwam'den
Schwing'en, to swing	ich schwang, &c.	ich schwäng'e, &c.	geschwang'en
Schwö'ren, to swear	ich schwor, &c. or schwur, &c.	ich schwör'e, &c. or schwür'e, &c.	geschwö'ren
Se'h'en, to see	ich sah, &c.	ich sä'h'e, &c.	gese'hen
Sein, to be	ich war, &c.	ich wär'e, &c.	gewes'en
Se'n'den, to send	ich sand'te, &c.	ich (se'dete, &c. or) sät'te, &c.	gesand't
Se'd'en, to boil	ich sied'te, &c.	ich (se'dete, &c. or) sät'te, &c.	gesied'ten
Sing'en, to sing	ich sang, &c.	ich säng'e, &c.	gesung'en
Sink'en, to sink	ich sank, &c.	ich sänk'e, &c.	gesunk'en
Sin'n'en, to think, to meditate	ich sann, &c.	ich sän'n'e, &c. or sön'n'e, &c.	gesehen'en
Sit'zen, to sit	ich saß, &c.	ich säß'e, &c.	gesses'en
Sel's'en, to be obliged	ich soll, &c.	ich söll'e, &c.	gesspie'en
Spet'en, to spit	ich spie, &c.	ich spie'e, &c.	

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Past Participle.</i>	
	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Spin'en, to spin	. . . . .	ich spän'ne, &c.	ich spän'ne, &c.	ich spän'ne, &c.	. . . . .	gespon'nen
Splic'sen, to split, to cleave	. . . . .	ich splic'se, &c.	ich splic'se, &c.	ich splic'se, &c.	. . . . .	gespliff'en
Sprech'en, to speak	du sprichst, er spricht	ich sprach, &c.	ich spräche, &c.	ich spräche, &c.	sprich (or sprech'e du)	gesprach'en
Spross'en, to sprout	. . . . .	ich sproß, &c.	ich sproß'e, &c.	ich sproß'e, &c.	. . . . .	gesproß'en
Sprung'en, to spring, to leap	. . . . .	ich sprang, &c.	ich spränge, &c.	ich spränge, &c.	. . . . .	gesprung'en
Stech'en, to sting, to prick	du stichst, er sticht	ich stach, &c.	ich stäche, &c.	ich stäche, &c.	stich, (or stech'e)	gestoch'en
Stech'en, to stick	. . . . .	ich steck'te (or) steck'te, or stäcke	ich steck'te (or) steck'te, or stäcke	ich steck'te (or) steck'te, or stäcke	. . . . .	gesteck'ten
Steh'en, to stand	. . . . .	ich stand, &c. or stund, &c.	ich stän'de, &c. or stün'de, &c.	ich stän'de, &c. or stün'de, &c.	. . . . .	gestan'den
Steh'en, to steal	du stiehst, er stiehlt	ich stahl, &c.	ich stäh'le, &c. or stöhl, &c.	ich stäh'le, &c. or stöhl, &c.	stiehl (or steh'se du)	gestoh'len
Steig'en, to ascend	. . . . .	ich stieg, &c.	ich stie'ge, &c.	ich stie'ge, &c.	. . . . .	gestie'gen
Sterb'en, to die	du stirbst, er stirbt	ich starb, &c.	ich stür'be, &c.	ich stür'be, &c.	stirb (or ster'be du)	gestor'ben
Streub'en, to dust, to scatter	. . . . .	ich stob, &c.	ich stö'be, &c.	ich stö'be, &c.	. . . . .	gesto'ben



Stin/ <u>k</u> 'en, to stink	. . . . .	ich stänk'e, &c.	ich stänk'e, &c.	. . . . .	gestunk'en
Sto/ <u>s</u> 'en, to push	du stößest, er stößt	ich sties, &c.	ich sties, &c.	. . . . .	gesto'sen
Strei/ <u>b</u> 'en, to stroke, to slide along	. . . . .	ich strich, &c.	ich strich, &c.	. . . . .	gestrich'en
Strei/ <u>t</u> 'en, to contend	. . . . .	ich stritt, &c.	ich stritt, &c.	. . . . .	gestrit'ten
<b>T.</b>					
Thun, to do	du thust, er thut, wir thun, ihr thut, sie thun	ich that, &c.	ich that, &c.	. . . . .	gethan'
Trä/ <u>g</u> 'en, to carry	du trägst, er trägt	ich trug, &c.	ich trug, &c.	. . . . .	getrag'en
Trä/ <u>s</u> 'sen, to hit	du triffst, er trifft	ich traf, &c.	ich traf, &c.	triff' (or getroffen triff'st du)	
Tri/ <u>e</u> 'ben, to drive	. . . . .	ich trieb, &c.	ich trieb, &c.	. . . . .	getrie'ben
Tri/ <u>e</u> 'ten, to tread	du trittst, er tritt	ich trat, &c.	ich trat, &c.	tritt' (or getreten tritt'st du)	
Tri/ <u>e</u> 'gen or tri/ <u>g</u> 'en, to deceive	. . . . .	ich trog, &c.	ich trog, &c.	. . . . .	getro'gen
Trin/ <u>k</u> 'en, to drink	. . . . .	ich trank, &c.	ich trank, &c.	. . . . .	getrunk'en
<b>V.</b>					
Verber/ <u>g</u> 'en, to conceal	du verbirgst, er verbirgt	ich verbarg, &c. or verborg, &c.	ich verbarg, &c. or verborg, &c.	verbirg' (or ver= ber'ge du)	verbor'gen
Verbie/ <u>t</u> 'en, to forbid	du (verbiehst, or) verbietest, er (verbieht, or) verbietet	ich verbot, &c.	ich verbot, &c.	(verbiehst or) ver= bienst'	verbo'ten

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>		
Verbleiben, to fade Verderben, to perish	du verdürst', er verdürbt'	ich verbleich', &c. ich verderb', &c.	ich verbleich'ste, &c. ich verderb'ste, &c.	ich verbleich'ste, &c. ich verderb'ste, &c.	verdürb' (or verderb'e du)	verbleichen verdorben
Verdrücken, <i>impers.</i> to offend Verdriessen, to forget	es (verdriest' or) dreust' du vergiß'st, er vergißt'	es verdross', &c. ich vergaß', &c.	es verdross'ste, &c. ich vergaß'ste, &c.	es verdross'ste, &c. ich vergaß'ste, &c.	vergiß' (or vergesse du)	verdrossen vergesen
Vergleichen, to compare Verlassen, to leave Verlieren, to lose Verlösch'en, to be extinguished	du verläß'st, er verläßt' du verlier'st, er verliert' du verlöscht', er löscht'	ich verglich', &c. ich verlies', &c. ich verlor', &c. ich verlösch'te, &c. (or verlöscht'e, &c.)	ich verglich'ste, &c. ich verlies'ste, &c. ich verlor'ste, &c. ich verlösch'te, &c. (or verlöscht'e, &c.)	ich verglich'ste, &c. ich verlies'ste, &c. ich verlor'ste, &c. ich verlösch'te, &c. (or verlöscht'e, &c.)	vergiss' (or vergesse du)	vergliehen verlassen verloren verloschen
Vermieden, to avoid Verschlingen, to devour Verschwinden, to disappear	du vermeid'st, er vermeidet' du verschling'st, er verschlingt' du verschwind'st, er verschwindet'	ich vermeid', &c. ich verschlang', &c. ich verschwand', &c.	ich vermeid'ste, &c. ich verschlang'ste, &c. ich verschwand'ste, &c.	ich vermeid'ste, &c. ich verschlang'ste, &c. ich verschwand'ste, &c.	vermeid' (or vermeide du)	vermieden verschlungen verschwinden
Verwirren, to perplex, to confound Verzeihen, to forgive	du verwirr'st, er verwirrt' du verwirr'st, er verwirrt' du verzeih'st, er verzeiht'	ich verwirr'te, &c. (or verwirr'te, &c.) ich verwirr'te, &c. (or verwirr'te, &c.) ich verzeih'te, &c.	ich verwirr'te, &c. (or verwirr'te, &c.) ich verwirr'te, &c. (or verwirr'te, &c.) ich verzeih'te, &c.	ich verwirr'te, &c. (or verwirr'te, &c.) ich verwirr'te, &c. (or verwirr'te, &c.) ich verzeih'te, &c.	verwirr' (or verwirre du)	verwirret (or) verwirren verziehen

Wachsen, to grow Waschen, to wash	du wächs't, er wächs't (du wäsch'st, er or) du wäsch'st, er wäscht	ich wuchs, &c. ich wusch, &c.	ich wüch'se, &c. ich wüsch'e, &c.	gewachsen gewaschen
Weben, to weave	. . . . .	ich web, &c. (or web'te, &c.)	ich wö'be, &c. (or wé'bet'e, &c.)	gewö'ben
Weichen, to yield	. . . . .	ich wich, &c.	ich wich'e, &c.	gewich'en
Weisen, to show	. . . . .	ich wies, &c.	ich wies'e, &c.	gewies'en
Werden, to turn	. . . . .	ich wand'te, &c. (or wend'te, &c.)	ich wänd'te, &c. (or wend'te, &c.)	gewand't (or gewend't)
Werben, to sue for, to enroll	du wirbst, er wirbt	ich warb, &c.	ich wär'be, &c. or wür'be, &c.	gewor'ben (or gewor'be du)
Werden, to become	du wirst, er wird	ich wur'de, &c. or ich ward, du wardst, er ward, wir wur'den, &c.	ich wür'de, &c. ich wür'de, &c.	gewor'den
Werfen, to throw	du wirfst, er wirft	ich warf, &c.	ich wär'fe, &c. or wür'fe, &c.	(or gewor'fen wer'fe du)
Wiegen, to weigh, to have weight	. . . . .	ich wog, &c.	ich wö'ge, &c.	gewo'gen
Winden, to wind, to turn	. . . . .	ich wand, &c.	ich wänd'e, &c.	gewand'ten
Wissen, to know	ich weis, du weißt, er weiß	ich wuß'te, &c.	ich wüß'te, &c.	gewuß't
Wollen, to be willing, to wish	ich will, du willst, er will			

Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Past Participle.	
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperat.	Participle.
3. Zei'hen, to accuse of Zie'hen, to draw, to pull	. . . . . (du ziehst, er zieht, &c. or) du ziehst, er ziehst, &c.	ich zieh, &c. ich zog, &c.	ich zie'he, &c. ich zö'ge, &c.	. . . . . (zie'he, or) zieh	gezie'hen gezö'gen	
Zwing'en, to force, to compel	. . . . .	ich zwang, &c.	ich zwäng'e, &c.	. . . . .	gezwung'en	

Most of those verbs in which the common form of the second person of the imperative is irregular, admit also the regular form; and this is usually followed by the pronoun, while the irregular form is generally used without the pronoun; as, *helf'!* or *helf'!* du; *hilf*, or *helf'* du.

Several verbs are irregular only when they are used as neuter, and regular when they are used as active verbs. Of this description are *blei'chen*, to become pale, *irr.*; and regular when they are used as active verbs. Of this description are *blei'chen*, to become pale, *irr.*; and *blei'chen*, to make pale, *reg.*; *erschrec'ken*, to be frightened, *irr.*; and *erschrec'ken*, to frighten, *reg.*; *schmel'zen*, to be melting, *irr.*; and *schmel'zen*, to melt (actively), *reg.*; *schwei'gen*, to be silent, *irr.*; and *schwei'gen*, to silence, *reg.*; *stuck'fen*, to swell (in a neuter sense), *irr.*; and *stuck'fen*, to swell (in an active sense), *reg.*; *stuck'fen*, to stick or adhere, *irr.*; and *stuck'fen*, to stick or put into something, *reg.*; *verder'ben*, to perish, *irr.*; and *verder'ben*, to ruin, *reg.*; *verlösch'en*, to become extinguished, *irr.*; and *verlösch'en*, to extinguish, *reg.*; *wic'hen*, to give way, *irr.*; and *wic'hen*, to soften, *reg.*

Some verbs which have different significations, are regular when they are used in one, and irregular when used in another sense; as, *bewe'gen*, to move, *reg.*; and *bewe'gen*, to induce, *irr.*; *wic'gen*, to rock, *reg.*; and *wic'gen*, to weigh, *irr.*

The following verbs, which are similar to each other, are to be distinguished.

Sau'gen, to suck, <i>irr.</i>	Säu'gen, to suckle, <i>reg.</i>
Schwim'men, to swim, <i>irr.</i>	Schwem'men, to wash away, <i>reg.</i>
Sink'en, to sink, <i>irr.</i>	Senk'en, to sink, let down, <i>reg.</i>
Spring'en, to spring, <i>irr.</i>	Spreng'en, to sprinkle, <i>reg.</i>
Trink'en, to drink, <i>irr.</i>	Tränk'en, to give to drink, <i>reg.</i>

*Promiscuous Exercises on the Irregular and Mixed Verbs.*

When the verb to *do* is an auxiliary to another verb, the auxiliary is not expressed in German. Thus the phrases, *do you know?* or *do you not know?* are expressed in German as if the English were, *know you?* or *know you not?* *wisset ihr?* or *wisset ihr nicht?*

The position of the negative *nicht* is immediately after the verb, except with the infinitive and the participles, where it stands before the verb; and in questions, where it stands after the pronoun. Ex. I am not, *ich bin nicht*; are you not? *seid ihr nicht?* not to be, *nicht sein*; he might not come, *er käme nicht*.

Indicative.

*Present.*

I know,	wis'sen.
May I?	dür'fen.
I must not,	müs'sen.
Can I not?	könn'en.
Thou fallest,	fall'en.
Dost thou catch?	fang'en.
Thou dost not hold,	hal'ten.
Dost thou not hang?	häng'en.
You must,	müs'sen.
May he?	mö'gen.
He does not let,	las'sen.
Does he not sleep?	schla'fen.
She advises,	ra'then.

Does she go ?	fah' ren.
She does not dig,	gra' ben.
Does she not strike ?	schla' gen.
It grows,	wach' sen.
Does it see ?	se' hen.
It does not eat,	es' sen.
Does it not happen ?	gesche' hen.
We give,	ge' ben.
Do we step ?	tre' ten.
We do not forget,	verges' sen.
You read,	le' sen.
Do you measure ?	mes' sen.
You do not hew,	hau' en.
Do you not carry ?	tra' gen.
They are,	sein.
Do they remain ?	blei' ben.
They do not seize,	grei' fen.
They do not go,	ge' hen.

*Imperfect.*

I might,	mö' gen.
Did I eat ?	es' sen.
I did not dig,	gra' ben.
Did I not step ?	tre' ten.
Thou remainedst,	blei' ben.
Didst thou lend ?	lei' hen.
Thou didst not avoid,	mei' den.
Didst thou not fight ?	fech' ten.
He induced,	bewe' gen.
Did he heave, or lift ?	he' ben.
He did not conceal,	ber' gen.
Did he not take ?	neh' men.
He commanded,	befeh' len.
Did she speak ?	sprech' en.
She did not write,	schrei' ben.
We nominated,	ernen' nen.
It bit,	beiß' fen.
Did it glide ?	glei' ten.
He did not think,	denk' en.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.*

I may fall,	fa/len.
I may not be able,	kö'n/nen.
Thou mayst not,	mö/gen.
Thou must,	müß/sen.
He may be willing,	wol/len.
We may beat,	schla/gen.
They may not bear,	tra/gen.

*Imperfect.*

I might dig,	gra/ben.
He might not bring,	bring'en.
Thou mightst break,	brech'en.
Thou mightst not command,	befeh/len.
He might conceal,	ber/gen.
She might not help,	hel/sen.
It might eat,	es/sen.
He might not,	mö/gen.
We might not lose,	verlie'ren.
You might not creep,	fric'chen.
They might not confuse,	verwir'ren.
They might not spoil,	verder/ben.

## Imperative.

Read ( <i>thou</i> ),	le/sen.
Give,	ge/ben.
Take,	neh'men.
Do not step,	tre'ten.
Eat, <i>or</i> do you eat,	es/sen.
Do not forget,	vergeß/sen.
Let him come,	kom'men.
Let him not give,	ge/ben.
Let us go,	ge/hen.
Speak, <i>or</i> do you speak,	sprech'en.
Let them enjoy,	genie'sen.
Do not speak,	sprech'en.

## Past Participle.

Begun,	begin'nen.
Spoken,	sprech'en.
Not deceived,	betrie'gen.
Fled,	flie'hen.
Flowed,	flie'sen.
Not sheared,	sche'ren.
Burnt,	verbren'nen.
Recommended,	empfeh'len.
Brought,	bring'en.
Valued,	gel'ten.
Given,	ge'ben.
Helped,	hel'fen.
Requested,	bit'ten.
Called,	hei'sen.

## § 4. REFLECTIVE VERBS.

Active verbs, when they reflect upon the agent, are called *reflective* verbs. They are formed with the pronouns *mich*, *dich*, (or *mir*, *dir*,) *sich*, *uns*, *euch*, *sich*, answering to the English pronouns, *myself*; *thyself*; *himself*, *herself*, *itself*; *ourselves*; *yourselves*; *themselves*. They are conjugated like active verbs, and are either regular or irregular.

Conjugation of the Reflective Verb, *sich lie'ben*, to love one's self.

Infinitive.

*Present.*

*sich lie'ben*, to love one's self.

Participle.

*sich lie'bend*, loving himself, herself, or itself.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Present.*

*Singular.*

*Singular.*

*ich lie'be mich*, I love myself.

*ich lie'be mich*, I may love myself.

*du liebst dich*, thou lovest thyself.

*du lie'best dich*, thou mayst love thyself.



er, ſie, or eſ liebt ſich, he, ſhe,  
it loves himſelf, herſelf, or  
itſelf.

er, ſie, or eſ lie'be ſich, he,  
ſhe, it may love himſelf,  
herſelf, or itſelf.

*Plural.*

wir lie'ben unſ, we love our-  
ſelves.

ihr lie'bet euch, you love your-  
ſelves.

ſie lie'ben ſich, they love them-  
ſelves.

*Plural.*

wir lie'ben unſ, we may love  
ourſelves.

ihr lie'bet euch, you may love  
yourſelves.

ſie lie'ben ſich, they may love  
themſelves.

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

ich lieb'te mich, I loved my-  
ſelf.

du lieb'teſt dich, thou, &c.

*Singular.*

ich lie'bete mich, I might love  
myſelf.

du lie'beteſt dich, thou, &c.

*Plural.*

wir lieb'ten unſ, we loved  
ourſelves.

ihr lieb'tet euch, you, &c.

*Plural.*

wir lie'beten unſ, we might  
love ourſelves.

ihr lie'betet euch, you, &c.

*Imperative.**Singular.*

lie'be dich, love thyſelf.

lie'be er ſich, let him love him-  
ſelf.

*Plural.*

lie'ben wir unſ, let us love  
ourſelves.

liebt or lie'bet euch, love your-  
ſelves.

lie'ben ſie ſich, let them love  
themſelves.

*Exercises on the Reflective Verbs.**Indicative.**Present.*

I am aſhamed,  
He blames himſelf,  
We unite together,  
You forget yourſelves,

ſich ſchâ'men, to be aſhamed.  
ſich ta'deln, to blame one's ſelf.  
ſich verei'nigen, to unite.  
ſich vergeſſen, irr. to forget  
one's ſelf.

*Imperfect.*

We rejoiced,	sich freu'en, to rejoice.
He betook himself,	sich bege'ben, <i>irr.</i> to betake one's self.
They helped themselves,	sich hel'fen, <i>irr.</i> to help one's self.

*Imperative.*

Do not offend,	sich verge'hen, <i>irr.</i> to offend, <i>to</i> <i>fail in one's duty.</i>
Grieve not,	sich grä'men, to grieve.
Do not complain,	sich beklä'gen, to complain.
Do not burn yourself,	sich verbren'nen, <i>mix.</i> to burn.
Be not afraid,	sich fürch'ten, to be afraid.

*Observations on the Reflective Verbs.*

1. There are many reflective verbs in German, which are not so in English; as, sich erbar'men, to pity; sich freu'en, to rejoice; and many others, as in the above exercises, are employed only in the reflective form; as,

sich bege'ben, to repair to.	sich grä'men, to be grieved.
sich bemäch'tigen, to get pos- session of.	sich berüh'men, to boast one's self, &c.
sich bedank'en, to thank.	

2. All active verbs, if the sense admits of it, may be used as reflective verbs, by the addition of the reflective pronouns; in which case they frequently assume an intransitive meaning; as, sich fürch'ten, *act.* to fear; and sich fürch'ten, to fear, *or* to be afraid. Some verbs, however, are employed in both forms; as,

ir'ren, to err, or sich ir'ren, to be mistaken.
zank'en, to quarrel, -or sich zank'en, to embroil one's self.
scheu'en, to shun, or sich scheu'en, to be shy.

3. Most reflective verbs take the pronoun in the accusative; as, ich erbar'me mich, I pity; ich besin'ne mich, I reflect; but some few require the pronoun in the dative; as, ich ma'ße mir nicht an, I do not assume; ich bil'de mir nicht ein, I do not imagine.

## § 5. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *impersonal* if, in those tenses which commonly have three persons, it is used, in its proper and peculiar sense, only in the third person singular, with the pronoun *es* before it. Thus the verb *ge'ben*, *v. a. irr.* to give, which is a complete verb, has a peculiar meaning when used impersonally; *indic. pres.* *es giebt*, there is; *imperf.* *es gab*, there was or were. Ex. *Es giebt Men'schen*, there are men (*literally*, it gives men).

Most impersonal verbs, though generally used as such, are sometimes employed as complete verbs, particularly in a poetic sense. Thus the verbs *don'nern*, to thunder, *blit'zen*, to lighten, are commonly used as impersonal verbs; as, *es don'net*, it thunders; *es blit'zet*, it lightens; but sometimes as complete verbs; as, *die Ho'hen don'nern*, the heights thunder; *sei'ne Augen blit'zen*, his eyes threw out lightning.

Impersonal verbs are either intransitive, or active, or reflective, as they are used either by themselves, or with a personal, or a reflective pronoun after them.

## I. Conjugation of the Impersonal Intransitive Verb.

Conjugation of the Regular Impersonal Verb, *reg'nen*,  
to rain.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Present.**es reg'net*, it rains.*es reg'ue*, it may rain.*Imperfect.**es reg'nete*, it rained.*es reg'nete*, it might rain.

The following verbs may be conjugated in a similar manner

*don'nern*, to thunder.*blit'zen*, to lighten.*schnei'en*, to snow.*thau'en*, to thaw.*ha'geln*, or *schlo'ssen*, to hail.*ta'gen*, to dawn.

Conjugation of the Irregular Impersonal Verb, *frie'ren*, to freeze.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Present.*

es friert, it freezes.

es friere, it may freeze.

*Imperfect.*

es fror, it froze.

es frö're, it might freeze.

## II. Conjugation of the Impersonal Active Verb.

Conjugation of the Regular Impersonal Verb, *är'gern*, to vex.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Present.*

*Singular.*

*Singular.*

es är'gert mich, or mich är'z  
gert, I am vexed.

es är'gere mich, or mich är'gere,  
I may be vexed.

es är'gert dich, or dich är'gert,  
thou art vexed.

es är'gere dich, or dich är'gere,  
thou mayst be vexed.

es är'gert ihn, or ihn är'gert,  
he is vexed.

es är'gere ihn, or ihn är'gere,  
he may be vexed.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

es är'gert uns, or uns är'gert,  
we are vexed.

es är'gere uns, or uns är'gere,  
we may be vexed.

es är'gert euch, or euch är'gert,  
you are vexed.

es är'gere euch, or euch är'gere,  
you may be vexed.

es är'gert sie, or sie är'gert,  
they are vexed.

es är'gere sie, or sie är'gere,  
they may be vexed.

*Imperfect.*

*Singular.*

*Singular.*

es är'gerte mich, or mich är'z  
gerte, I was vexed, &c.

es är'gerte mich, or mich är'z  
gerte, I might be vexed, &c.

The personal pronoun is generally in the accusative, but sometimes in the dative case. Thus the verb *gefäl'sen*, *v. n. irreg.* to please, is used impersonally, with the personal pronoun in the dative case; as, *es gefällt' mir*, or *mir gefällt'*, I am pleased, &c.; *es gefiel' mir*, or *mir gefiel'*, I was pleased, &c.

*Exercises on the Impersonal Active Verb.*

## Indicative.

*Present.*

I am hungry,	hung'ern, to be hungry.
Thou art cold,	frie'ren, <i>irr.</i> to freeze.
We are thirsty,	dur'sten, to be thirsty.
They are sleepy,	schlä'fern, to be sleepy.
He is pleased,	gefal'len, <i>irr.</i> to please, ( <i>Dat.</i> )

*Imperfect.*

It seems to me,	dünk'en, to seem, ( <i>Dat.</i> or <i>Acc.</i> )
We were grieved,	grä'men, to grieve.
You were grieved,	
They were discomfited,	verdrü'sen, <i>irr.</i> to discomfite.
He was displeased,	misfal'len, <i>irr.</i> to displease, ( <i>Dat.</i> )

In all the instances mentioned under II, the personal pronoun in the accusative or dative case is evidently governed by the impersonal verb, which is governed by the pronoun *es*, it, expressed or understood. In other cases, *es* is an expletive which does not govern the verb, and is either not translated or answers to the English *there*; ex. *es* kennt ihn nie'mand, there is no one that knows him; *es* sa'gen die Leu'te, people say.

## III. Conjugation of the Impersonal Reflective Verb.

Conjugation of the Irregular Impersonal Verb *verstehen*, to understand.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.*

<i>es</i> versteht' sich, it is understood ( <i>literally</i> , it understands itself.)	<i>es</i> versteh'e sich, it may be understood.
---	---

*Imperfect.*

<i>es</i> verstand' sich, it was understood.	<i>es</i> verstän'de sich, it might be understood.
--	--

*Exercises on the Impersonal Reflective Verb.**Present.*

It is becoming,	sich schic'ten, to be becoming.
It is not* proper,	sich gehd'ven, to be proper.
It is evident,	sich erge'ven, irr. to be evident.

*Imperfect.*

It came to pass,	sich fü'gen, to come to pass.
It subsided,	sich ge'ven, irr. to subside.
It was protracted,	sich verzic'hen, irr. to be protracted.

## § 6. COMPOUND VERBS.

Simple verbs being regular or irregular, their compounds are the same.

Compound verbs are compounded either with separable or inseparable particles.

Those which are compounded with inseparable particles, are conjugated like the simple verbs without the additional particle; except in the past participle, in which they do not receive the augment *ge*. Thus the verb *erfüllen*, to fulfill, is conjugated like *füllen*, *reg.* to fill; except the past participle, which is *erfüllt'* (instead of *geerfüllt*).

The separable particles are joined to the verbs in the infinitive and participle, except when the conjunction *zu*, to, is added to the infinitive, which is then put between the particle and the verb; as, *aufhalten*, to detain; he endeavoured to detain him, *er suchte ihn auf zu halten* (or *aufzuhalten*). — In the original tenses of the indicative and subjunctive, and in the imperative, the separable particles are separated and put after the verb; except when for some reason (to be stated in the Syntax) the verb must be put at the end of the sentence. Ex. you detain, *ihr haltet auf*; take care that you do not detain me, *sehet zu, daß ihr mich nicht aufhaltet*.

---

\* The negation is to be put after the reflective pronoun.

Conjugation of the Separable Compound (irregular) Verb  
aufhalten, to detain or stop.

## Infinitive.

aufhalten, to detain.

## Participle.

*Present.* aufhaltend, detaining.*Past.* aufgehalten, detained.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.**Singular.*ich hal'te auf, I detain, am  
detaining, or do detain.

du hältst auf, thou detainest.

er, sie, or es hält auf, he, she,  
or it detains.*Singular.*

ich hal'te auf, I may detain.

du hal'test auf, thou mayest de-  
tain.er, sie, or es hal'te auf, he,  
she, or it may detain.*Plural.*

wir hal'ten auf, we detain.

ihr hal'tet auf, you detain.

sie hal'ten auf, they detain.

*Plural.*wir hal'ten auf, we may de-  
tain.ihr hal'tet auf, you may de-  
tain.sie hal'ten auf, they may de-  
tain.*Imperfect.**Singular.*

ich hielt auf, I detained.

du hieltst auf, thou detain-  
edst.

er hielt auf, he detained.

*Singular.*

ich hielt auf, I might detain.

du hieltst auf, thou mightst  
detain.er hielt auf, he might de-  
tain.*Plural.*

wir hielt'en auf, we detained.

ihr hielt'et auf, you detained.

sie hielt'en auf, they detained.

*Plural.*

wir hielt'en auf, we might, &amp;c.

ihr hielt'et auf, you might, &amp;c.

sie hielt'en auf, they might,  
&c.

## Imperative.

*Singular.*

hal'te (du) auf, detain (*thou*).  
hal'te er auf, let him detain.

*Plural.*

hal'ten wir auf, let us detain.  
hal'tet (ihr) auf, detain (*you*).  
hal'ten sie auf, let them detain.

## So conjugate :

auf'nehmen, <i>irr.</i> to take up.	aus'sprechen, <i>irr.</i> to pronounce.
weg'geben, <i>irr.</i> to give away.	vor'kommen, <i>irr.</i> to come before.
ab'holen, to fetch.	ein'bringen, <i>mix.</i> to bring in.

*Exercises on the Separable Compound Verbs.*

## Indicative.

*Present.*

I take off,  
Thou acceptest,  
It devolves,

ab'nehmen, *irr.* to take off.  
an'nehmen, *irr.* to accept.  
anheim'fallen, or heim'fallen,  
*irr.* to devolve.

We give up,  
You except,  
They assist,

auf'geben, *irr.* to give up.  
aus'nehmen, *irr.* to except.  
bei'stehen, *irr.* to stand by, to assist.

*Imperfect.*

I presented,  
Thou rankest off,  
He took in,  
We pursued,  
You sent home,  
They came hither,

dar'reichen, to present.  
davon'laufen, *irr.* to run off.  
ein'nehmen, *irr.* to take in.  
fort'setzen, to pursue.  
heim'schicken, to send home.  
her'kommen, *irr.* to come hither.

## Imperative.

Look (*thou*) to,  
Keep (*you*) back,

zu'sehen, *irr.* to look to.  
zurück'halten, *irr.* to keep back.



## Participles.

Composing,	zusam'mensetzen, to compose.
Composed,	. . . . .

*Observations on the Compound Verbs.*

1. The compound verbs generally follow the conjugation of the simple verbs, some of which are regular, and others irregular; thus, an'reden, to address, and bere'den, to persuade, from re'den, to speak, are *regular*; auf'schreiben, to write down, and beschrei'ben, to describe, from schrei'ben, to write, are *irregular*. But schaf'fen, to create, is *irregular*, and verschaf'fen, to procure, *regular*; lösch'en, to quench, *regular*, and erlösch'en, to become extinct, *irregular*.

2. All separable particles have a distinct meaning, when taken by themselves, and are therefore easily distinguished when used in composition; as,

ab, off, or down.	dar, there.
an, on, or at.	ein, in, or into.
auf, up, or upon.	frei, free.
aus, out of.	mit, with.
bei, at, by, near.	nach, after.

*Examples.*

Ab'setzen, to depose,	from set'zen, to put, and ab, down.
An'sprechen, to address,	sprech'en, to speak, an, to.
Auf'stehen, to arise,	ste'hen, to stand, auf, up.
Aus'setzen, to expose,	set'zen, to put, aus, out.
Bei'stehen, to assist, to stand by,	ste'hen, to stand, bei, by, or near.
Ein'schließen, to inclose,	schlie'fen, to lock, ein, in.
Frei'sprechen, to acquit,	sprech'en, to speak, frei, free.
Mit'gehen, to accompany,	ge'hen, to go, mit, with.
Nach'folgen, to succeed,	fol'gen, to follow, nach, after.

*Hin*, *thither*, or *there*, and *her*, *hither*, or *here*, are oftener employed in German than in English. Both express motion towards an object; but *her*, when used in opposition to *hin*, denotes a motion towards the place where the person who speaks actually is, and *hin* a motion towards another place. Thus, *hin'kommen*, signifies to get *or* arrive there, in opposition to *her'kommen*, to come hither; as, *Ich konn'te nicht hin'kommen*, I could not get there; *Kom'men Sie her*, Come here.

3. The inseparable particles, as their name announces, are used only in composition. Of these, the following are the principal:

*Be*, (1.) in composition with verbs, denotes an expansion of the action over an object, or its influence upon it; as, *bewach'en*, to overgrow; *bestreu'en*, to bestrew; *beräu'chern*, to besmoke *or* smoke. By the use of this particle, many neuter verbs are changed into active; as, *ar'beiten*, to work, *ein Stück Holz bear'beiten*, to work on a piece of wood; *rei'ten*, to ride, *ein Pferd berei'ten*, to train a horse; *fol'gen*, to follow, *ei'nen Rath befol'gen*, to follow counsel; *sprech'en*, to speak, *et'was besprech'en*, to bespeak a thing, &c.

(2.) In composition with nouns and other parts of speech, it denotes a communication of one object or quality to another; as, *besü'geln*, to wing, *or* provide with wings, from *Flü'gel*, a wing; *bebän'dern*, to adorn with ribbons, from *Band*, ribbon; *beau'gen*, to give an eye to, from *Au'ge*, eye; *belau'ben*, to cover with leaves, from *laub*, leaf; *berei'chern*, to enrich, from *reich*, &c. In the application of this particle, there is but little difference between the two languages.

*Emp*, which occurs only in three verbs, stands instead of *inbe* (*in*, *in*, and the particle *be*), and signifies that the action, which is expressed by the verb, is of an *internal* nature; as, *fin'den*, to find, *empfin'den* (*to find inwardly*) to feel; *fang'en* (*or fa'hen*) to catch, *empfang'en*, to receive; *befehl'en*, to command, *or* commend, *empfeh'len*, to recommend.

*Ent* denotes (1.) removal from a place, and nearly corresponds to the English *from*, or *away*; as, *entflie'gen*, to fly away; *entfer'nen*, to remove; *entlas'sen*, to send away *or* dismiss.

(2.) Deprivation; as, *enteh'ren*, to dishonor; *entbin'den*, to unbind; *entfes'seln*, to unfetter; *enthaup'ten*, to behead; *enthül'len*, to unveil.

(3.) It sometimes denotes the commencement of an action; as, *entbren'nen*, to kindle; *entzün'den*, to set on fire; *entschla'fen*, to fall asleep; *entspring'en*, to spring; *entste'hen*, to arise.

*Er* denotes (1.) elevation, in the sense of the particle *auf*, up; as, *erhe'ben*, to elevate, *or* lift up; *erbau'en*, to build up; *erzie'hen*, to bring up; *erwach'sen*, to grow up.

(2.) Obtaining by means of exertion, or trouble; as, *erfecht'ten*, to obtain by fighting; *erschmei'cheln*, to wheedle; *erfisch'en*, to fish out; *erarbeiten*, to work out; *erkau'fen*, to purchase; *erfah'ren*, to learn by experience; thus, *Er erfocht' ei'nen Sieg*, He obtained a victory; *Er hat sei'ne Gunst erschmei'chelt*, He has wheedled himself into his favor, &c. So likewise in regard to mental exertions; as, *erfin'nen*, to devise; *erdenk'en*, to contrive; *erfin'den*, to invent, &c.

(3.) Taking out, bringing out, coming out, in the sense of the particle *aus*, out; *erwäh'len*, to elect, *or* choose out of; *eruchen'nen*, to nominate; *ergieß'en*, to flow out; *erlassen*, to issue; *erschöp'fen*, to exhaust; *erbrechen*, to break open, *or* break out from.

(4.) A bringing or coming into a condition, which is indicated by the words with which it is compounded; as, *erwei'tern*, to enlarge, from *weit*, wide *or* large; *erwär'men*, to warm, from *warm*, warm; *ergrau'en*, to grow grey, from *grau*, grey; *erhar'ten*, to grow hard, from *hart*, hard; *erblei'chen*, to turn *or* grow pale, from *bleich*, pale; *erblin'den*, to grow blind, from *blind*, blind; *erfäl'ten*, to grow cold, from *falt*, cold; *errö'then*, to redden *or* blush, from *roth*, red; *erarm'en*, to grow poor, from *arm*, poor; *erklä'ren*, to explain, *or* clear up, from *klar*, clear; *erfrie'ten*, to freeze, from *frie'ren*, to freeze; *erzür'nen*, to make angry, from *Zorn*, anger; *erst'erben*, to expire, from *ster'ben*, to die, &c.

*Ge* gives simply an extension or force to the primitive; as, *brau'chen*, to use, *gebrau'chen*, to employ; *denk'en*, to think, *gedenk'en*, to think of, *or* bear in mind; *frie'ren*, to freeze,

gefrie'ren, to become frozen ; dul'den, to bear, sich gedul'den, to endure, *or* have patience with ; lang'en, to reach, gelang'en, to arrive at, *or* come to, &c.

**Ver** denotes (1.) removal, answering to the particle *away* ; as, verja'gen, to drive away ; verschent'en, to give away ; verpflanzen, to transplant ; verset'zen, to transpose ; verwech'seln, to change ; verkaufen, to sell : *or away*, as implying waste, loss, or consumption ; as, vertrink'en, to drink away, to spend by drinking ; verspie'len, to game away ; verlie'ren, to lose ; verar'beiten, to work up ; verblü'hen, to fade away ; verrau'den, to evaporate ; verschmach'ten, to pine ; verblu'ten, to bleed to death ; verwel'ken, to wither away.

(2.) Putting out of order, or doing wrong, answering generally to *mis* ; as, verle'gen, to mislay ; verfüh'ren, to seduce ; verschrei'ben, to write wrong ; verdre'hen, to pervert ; versäl'schen, to adulterate ; versal'zen, to oversalt ; verges'sen, to forget ; verschic'ben, to dislocate ; vernach'lässigen, to neglect ; verrech'nen, to miscalculate ; verrüc'ken, to derange.

(3.) Putting in the way, obstructing ; as, verbie'ten, to forbid ; versa'gen, to deny ; verbit'ten, to refuse ; verweh'ren, to prohibit ; verhin'dern, to prevent ; verschlie'sen, to lock up ; verdäm'men, to dam up ; verste'geln, to seal up ; versper'ren, to bar up *or* out ; vermau'ern, to wall up, &c.

(4.) Putting or coming into a condition ; as, vera's'ten, to grow obsolete, from alt, old ; verläng'ern, to lengthen, from lang, long ; verkür'zen, to shorten, from kurz, short ; verarm'en, to grow poor, from arm, poor ; vere'deln, to ennoble, from edel, noble ; vergöt'tern, to deify, from Gott, God ; verbrü'dern, to fraternize, from Bru'der, brother, &c. Sometimes it adds force to the primitive ; as, vereh'ren, to venerate, from eh'ren, to honor ; verspot'ten, to mock, from spot'ten, to jeer ; verlach'en, to deride, from lach'en, to laugh ; verleihen, to grant, from lei'hen, to lend, &c.

**Zer** denotes a thorough separation of the parts ; as, zerbrech'en, to break in pieces ; zerschmet'tern, to dash in pieces ; zerrüt'ten, to shake in pieces ; zerstreu'en, to dissipate ; zerstö'ren, to destroy ; zerschnei'den, to cut to pieces.

The particles *wi'der*, against, and *hin'ter*, behind, though inseparable in composition, are employed as distinct words.

Verbs compounded with *mis*, which answer to the English *mis* and *dis*, commonly take the augment *ge* before the participle, and the preposition *zu* before the infinitive; as, *misbil'ligen*, to disapprove, *gemisbil'liget*, disapproved, *zu misbil'ligen*, to disapprove; *misbrau'chen*, to misuse, *gemis'braucht*, misused, *zu misbrau'chen*, to misuse.

Some few neuter and active verbs drop the participial augment *ge*; as, *misfal'len*, to displease, *es hat mir misfal'len*, it has displeased me: *mislei'ten*, to mislead, *mislei'tet*, misled; *misling'en*, to fail, *es ist mislung'en*, it has failed; *misra'then*, to miscarry, *es ist misra'then*, it has miscarried; *mis'ver'stehen*, to misunderstand, *man hat es mis'ver'standen*, it has been misunderstood.

4. Some prepositions are both separable and inseparable, as, *durch*, through; *um*, about; *ü'ber*, over; to which may be added *wie'der*, again. The first three are *separable* in the *intransitive*, and *inseparable* in the *transitive* sense of the verb. Thus, *durch'brechen*, *intrans. sep.* to break through; *er bricht durch*, he breaks through; *durch'gebrochen*, having broken through: but *et'was durchbrech'en*, *trans. insep.* to break through a thing; *er durchbricht' ei'ne Mauer*, he breaks through a wall; *durchbroch'en*, being broken through. Thus, *um'laufen*, *intrans. sep.* to go or run round; *er läuft um*, he runs round; *um'gelaufen*, having run round: but *et'was umlau'fen*, *trans. insep.* to run round a thing; *er umläuft' die Stadt*, he runs round the town; *umlau'fen*, being run round. Thus, *ü'ber'setzen*, *intrans. sep.* to leap or pass over; *er setzt ü'ber*, he leaps over; *ü'bergesetzt*, having passed over: but *ü'berset'zen*, *trans. insep.* to translate; *er ü'bersetzt' die al'ten Schrift'steller*, he translates the ancient authors; *ü'bersetzt'*, translated.

*Wie'der* in composition is *separable* in the *proper* sense, but *inseparable* in the *figurative* sense; as, *wie'derhol'en*, *prop. sep.* to fetch back; *ich hol'te es wie'der*, I fetched it back: but *wiederho'len*, *figur. insep.* to repeat; *ich wiederhol'te die Wor'te*, I repeated the words.

In the above verbs the accent is laid upon the particle when it is separable, but upon the verb when it is inseparable.

5. Verbs compounded with nouns or adverbs are mostly inseparable; but take the augment *ge* in the participle; as,

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Rath'schlagen, to consult.	ich rath'schlage.	gerath'schlaget.
Ant'worten, to answer.	ich ant'worte.	geant'wortet.

So the following;

Arg'wohnen, to suspect.	Quack'falbern, to quack.
Frohloc'ken, to exult.	Rad'brechen, to break on the wheel.
Früh'stücken, to breakfast.	Recht'fertigen, to justify.
Fuchs'schwänzen, to fawn.	Ur'theilen, to judge.
Hand'haben, to handle.	Ur'kunden, to testify.
Hei'rathen, to marry.	Weis'sagen, to prophesy.
ſich'äugeln, to ogle.	Wett'eifern, to emulate.
ſich'kosen, to caress.	Willfah'ren, to gratify.
Muth'masen, to conjecture.	

Verbs compounded with *voll*, drop the augment *ge*; as, *vollen'den*, to finish; *imp.* ich *vollen'dete*, I finished; *part.* *vollen'det*, finished: so, *vollbring'en*, to bring about; *vollzie'h'en*, to execute; *vollstrec'ken*, to accomplish; *vollfüh'ren*, to consummate.

*List of the principal Particles with which Compound Verbs are formed.*

I. The following particles are generally *inseparable* from the verbs.

after	as, af'terreden,	to backbite.
be	bedenk'en,	reflect, consider.
emp	empfang'en,	receive.
ent	entste'h'en,	arise.
er	erfin'den,	invent.
ge	gedei'h'en,	prosper.
hinter	hinterblei'ben,	remain behind.
mis	misfal'len,	displease.
ver	verzeh'ren,	consume.
verab	verab'folgen,	deliver.
vernach	vernach'lässigen,	neglect.
verun	verun'ehren,	dishonor.

voll	vollbring'en,	to complete.
ur	ur'theilen,	judge.
zer	zerstö'ren,	destroy.

2. The following are the principal particles, which in certain tenses before mentioned (page 104), are generally to be *separated* from the verbs.

ab	an	anheim'
auf	aus	bei, dabei'
davon'	dafür'	davor'
darun'ter	dawi'der	dazwisch'en
durch	ein	einher'
fort	für	gleich
heim	hin	her
herab'	herauf'	heraus'
herbei'	herdurch'	herein'
hernach'	herü'ber	herum'
herun'ter	hervor'	herzu'
hinab'	hinan'	hinauf'
hinaus'	hinü'ber	hinzu'
in'nen	mit	nach
nie'der	ob	ü'ber
überein'	un'ter	voll
vor	voran'	voraus'
vorü'ber	vorbei'	weg
wie'der	zu	zuwi'der

These particles have a meaning of themselves, independent of the verbs with which they are connected; some of their meanings may be seen in the following examples;

Ab'schreiben, to copy,	from	schrei'ben, to write, ab, from.
Aus'schreiben, to extract,		schrei'ben, to write, aus, out of, or from.
Aufbauen, to erect,		bau'en, to build, auf, up.
Nach'gehen, to go after,		ge'hen, to go, nach, after.
Mit'nehmen, to take along with,		neh'men, to take, mit, with.
Nie'derreunen, to run down,		ren'nen, to run, nie'der, down.
Her'bringen, to bring hither or here,		bring'en, to bring, her, hither.

Hervorbringen, to bring forth,	bring'en, to bring, hervor', forth.
Hin'helfen, to forward,	hel'fen, to help, hin, forth.
Hinü'berkommen, to come over,	kom'men, to come, hinü'ber, over.
Un'tersinken, to go to the bottom,	sink'en, to sink, un'ter, under.
Ü'berfließen, to overflow,	flie'sen, to flow, ü'ber, over.
Vor'kommen, to occur,	kom'men, to come, vor, before.
Voran'gehen, to go before,	ge'hen, to go, voran', before.
Vorbei'gehen, to pass by,	ge'hen, to go, vorbei', by.
Weg'nehmen, to take away,	neh'men, to take, weg, away.
Wieder'kommen, to come again,	kom'men, to come, wieder, again.
Zu'beißen, to bite eagerly,	beiß'en, to bite, zu, at.

#### § 7. AUXILIARY VERBS.

Ha'ben, to have, sein (seyn), to be, and wer'den, to become, are the three most important auxiliary verbs.

Wer'den, is used as an auxiliary with every verb; ha'ben, with all the active and most of the neuter verbs; and sein with many neuter verbs.

These auxiliary verbs are also used as such with one another, to form the supplementary tenses of each of them; and their supplementary as well as their original tenses are used with other verbs. Thus the future of ha'ben, ich wer'de ha'ben, I shall have, is a simple supplementary tense, formed by joining the present ich wer'de, to the infinitive ha'ben; and this future of ha'ben used with geliebt', loved, the past participle of lie'ben, to love, forms a compound supplementary tense, the compound future of lie'ben, ich wer'de geliebt' ha'ben, I shall have loved.

By thus joining the auxiliary verbs to others, the following supplementary tenses are formed:

1. The two supplementary past tenses, viz. the perfect and the pluperfect.
2. The two future tenses, viz. the simple and the compound.



3. The two conditional tenses, viz. the simple and the compound.

4. All the tenses of the passive voice.

The perfect is formed by joining the past participle of the verb to the present, and the pluperfect by joining the same to the imperfect, of the auxiliary *haben*, or the auxiliary *sein*; as, *ich habe geliebt*, I have loved; *ich hatte geliebt*, I had loved; and *ich bin gereist*, I have travelled; *ich war gereist*, I had travelled. (The auxiliary *sein*, in all neuter verbs, is Englished *to have*.)

The simple future is formed of the present indicative or subjunctive of *werden*, joined to the present infinitive of the verb; as, *ich werde lieben*, I shall love: and the simple conditional is formed of the imperfect subjunctive of *werden*, joined to the present infinitive of the verb; as, *ich würde lieben*, I should love. The compound future is formed of the simple future of *haben*, or of *sein*, joined to the past participle of the verb; as, *ich werde geliebt haben*, I shall have loved; *ich werde gereist sein*, I shall have travelled: and the compound conditional is formed of the simple conditional of *haben*, or of *sein*, joined to the past participle of the verb; as, *ich würde geliebt haben*, I should have loved; *ich würde gereist sein*, I should have travelled.

The different tenses of the passive are formed by joining the past participle of the verb to the original and the supplementary tenses of *werden*, which then is Englished *to be*; as, *ich werde geliebt*, I am loved; *ich wurde geliebt*, I was loved.

The following paradigms contain the original and the supplementary tenses of *haben*, *sein*, and *werden*.

*Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, Haben, to have.*

Infinitive.

Participle.

*Pres. haben*, to have.

*Pres. habend*, having.

*Perf. gehabt haben*, to have had.

*Past. gehabt*, had.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive

*Present.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich ha'be, I have.  
 du hast, thou hast.  
 er, sie, es hat, he, she, it has.

ich ha'be, I may have.  
 du ha'best, thou mayst have.  
 er, sie, es ha'be, he, she, it  
 may have.

*Plural.**Plural.*

mir ha'ben, we have.  
 ihr habt or ha'bet, you have.  
 sie ha'ben, they have.

mir ha'ben, we may have.  
 ihr ha'bet, you may have.  
 sie ha'ben, they may have.

*Inperfect.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich hat'te, I had.  
 du hat'test, thou hadst.  
 er hat'te, he had.

ich hât'te, I might have.  
 du hât'test, thou mightst have.  
 er hât'te, he might have.

*Plural.**Plural.*

mir hat'ten, we had.  
 ihr hat'tet, you had.  
 sie hat'ten, they had.

mir hât'ten, we might have.  
 ihr hât'tet, you might have.  
 sie hât'ten, they might have.

*Perfect.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich ha'be gehabt', I have had.  
 du hast gehabt', &c.

ich ha'be gehabt', I may have  
 had.  
 du ha'best gehabt', &c.

*Pluperfect.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich hat'te gehabt', I had had.  
 du hat'test gehabt', &c.

ich hât'te gehabt', I might  
 have had.  
 du hât'test gehabt', &c.

*Simple Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de ha'ben, I shall have.  
 du wirst ha'ben, thou wilt have.  
 er wird ha'ben, he will have.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de ha'ben, I shall have.  
 du wer'dest ha'ben, thou wilt have.  
 er wer'de ha'ben, he will have.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den ha'ben, we shall have.  
 ihr wer'det ha'ben, you will have.  
 sie wer'den ha'ben, they will have.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den ha'ben, we shall have.  
 ihr wer'det ha'ben, you will have.  
 sie wer'den ha'ben, they will have.

*Compound Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de gehabt' ha'ben, I shall have had.  
 du wirst gehabt' ha'ben, &c.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de gehabt' ha'ben, I shall have had.  
 du wer'dest gehabt' ha'ben, &c.

*(Conditional Tenses.)**Indicative and Subjunctive.**Simple Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de ha'ben, I should have.  
 du wü'r'dest ha'ben, thou wouldst have.  
 er wü'r'de ha'ben, he would have.

*Compound Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de gehabt' ha'ben, I should have had.  
 du wü'r'dest gehabt' ha'ben, &c.

*Plural.*

wir wü'r'den ha'ben, we should have.  
 ihr wü'r'det ha'ben, you would have.  
 sie wü'r'den ha'ben, they would have.

## Imperative.

*Singular.*

hà'be (du), have (thou).

hà'be er, let him have.

*Plural.*

hà'ben wir, let us have.

hàbt or hà'bet (ihr), have  
(you), or do (you) have.

hà'ben sie, let them have.

*Exercises on the Auxiliary Verb, hà'ben, to have.*

This verb, as well as all others, may be conjugated in four forms; that is,

*Affirmatively*, ich hà'be, I have.

*Negatively*, ich hà'be nicht, I have not.

*Interrogatively*, hà'be ich? have I?

*Negatively and interrogatively*, hà'be ich nicht? have I not?

So likewise through all the tenses, as in the following exercise.

*Pres. Ind.* Have I? Have I not? He has not. Hast thou? She has not. Have we? We have not. You have not. Have they? They have not. Have they not?

*Imp.* Had I? He had. Had she not? Had we not? Had you not? They had. Had they not?

*Perf.* Have I had? Hast thou not had? Has he not had? Have you not had? She has not had. Have they not had? We have not had? Have they had? They have not had.

*Pluperfect.* I had not had. Had I not had? Hadst thou had? She has not had. Had he not had? Had we had? They had not had. They had had. Had they not had?

*Simple Fut.* Shall I not have? Wilt thou have? I shall not have. We shall not have. Will you not have? You will not have.

*Compound Fut.* He will have had. They will not have had. Will they not have had? We shall have had. Will you not have had?

*Simple Cond.* Should I have? Thou wouldst not have. Would he not have? We should not have. Should we have? Should we not have? You would not have. Would you not have? They would not have. Would they not have?

*Compound Cond.* I should not have had. Would he not have had? We should not have had. Would you have had? They would not have had.

*Pres. Subj.* I may have. I may not have. Thou mayst not have. We may have. We may not have. They may have. They may not have.

*Imp.* Thou mightst not have. Hadst\* thou not. Had we. Had we not. Had you not. Had they not. They might not have.

*Perf.* Thou mayst not have had. We may not have had. You may have had. They may not have had.

*Plup.* I might not have had. Thou mightst have had. He might have had. He might not have had. We might not have had. They might not have had.

*Imper.* Have (thou). Let us have. Have (ye). Let them not have.

*Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb Sein, (Seyn), to be.*

Infinitive.

Participle.

*Pres.* sein, to be.

*Pres.* sei'end, being.

*Perf.* gewe'sen sein, to have  
been.

*Past.* gewe'sen, been.

---

\* The phrases beginning with the verb are not interrogative in the subjunctive mood, but have the same meaning as when preceded by *if*.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich bin, I am.

ich sei, I may be.

du bist, thou art.

du sei'est, or seist, thou mayst be.

er, sie, es ist, he, she, it is.

er sei, he may be.

*Plural.**Plural.*

wir sind, we are.

wir sei'en, or sein, we may be.

ihr seid, you are.

ihr sei'et, or seid, you may be.

sie sind, they are.

sie sei'en, or sein, they may be.

*Imperfect.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich war, I was.

ich wä're, I might be.

du warst, or wa'rest, thou wast.

du wä'rest, thou mightst be.

er war, he was.

er wä're, he might be.

*Plural.**Plural.*

wir wa'ren, we were.

wir wä'ren, we might be.

ihr wa'ret, you were.

ihr wä'ret, you might be.

sie wa'ren, they were.

sie wä'ren, they might be.

*Perfect.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich bin gewe'sen, I have been.

ich sei gewe'sen, I may have been.

du bist gewe'sen, &amp;c.

du sei'est gewe'sen, &amp;c.

*Pluperfect.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich war gewe'sen, I had been.

ich wä're gewe'sen, I might have been.

du warst gewe'sen, &amp;c.

du wä'rest gewe'sen, &amp;c.

*Simple Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de sein, I shall be.  
 du wirst sein, thou wilt be.  
 er wird sein, he will be.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de sein, I shall be.  
 du wer'dest sein, thou wilt be.  
 er wer'de sein, he will be.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den sein, we shall be.  
 ihr wer'det sein, you will be.  
 sie wer'den sein, they will be.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den sein, we shall be.  
 ihr wer'det sein, you will be.  
 sie wer'den sein, they will be.

*Compound Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de gewe'sen sein, I shall  
 have been.  
 du wirst gewe'sen sein, &c.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de gewe'sen sein, I shall  
 have been.  
 du wer'dest gewe'sen sein, &c.

*(Conditional Tenses.)*

## Indicative and Subjunctive.

*Simple Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de sein, I should be.  
 du wü'r'dest sein, &c.

*Compound Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de gewe'sen sein, I  
 should have been.  
 du wü'r'dest gewe'sen sein, &c.

## Imperative.

*Singular.*

sei (du), be (thou).  
 sei er, let him be.

*Plural.*

sei'en, or sein wir, let us be.  
 seid (ihr), be (you), or do  
 (you) be.  
 sein or sei'en sie, let them be.

*Exercises on the Auxiliary Verb, Sein, to be.*

*Præs. Ind.* Art thou? Is he not? We are not. Are they not? They are not. Are you not? You are. Are we not?

*Imp.* Was I? Thou wast not. It was not. She was. Were we? Were we not? Were you not? You were not. Were they?

*Perf.* I have been. Have I been? I have not been. Have I not been? Hast thou been? She has been. Has she not been? It has been. He has not been. Have we been? Have you not been? They have been. They have not been. Have they not been?

*Plup.* Had I been? I had not been. Thou hast been. She had not been. Had he not been? Had he been? You had not been. They had not been. Had they been? Had they not been? We had not been. Had we not been?

*Simple Fut.* I shall not be. Wilt thou not be? He will be. Will she not be? It will not be. You will be. Will you not be? Shall we be? We shall not be. They will not be. Will they not be?

*Comp. Fut.* Shall I not have been? Wilt thou not have been. He will have been. Will she not have been? It will not have been. We shall have been. Shall we not have been? You will not have been. Will they not have been?

*Simple Cond.* Should I be? Wouldst thou not be? It would be. Would she not be? He would not be. We should not be. Would you not be? You would not be. Would they not be? They would not be.

*Comp. Cond.* I should not have been. Would it not have been? Should we not have been? We should not have been. Would you not have been? They would not have been.

*Pres. Subj.* I may not be. Thou mayst be. It may not be. He may not be. We may be. You may not be. They may not be.



*Imp.* I might not be. She might be. It might not be. We might not be. You might be. They might not be.

*Perf.* I may not have been. Thou mayst have been. He may have been. It may have been. We may not have been. You may have been. They may not have been.

*Plup.* I might not have been. Thou mightst have been. She might not have been. We might have been. You might have been. They might not have been.

*Simple Fut.* I shall not be. Thou wilt be. He will not be. It will be. We shall not be. You will not be. They will not be.

*Comp. Fut.* I shall not have been. She will have been. We shall not have been. You will not have been. They will not have been.

*Imper.* Be (thou). Let him be. Let him not be. Let us not be. Be, or do (you) be. Do (you) not be. Let them not be.

*Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, Wer'den, to become.*

Infinitive.

Participle.

*Pres.* wer'den, to become.

*Pres.* wer'dend, becoming.

*Perf.* gewor'den sein, to have become.

*Past.* gewor'den, become.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Present.*

*Singular.*

*Singular.*

ich wer'de, I become.

ich wer'de, I may become.

du wir'st, thou becomest.

du wer'dest, thou mayst become.

er, sie, es wird, he, she, it becomes.

er, sie, es wer'de, he, she, it may become.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den, we become.  
ihr wer'det, you become.  
sie wer'den, they become.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den, we may become.  
ihr wer'det, you may become.  
sie wer'den, they may become.

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

ich wur'de, or ward, I became.  
du wur'dest, or wardst, thou  
becamest.  
er wur'de, or ward, he be-  
came.

*Singular.*

ich wûr'de, I might become.  
du wûr'dest, thou mightst be-  
come.  
er wûr'de, he might become.

*Plural.*

wir wur'den, we became.  
ihr wur'det, you became.  
sie wur'den, they became.

*Plural.*

wir wûr'den, we might be-  
come.  
ihr wûr'det, you might be-  
come.  
sie wûr'den, they might be-  
come.

*Perfect.**Singular.*

ich bin gewor'den, I have be-  
come.  
du bist gewor'den, &c.

*Singular.*

ich sei gewor'den, I may have  
become.  
du seist gewor'den, &c.

*Pluperfect.**Singular.*

ich war gewor'den, I had be-  
come.  
du wa'rest gewor'den, &c.

*Singular.*

ich wâ're gewor'den, I might  
have become.  
du wâ'rest gewor'den, &c.

*First Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de wer'den, I shall be-  
come.  
du wirst wer'den, &c.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de wer'den, I shall be-  
come.  
du wer'dest wer'den, &c.

*Second Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de gewor'den sein, I  
shall have become.  
du wirst gewor'den sein, &c.

*Singular.*

ich wer'de gewor'den sein, I  
shall have become.  
du wer'dest gewor'den sein, &c.

*(Conditional Tenses.)*

## Indicative and Subjunctive.

*Simple Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de wer'den, I should  
become.  
du wü'r'dest wer'den, &c.

*Compound Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de gewor'den sein, I  
should have become.  
du wü'r'dest gewor'den sein,  
&c.

## Imperative.

*Singular.*

wer'de (du), become (thou).  
wer'de er, let him become.

*Plural.*

wer'den wir, let us become.  
wer'det (ihr), become (you) or  
do (you) become.  
wer'den sie, let them become.

*Exercises on the Auxiliary Verb, Wer'den, to become.*

*Pres. Ind.* Does he become? Does she not become?  
Thou dost not become. Do we become? Do you not be-  
come? They do not become.

*Imp.* I did not become. Did I not become? Did we be-  
come? She became. She did not become. Did we not  
become? Did you not become? They did not become.

*Perf.* I have become. Have I not become? Hast thou  
not become? She has not become. Have we not become?  
Have you not become? Have they become?

*Plup.* I had become. Had I become? Had I not become? I had not become. Hadst thou become? He had not become. Had she not become? Had we become? Had you not become? They had become. They had not become. Had they become? Had they not become?

*Simple Fut.* Shall I become? Shall we become? Wilt thou become? Wilt thou not become? He will become. She will not become. Will you become? They will not become.

*Comp. Fut.* I shall have become. Will he have become? Shall we have become? You will not have become. Will they have become? They will not have become. Will they not have become?

*Simple Cond.* Should I become? Wouldst thou become? It would become. Would he not become? We should not become. Would you become? They would not become.

*Comp. Cond.* I should have become. Would it have become? Should we have become? We should not have become. Would you not have become? You would have become. Would they have become?

*Pres. Subj.* I may not become. She may not become. Thou mayst become. He may not become. We may not become. They may become.

*Imp.* I might become. Thou mightst become. She might not become. We might not become. You might become. They might not become.

*Perf.* I may have become. He may not have become. You may have become. They may not have become.

*Plup.* Thou mightst have become. She might not have become. It might not have become. You might have become. They might not have become.

*Imper.* Become thou. Become (you) not. Let them become. Let them not become.

A. *Supplementary Tenses of Active and Neuter Verbs.*1. Supplementary Tenses of a Verb conjugated with *Ha'ben**Infn.* *lie'ben*, to love.*Pres.* *ich lie'be.*      *Imp.* *ich lieb'te.*      *Imperat.* *lie'be du.**Pres. Part.* *lie'bend.*      *Past Part.* *geliebt'.*

Infinitive.

*Perfect.**geliebt' ha'ben*, to have loved.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Perfect.*

<i>ich ha'be geliebt'</i> , I have loved.	<i>ich ha'be geliebt'</i> , I have loved.
<i>du hast geliebt'</i> , &c.	<i>du ha'best geliebt'</i> , &c.

*Pluperfect.*

<i>ich hat'te geliebt'</i> , I had loved.	<i>ich hât'te geliebt'</i> , I had loved.
<i>du hat'test geliebt'</i> , &c.	<i>du hât'test geliebt'</i> , &c.

*Simple Future.*

<i>ich wer'de lie'ben</i> , I shall love.	<i>ich wer'de lie'ben</i> , I shall love.
<i>du wirst lie'ben</i> , &c.	<i>du wer'dest lie'ben</i> , &c.

*Compound Future.*

<i>ich wer'de geliebt' ha'ben</i> , I shall have loved.	<i>ich wer'de geliebt' ha'ben</i> , I shall have loved.
<i>du wirst geliebt' ha'ben</i> , &c.	<i>du wer'dest geliebt' ha'ben</i> , &c.

*Simple Conditional.*

<i>ich wûr'de lie'ben</i> , I should love.
<i>du wûr'dest lie'ben</i> , &c.

*Compound Conditional.*

ich wü'r'de geliebt' ha'ben, I should have loved.  
 du wü'r'dest geliebt' ha'ben, &c.

*Exercises on Active and Neuter Verbs conjugated with Ha'ben.*

I have hoped,	hof'fen, to hope.
Have I been zealous ?	ei'fern, to be zealous.
I have not seen,	se'hen, <i>irr.</i> to see.
Have I not trembled ?	zit'tern, to tremble.
Thou hast quaked,	be'ben, to quake.
Thou hast not praised,	lo'ben, to praise.
Hast thou not finished ?	en'den, to finish.
It has thundered,	don'nern, to thunder.
Has he not mentioned ?	erwäh'nen, to mention.
Has she inquired ?	for'schen, to inquire.
Has she not been penurious ?	far'gen, to be penurious.
We have adorned,	schmüc'ken, to adorn.
Have we not slept ?	schla'fen, <i>irr.</i> to sleep.
Have you not suffered ?	lei'den, <i>irr.</i> to suffer.
You have not lived,	le'ben, to live.
They have not blossomed,	blü'hen, to blossom.
Had I not starved ?	dar'ben, to starve.
Hast thou pined ?	schmach'ten, to pine.
Thou hast not found,	fin'den, <i>irr.</i> to find.
It had been worth,	tau'gen, to be worth.
Had she known,	wis'sen, <i>mix.</i> to know.
He had not stood,	ste'hen, <i>irr.</i> to stand.
Had he not sat ?	sit'zen, <i>irr.</i> to sit.
It had not frozen,	fric'en, <i>irr.</i> to freeze.
We had not dreamed,	träu'men, to dream.
They had been called,	hei'sen, <i>irr.</i> to be called.
They had not grown old,	al'tern, to grow old.
Had they demanded ?	fo'dern, to demand.

2. Supplementary Tenses of a Verb conjugated with *Sein*.*Infn.* *Rei'sen*, to travel.*Pres.* ich rei'se.      *Imp.* ich rei'ste.      *Imperat.* rei'se du.*Pres. Part.* rei'send.      *Past Part.* gereist'.

Infinitive.

*Perfect.*

gereist' sein, to have travelled.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Perfect.*ich bin gereist', I have travel-      ich sei gereist', I have travel-  
led.      led.

du bist gereist', &amp;c.      du seiest gereist', &amp;c.

*Pluperfect.*ich war gereist', I had travel-      ich wä're gereist', I had travel-  
led.      led.

du wä'rest gereist', &amp;c.      du wä'rest gereist', &amp;c.

*Simple Future.*

ich wer'de rei'sen, I shall travel.      ich wer'de rei'sen, I shall travel.

du wirst rei'sen, &amp;c.      du wer'dest rei'sen, &amp;c.

*Compound Future.*ich wer'de gereist' sein, I shall      ich wer'de gereist' sein, I shall  
have travelled.      have travelled.

du wirst gereist' sein, &amp;c.      du wer'dest gereist' sein, &amp;c.

*Simple Conditional.*

ich wü'r'de rei'sen, I should travel.  
 du wü'r'dest rei'sen, &c.

*Compound Conditional.*

ich wü'r'de gereist' sein, I should have travelled.  
 du wü'r'dest gereist' sein, &c.

*Exercises on the Neuter Verbs conjugated with Sein.*

I have stayed,	blei'ben, <i>irr.</i> to stay.
Have I not stayed?	. . . . .
I have not stayed,	. . . . .
Hast thou run?	ren'nen, <i>mix.</i> to run.
Thou hast not climbed,	klim'men, <i>irr.</i> to climb.
Thou hast travelled,	rei'sen, to travel.
He has stumbled,	stol'pern, to stumble.
Has he sailed?	se'geln, to sail.
He is not come,	kom'men, <i>irr.</i> to come.
Will they not have gone?	ge'hen, <i>irr.</i> to go.
Has she followed?	fol'gen, to follow.
It will have burst,	ber'sten, <i>irr.</i> to burst.
We have proceeded,	fort'fahren, <i>irr.</i> to proceed.
Have we run?	lau'fen, <i>irr.</i> to run.
We have not wandered,	wan'dern, to wander.
Have we not slidden?	glei'ten, <i>irr.</i> to slide.
You have swum,	schwim'men, <i>irr.</i> to swim.
Have you swum?	. . . . .
You have not crept,	fric'hen, <i>irr.</i> to creep.
Have you not embarked?	ein'schiffen, to embark.
They have ridden,	rei'ten, <i>irr.</i> to ride on horse- back.
Have they ridden?	. . . . .
They have not ridden,	. . . . .
Have they not ridden?	. . . . .
I had walked,	ge'hen, <i>irr.</i> to walk.
Had I drawn near?	nä'her rüc'ken, to draw near.
We should not have fled,	flic'hen, <i>irr.</i> to flee.
Would you have fallen?	fal'len, <i>irr.</i> to fall.
Thou hadst slipped,	schlüp'fen, to slip.



Wouldst thou not have sunk?	sink'en, <i>irr.</i> to sink.
Thou hadst not penetrated,	dring'en, <i>irr.</i> to penetrate.
He had departed,	schei'den, <i>irr.</i> to depart.
Had he not departed?	.
It would have darted,	schie'sen, <i>irr.</i> to dart.
Had it not slipped?	schlüp'fen, to slip.
We had not pressed,	dring'en, <i>irr.</i> to press.
You had not recovered,	gene'sen, <i>irr.</i> to recover.
They had not slunk,	schlei'chen, <i>irr.</i> to slink.

3. List of the Neuter Verbs conjugated with *haben*.*Regular Verbs.*

äch'zen, to groan.	gäh'nen, to yawn.
al'tern, to grow old.	gau'keln, to juggle.
ang'eln, to angle.	gei'zen, to covet.
ank'ern, to anchor.	handeln, to trade.
ath'men, to breathe.	har'ren, to wait for.
sich bal'gen, to fight.	handthie'ren, to trade, to bus-
bet'en, to pray.	tle.
bet'teln, to beg alms.	hausi'ren, to hawk about.
blin'zen, to blink.	her'schen, to govern.
blü'hen, to bloom.	hink'en, to limp.
brum'men, to grumble.	hor'chen, to listen.
bür'gen, to bail.	hung'ern, to hunger.
bü'sen, to suffer for.	hüp'fen, to leap.
dau'ern, to last, to endure.	hu'sten, to cough.
don'nern, to thunder.	ir'ren, to err.
dür'sten, to be thirsty, <i>or</i> to	jauch'zen, to shout.
thirst.	kal'ben, to calve.
ei'fern, to be zealous.	kämp'fen, to combat.
ei'len, to hasten.	kar'gen, to be penurious.
ei'tern, to suppurate.	kei'men, to shoot out, <i>or</i> bud.
entsa'gen, to renounce.	kir'ren, to coo, <i>or</i> creak.
er'ben, to inherit.	klaf'fen, to cleave.
faul'en, to putrefy.	klä'gen, to complain.
feh'len, to fail.	klat'schen, to clap, to applaud.
flcc'ken, to stain.	kle'ben, to cleave, <i>or</i> stick.
flü'chen, to curse.	klü'geln, to refine.
for'schen, to inquire.	knac'ken, to crack.
funk'eln, to glimmer.	knar'ren, to creak.

- knic'fern, to haggle, to act  
 niggardly.  
 kni'en, to kneel.  
 kol'lern, to be unruly, to roll.  
 krâ'hen, to crow.  
 kra'men, to trade.  
 frank'en, to be ill.  
 kreb'sen, to catch crabs.  
 krie'gen, to wage war.  
 lach'en, to laugh.  
 lan'den, to land.  
 lâ'r'men, to make a noise.  
 lau'ern, to watch.  
 lau'ten, to sound.  
 le'ben, to live.  
 mang'eln, to want.  
 mei'nen, to mean.  
 mur'meln, to grumble.  
 or'geln, to play the hand-organ.  
 ra'sen, to be mad.  
 ras'ten, to rest.  
 rau'chen, to smoke.  
 räu'men, to remove.  
 rau'schen, to rush.  
 räu'spern, to clear the throat.  
 rech'nen, to reckon.  
 rech'ten, to right, to go to law.  
 re'den, to speak.  
 rei'fen, to ripen.  
 rei'men, to rhyme.  
 ru'dern, to row.  
 säu'men, to tarry.  
 sau'sen, to whiz.  
 scha'den, to hurt.  
 sich schâ'men, to be ashamed.  
 schan'dern, to shiver.  
 scher'zen, to joke.  
 schim'meln, to mould.  
 schluc'ken, to swallow.  
 schmach'ten, to languish.  
 schmat'zen, to smack.  
 schmâh'len, to scold.  
 schmau'sen, to feast.  
 schmut'zen, to soil, to dirty.  
 schnâ'beln, to bill.  
 schnar'chen, to snore.  
 schnat'tern, to gabble.  
 schwâr'men, to swarm.  
 schwin'deln, to grow giddy.  
 schwit'zen, to sweat.  
 se'geln, to sail.  
 seuf'zen, to sigh.  
 sor'gen, to care.  
 spie'len, to play.  
 steu'ern, to steer a ship.  
 studi'ren, to study.  
 stür'men, to storm.  
 stut'zen, to butt at.  
 su'deln, to soil.  
 sum'men, to hum.  
 sün'digen, to sin.  
 tap'pen, to grope.  
 thro'nen, to be enthroned.  
 to'ben, to rage.  
 tö'nen, to sound.  
 trach'ten, to endeavour.  
 trau'ern, to mourn.  
 triumph'i'ren, to triumph.  
 trö'deln, to deal in frippery.  
 wach'en, to wake, or to be  
 awake.  
 wei'nen, to cry.  
 willfah'ren, to comply.  
 za'gen, to despair, to despond.  
 zank'en, to quarrel.  
 zie'len, to aim.  
 zot'teln, to stagger.  
 zür'nen, to be angry.

*Irregular Verbs.*

sich befeien, to be studious.	schmauchen, to snort.
fechten, to fight.	schreien, to cry.
gefahlen, to please.	schweigen, to be silent.
gleichchen, to resemble.	schwimmen, to swim.
feien, to scold.	schwinden, to be reduced, to dwindle away.
klingen, to sound.	schwören, to swear.
leiden, to suffer.	sinnen, to think, to meditate.
reiten, to ride.	sitzen, to sit.
ringen, to wrestle.	streiten, to combat.
sauhen, to drink hard.	verbrechen, to commit a crime.
scheinen, to appear.	
schlafen, to sleep.	

4. List of the Neuter Verbs conjugated with *Sein*.*Regular Verbs.*

ausarten, to degenerate.	stranden, to strand.
begegnen, to meet.	strateln, to trip.
beharren, to continue.	starten, to start.
erblinden, to grow blind.	traben, to trot.
ergrimmen, to grow angry.	veralten, to grow old.
erkalten, to grow cold.	verarmen, to grow poor.
erstarren, to be chilled.	verkrummen, to grow crooked.
erstarrenen, to be astonished.	verlahmen, to grow lame.
flattern, to flit, to flutter.	versauern, to grow sour, to sour.
gelingen, to get, to attain.	verstummen, to grow dumb.
gewohnen, to be accustomed.	verwesfen, to decay.
klettern, to climb.	verwildern, to grow wild.
reisen, to travel.	verzagen, to despond.
rennen, <i>mix.</i> to run.	wandeln, to walk.
segeln, to sail.	wandern, to wander.
spazieren, to take a walk.	
stolpern, to stumble.	

*Irregular Verbs.*

abfallen, to fall down.	erfrieren, to freeze to death.
bersten, to burst.	erschallen, to resound.
bleiben, to remain.	erschrecken, to be terrified.

fah'ren, to ride in a vehicle.	schrei'ten, to stride.
fal'len, to fall.	schwel'len, to swell.
flie'gen, to fly.	schwim'men, to swim.
flie'hen, to flee.	schwin'den, to shrink, to dwindle.
flie'sen, to flow.	sit'zen, to sit.
frie'ren, to freeze.	spring'en, to jump.
gedei'hen, to prosper.	ste'hen, to stand.
ge'hen, to go.	stei'gen, to mount.
gene'sen, to recover.	ster'ben, to die.
glei'ten, to slide, to slip.	verblei'chen, to grow pale.
klim'men, to climb.	verlösch'en, to become extinguished.
kom'men, to come.	verschwin'den, to disappear.
frie'chen, to creep.	wach'sen, to grow.
lau'fen, to run.	wei'chen, to yield.
rei'ten, to ride on horseback.	wer'den, to become.
riu'nen, to leak, to run.	
'schlei'chen, to sneak.	

*Obs.* Those verbs which occur in both lists are sometimes conjugated with *haben*, and sometimes with *sein*. (See under the next head.)

### 5. Of Neuter Verbs conjugated with either *haben* or *sein*, according to their signification.

1. Some take *haben*, to denote the completion of an action or a state, and *sein* to denote the condition of a thing; as,

Das Feu'er hat aus'gebrannt, the fire has burnt out.

Das Kamin' ist aus'gebrannt, the chimney is burnt out.

Die Koh'len ha'ben aus'gedampft, the coals have done smoking.

Die Feuch'tigkeit ist aus'gedampft, the damp is evaporated.

Die Er'de ist gefro'ren, the earth is frozen.

Wir ha'ben gefro'ren, we have been frozen.

Es hat gefro'ren, it has frozen.

2. Verbs expressive of motion take *sein*, when the place, or the manner of the motion, is referred to; but take *haben*, when the simple action is designated, or whenever they are used as reflective or reciprocal verbs; as,

Ich bin in die Stadt gerit'ten, I have ridden *or* rode into the city.

Bist du gegangen'en o'der gerit'ten? did you walk *or* ride?

Ich bin langsam gerit'ten, I have ridden *or* rode slowly.

Ich bin den ganzen Tag gerit'ten, I have been riding the whole day.

Ich ha'be das Pferd gerit'ten, I have ridden the horse.

Wir sind in die Stadt geei'let, we have hastened into the city.

Wir ha'ben mit der Sach'e geei'let, we have hastened with the affair.

Der Vo'gel ist in das Feld geflat'tert, the bird has fluttered into the field.

Er hat lang'e geflat'tert, it has been long fluttering.

Die Rei'ter sind schon auf'geseßen, the horsemen are already seated.

Ich ha'be die ganze Nacht auf'geseßen, I have sat up the whole night.

Ich bin in das Haus gegangen'en, I have gone into the house.

Ich ha'be mich mü'de gegangen'en, I have tired myself with walking.

3. Some verbs expressive of motion require *sein* when taken in the proper sense, and *haben* in the figurative sense; as,

Wir sind gelaufen, we have run.

Das Faß hat gelaufen, the cask has leaked.

Die Thrä'nen sind geflossen, the tears have flowed.

Die Röh're hat geflossen, the pipe has leaked.

Er ist ihm gefolgt', he has followed him.

Er hat mei'nen Leh'ren gefolgt', he has followed my precepts.

Der Feind ist in die Stadt gedrungen'en, the enemy has penetrated into the city.

Er hat in mich gedrungen'en, he has urged me.

Wir sind fort'gefahren, we have left *or* gone on in a vehicle.

Wir ha'ben fort'gefahren zu ar'beiten, we have continued to labor.

B. *Supplementary Tenses of Reflective Verbs.*

Sich lie'ben, to love one's self. (See page 98.)

Infinitive.

*Perfect.*

sich geliebt' ha'ben, to have loved one's self.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Perfect.*

ich ha'be mich geliebt', I have loved myself.	ich ha'be mich geliebt', I have loved myself.
du hast dich geliebt', &c.	du ha'best dich geliebt', &c.

*Pluperfect.*

ich hat'te mich geliebt', I had loved myself.	ich hã't'te mich geliebt', I had loved myself.
du hat'test dich geliebt', &c.	du hã't'test dich geliebt', &c.

*Simple Future.*

ich wer'de mich lie'ben, I shall love myself.	ich wer'de mich lie'ben, I shall love myself.
du wirst dich lie'ben, &c.	du wer'dest dich lie'ben, &c.

*Compound Future.*

ich wer'de mich geliebt' ha'ben, I shall have loved myself.	ich wer'de mich geliebt' ha'ben, I shall have loved myself.
du wirst dich geliebt' ha'ben, &c.	du wer'dest dich geliebt' ha'ben, &c.

*Simple Conditional.*

ich wü'r'de mich lie'ben, I should love myself.  
 du wü'r'dest dich lie'ben, &c.

*Compound Conditional.*

ich wü'r'de mich geliebt' ha'ben, I should have loved myself.  
 du wü'r'dest dich geliebt' ha'ben, &c.

*C. Supplementary Tenses of Impersonal Verbs.*

The supplementary tenses of impersonal verbs are formed exactly like those of complete (active or reflective) verbs; as,

*Reg'nen, to rain. (See page 101.)*

*Indicative.* PERF. es hat gereg'net; PLUPERF. es hat'te gereg'net; SIMP. FUT. es wird reg'nen; COMP. FUT. es wird gereg'net ha'ben.

*Subjunctive.* PERF. es ha'be gereg'net; PLUPERF. es hat'te gereg'net; SIMP. FUT. es wer'de reg'nen; COMP. FUT. es wer'de gereg'net ha'ben.

SIMP. COND. es wü'r'de reg'nen; COMP. COND. es wü'r'de gereg'net ha'ben.

*Är'gern, to be vexed. (See page 102.)*

*Indicative.* PERF. es hat mich geär'gert; PLUPERF. es hat'te mich geär'gert; SIMP. FUT. es wird mich är'gern; COMP. FUT. es wird mich geär'gert ha'ben.

*Subjunctive.* PERF. es ha'be mich geär'gert; PLUPERF. es hat'te mich geär'gert; SIMP. FUT. es wer'de mich är'gern; COMP. FUT. es wer'de mich geär'gert ha'ben.

SIMP. COND. es wü'r'de mich är'gern; COMP. COND. es wü'r'de mich geär'gert ha'ben.

Sich verste'hen, to be understood. (See page 103.)

*Indicative.* PERF. es hat sich verstan'den; PLUPERF. es hat'te sich verstan'den; SIMP. FUT. es wird sich verste'hen; COMP. FUT. es wird sich verstan'den ha'ben.

*Subjunctive.* PERF. es ha'be sich verstan'den; PLUP. es hat'te sich verstan'den; SIMP. FUT. es wer'de sich verste'hen; COMP. FUT. es wer'de sich verstan'den ha'ben.

SIMP. COND. es wu'r'de sich verste'hen; COMP. COND. es wu'r'de sich verstan'den ha'ben.

#### D. Supplementary Tenses of Compound Verbs.

The particle, with which the simple verb is compounded, is never separated from it in any of the supplementary tenses.\* Accordingly there is no difference between separable and inseparable compound verbs, with respect to the supplementary tenses; they are formed exactly like those of simple verbs. Examples :

Aufhalten, to detain. (See page 105.)

*Infinitive.* PERF. aufgehalten ha'ben.

*Indicative.* PERF. ich ha'be aufgehalten; PLUPERF. ich hat'te aufgehalten; SIMP. FUT. ich wer'de aufhalten; COMP. FUT. ich wer'de aufgehalten ha'ben.

*Subjunctive.* PERF. ich ha'be aufgehalten; PLUPERF. ich hat'te aufgehalten; SIMP. FUT. ich wer'de aufhalten; COMP. FUT. ich wer'de aufgehalten ha'ben.

SIMP. COND. ich wu'r'de aufhalten; COMP. COND. ich wu'r'de aufgehalten ha'ben.

Behal'ten, to retain.

*Infinitive.* PERF. behal'ten ha'ben.

*Indicative.* PERF. ich ha'be behal'ten; PLUPERF. ich hat'te

---

\* The reason is obvious; since all the supplementary tenses are formed by joining the auxiliary verb either to the infinitive mood or to the past participle; in neither of which does such a separation of the simple verb from the preposition take place.



behal'ten; SIMP. FUT. ich wer'de behal'ten; COMP. FUT. ich wer'de behal'ten ha'ben.

*Subjunctive.* PERF. ich ha'be behal'ten; PLUPERF. ich hât'te behal'ten; SIMP. FUT. ich wer'de behal'ten; COMP. FUT. ich wer'de behal'ten ha'ben.

SIMP. COND. ich wûr'de behal'ten; COMP. COND. ich wûr'de behal'ten ha'ben.

### § 8. PASSIVE VERBS.

The passive voice of active verbs is formed by joining the past participle of the verb with the different moods and tenses of the auxiliary wer'den; with only this difference, that the first syllable, ge, of the past participle gewor'den, is dropt in all its combinations with the verb. Thus we say, ich bin geliebt' wer'den, I have been loved, (instead of ich bin geliebt geworden.)

*Conjugation of the Passive Verb, Geliebt' wer'den, to be loved.*

Infinitive.

Participle.

*Pres.* geliebt' wer'den, to be loved.

geliebt', loved

*Perf.* geliebt' wor'den sein, to have been loved.

Indicative.

*Present.*

*Singular.*

ich wer'de geliebt', I am loved.

du wirst geliebt', thou art loved.

er, sie, or es wird geliebt', he, she, or it is loved.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den geliebt', we are loved.

ihr wer'det geliebt', you are loved.

sie wer'den geliebt', they are loved.

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

ich wur'de or ward geliebt', I was loved.  
 du wur'dest or wardst geliebt', thou wast loved.  
 er wur'de or ward geliebt', he was loved.

*Plural.*

wir wur'den geliebt', we were loved.  
 ihr wur'det geliebt', you were loved.  
 sie wur'den geliebt', they were loved.

*Perfect.**Singular.*

ich bin geliebt' wor'den, I have been loved.  
 du bist geliebt' wor'den, thou hast been loved.  
 er ist geliebt' wor'den, he has been loved.

*Plural.*

wir sind geliebt' wor'den, we have been loved.  
 ihr seid geliebt' wor'den, you have been loved. —  
 sie sind geliebt' wor'den, they have been loved.

*Pluperfect.**Singular.*

ich war geliebt' wor'den, I had been loved  
 du warst geliebt' wor'den, thou hadst been loved.  
 er war geliebt' wor'den, he had been loved.

*Plural.*

wir wa'ren geliebt' wor'den, we had been loved.  
 ihr wa'ret geliebt' wor'den, you had been loved.  
 sie wa'ren geliebt' wor'den, they had been loved.

*Simple Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de geliebt' wer'den, I shall be loved.  
 du wirst geliebt' wer'den, thou wilt be loved.  
 er wird geliebt' wer'den, he will be loved.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den geliebt' wer'den, we shall be loved.  
 ihr wer'det geliebt' wer'den, you will be loved.  
 sie wer'den geliebt' wer'den, they will be loved.

*Compound Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de geliebt' wor'den sein, I shall have been loved.  
 du wirst geliebt' wor'den sein, thou wilt have been loved.  
 er wird geliebt' wor'den sein, he will have been loved.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den geliebt' wor'den sein, we shall have been loved.  
 ihr wer'det geliebt' wor'den sein, you will have been loved.  
 sie wer'den geliebt' wor'den sein, they will have been loved.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.**Singular.*

ich wer'de geliebt', I may be loved.  
 du wer'dest geliebt', thou mayst be loved.  
 er wer'de geliebt', he may be loved.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den geliebt', we may be loved.  
 ihr wer'det geliebt', you may be loved.  
 sie wer'den geliebt', they may be loved.

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

ich wûr'de geliebt', I might be loved.  
 du wûr'dest geliebt', thou mightst be loved.  
 er wûr'de geliebt', he might be loved.

*Plural.*

wir wûr'den geliebt', we might be loved.  
 ihr wûr'det geliebt', you might be loved.  
 sie wûr'den geliebt', they might be loved.

*Perfect.**Singular.*

ich sei geliebt' wor'den, I may have been loved.  
 du seist geliebt' wor'den, thou mayst have been loved.  
 er sei geliebt' wor'den, he may have been loved.

*Plural.*

wir sei'en geliebt' wor'den, we may have been loved.  
 ihr sei'et geliebt' wor'den, you may have been loved.  
 sie sei'en geliebt' wor'den, they may have been loved.

*Pluperfect.**Singular.*

ich wâ're geliebt' wor'den, I might have been loved.  
 du wâ'rest geliebt' wor'den, thou mightst have been loved.  
 er wâ're geliebt' wor'den, he might have been loved.

*Plural.*

wir wâ'ren geliebt' wor'den, we might have been loved.  
 ihr wâ'ret geliebt' wor'den, you might have been loved.  
 sie wâ'ren geliebt' wor'den, they might have been loved.

*Simple Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de geliebt' wer'den, I shall be loved.  
 du wer'dest geliebt' wer'den, thou wilt be loved.  
 er wer'de geliebt' wer'den, he will be loved.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den geliebt' wer'den, we shall be loved.  
 ihr wer'det geliebt' wer'den, you will be loved.  
 sie wer'den geliebt' wer'den, they will be loved.

*Compound Future.**Singular.*

ich wer'de geliebt' wor'den sein, I shall have been loved.  
 du wer'dest geliebt' wor'den sein, thou wilt have been loved.  
 er wer'de geliebt' wor'den sein, he will have been loved.

*Plural.*

wir wer'den geliebt' wor'den sein, we shall have been loved.  
 ihr wer'det geliebt' wor'den sein, you will have been loved.  
 sie wer'den geliebt' wor'den sein, they will have been loved.

*Simple Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wär'de geliebt' wer'den, I should be loved.  
 du wär'dest geliebt' wer'den, thou wouldst be loved.  
 er wär'de geliebt' wer'den, he would be loved.

*Plural.*

wir wär'den geliebt' wer'den, we should be loved.  
 ihr wär'det geliebt' wer'den, you would be loved.  
 sie wär'den geliebt' wer'den, they would be loved.

*Compound Conditional.**Singular.*

ich wü'r'de geliebt' wor'den sein, I should have been loved.  
 du wü'r'dest geliebt' wor'den sein, thou wouldst have been loved.  
 er wü'r'de geliebt' wor'den sein, he would have been loved.

*Plural.*

wir wü'r'den geliebt' wor'den sein, we should have been loved.  
 ihr wü'r'det geliebt' wor'den sein, you would have been loved.  
 sie wü'r'den geliebt' wor'den sein, they would have been loved.

## Imperative.

*Singular.*

w'er'de (du) geliebt', be (thou) loved.  
 w'er'de er geliebt', let him be loved.

*Plural.*

w'er'den wir geliebt', let us be loved.  
 w'er'det (ihr) geliebt', be (ye or you) loved.  
 w'er'den sie geliebt', let them be loved.

*Observations.* I. The past participle of the verb is preserved throughout the passive voice, whether that participle be regularly or irregularly formed. There is, accordingly, no difference between regular and irregular verbs in regard to the formation and inflection of their passive voice. Thus the passive of the irregular verb *se'hen*, to see, is formed in the same manner as that of the regular verb *lie'ben*, to love, by joining the past participle *gese'hen*, seen, to the auxiliary verb *w'er'den*; as, *gese'hen w'er'den*, to be seen; *ich w'er'de gese'hen*, I am seen; *ich bin gese'hen wor'den*, I have been seen, &c.

II. The verb *sein*, to be, with the past participle, must not be confounded with the passive voice. In the former case the past participle is used as an adjective, expressing the actual condition of a thing, while the passive voice signifies a state of

being acted upon. Ex. Das Haus ist gebaut', the house is built; das Haus wird gebaut', the house is building; das Essen war aufgetragen, the dinner was served up; das Essen wurde aufgetragen, the dinner was serving up (*or* being served up).

*Exercises on the Passive Verbs (regular, irregular, and mixed.)*

Indicative.

*Present.*

Am I not praised ?	lo'ben, to praise.
Is it not lost ?	verlie'ren, <i>irr.</i> to lose.
Are they not rubbed ?	rei'ben, <i>irr.</i> to rub.
You are called,	nen'nen, <i>mix.</i> to call.

*Imperfect.*

Was he not beaten ?	schla'gen, <i>irr.</i> to beat.
We were not taught,	leh'ren, to teach.
Were you not preferred ?	vor'ziehen, <i>irr.</i> to prefer.
They were read,	le'sen, <i>irr.</i> to read.

*Perfect.*

Thou hast been blamed,	ta'deln, to blame.
He has been bitten,	bei'ssen, <i>irr.</i> to bite.
You have not been punished,	stra'fen, to punish.
Have they been loaded ?	la'den, <i>irr.</i> to load.

*Pluperfect.*

Had it been measured ?	mes'sen, <i>irr.</i> to measure.
We had been hindered,	hin'dern, to hinder.
They had not been given,	ge'ben, <i>irr.</i> to give.
You had been misunderstood,	verken'nen, <i>mix.</i> to misunder- stand.

*Futures.*

I shall be weakened,	schwäch'en, to weaken.
Shall we not be seized ?	grei'fen, <i>irr.</i> to seize.
Will they not be washed ?	wäsch'en, <i>irr.</i> to wash.

You will have been seen,	se'hen, <i>irr.</i> to see.
Will they not have been re-warded ?	beloh'nen, to reward.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.*

He may be used,	brau'chen, to use.
They may be borne,	tra'gen, <i>irr.</i> to bear.
You may not be sent,	fen'den, <i>mix.</i> to send.

*Imperfect.*

Thou mightst be honored,	eh'ren, to honor.
It might be excused,	entschul'digen, to excuse.
We might be overtaken,	ein'holen, to overtake.
They might be written,	schrei'ben, <i>irr.</i> to write.

*Perfect.*

They may have been found,	fin'den, <i>irr.</i> to find.
It may have been brought,	bring'en, <i>mix.</i> to bring.
You may have been chosen,	wäh'len, to choose.

*Pluperfect.*

It might not have been felt,	empfin'den, <i>irr.</i> to feel.
We might have been absolved,	los'sprechen, <i>irr.</i> to absolve.
Thou mightst have been esteem- teemed.	ach'ten, to esteem.

*Futures.*

We shall be asked,	fra'gen, to ask.
It will not have been denied,	leug'nen, to deny.
Thou wilt be justified,	recht'fertigen, to justify.

*Conditional Tenses.*

Should I not be shunned ?	mei'den, <i>irr.</i> to shun.
He would not be revenged,	räch'en, <i>reg. &amp; irr.</i> to revenge.
Would it not be stolen ?	sich'len, <i>irr.</i> to steal.



Should we not have been fang'en, *irr.* to catch.  
caught?

You would not have been ber'gen, *irr.* to hide.  
hidden,

They would not have been verbren'nen, *mix.* to burn.  
burnt,

### Imperative.

Let them be judged,  
Let it be repeated,  
Be (*thou*) not driven,

rich'ten, to judge.  
wiederho'sen, to repeat.  
trei'ben, to drive.

### Promiscuous Exercises.

La'citus erzählt' von den al'ten Deut'schen, „ sie glau'ben, daß es der<sup>4</sup> Erha'benheit<sup>5</sup> himm'lischer<sup>6</sup> We'sen<sup>7</sup> nicht<sup>2</sup> an'gemessen<sup>3</sup> sei<sup>1</sup>, die<sup>3</sup> Göt'ter<sup>4</sup> in<sup>5</sup> Wän'de<sup>6</sup> ein<sup>2</sup> zu<sup>1</sup> schlie'sen<sup>2</sup>, o'der sie<sup>3</sup> in<sup>4</sup> menschenartiger<sup>5</sup> Gestalt<sup>6</sup> dar<sup>2</sup> zu<sup>1</sup> stel'len<sup>2</sup>. Sie heil'igen Wäl'der und Hai'ne und mit Na'men von Göt'tern bezeich'nen<sup>2</sup> sie<sup>1</sup> das geheim'nißvolle We'sen, welches sie nur in An'dacht schau'en.“

Sie zeich'neten sich aus durch Freiheitsliebe und Treu'e; die Frau'en wa'ren bei ih'nen hö'her geacht'et als bei den weit gebil'deteren Grie'chen und Rö'mern; die E'h'en wur'den heilig gehal'ten: und gu'te Sit'ten gal'ten bei ih'nen mehr als an'derwärts gu'te Geset'ze.

Anachar'sis lach'te als er sah wie So'lon sich bemü'h'te die<sup>3</sup> Un'gerechtigkeit<sup>4</sup> und<sup>5</sup> Hab'sucht<sup>6</sup> sei'ner<sup>7</sup> Mit'bürger<sup>8</sup> durch<sup>9</sup> geschri'e'bene<sup>10</sup> Geset'ze<sup>11</sup> zu<sup>1</sup> vertrei'ben<sup>2</sup>. Die'se schie'nen ihm den<sup>4</sup> Spin'nengeweben<sup>4</sup> äh'nlich<sup>3</sup> zu<sup>1</sup> sein<sup>2</sup>, wel'che das<sup>2</sup> Schwä'che<sup>3</sup> und<sup>4</sup> Klei'ne<sup>5</sup> das<sup>5</sup> sich<sup>6</sup> in<sup>7</sup> ih'nen<sup>8</sup> fing'e<sup>6</sup> festhielten<sup>1</sup>, von<sup>4</sup> den<sup>5</sup> Star'ken<sup>6</sup> und<sup>7</sup> Gro'sen<sup>8</sup> a'ber<sup>1</sup> zeris'sen<sup>3</sup> wür'den<sup>2</sup>. Darauf soll<sup>2</sup> So'lon<sup>1</sup> geant'wortet ha'ben, die Men'schen hiel'ten ih're Bünd'nisse, wenn es kei'nem<sup>3</sup> von<sup>4</sup> bei'den<sup>5</sup> Thei'len<sup>6</sup> nüg'lich<sup>2</sup> sei<sup>1</sup> sie<sup>9</sup> zu<sup>7</sup> brech'en<sup>8</sup>; und er woll'te sei'ne<sup>2</sup> Geset'ze<sup>3</sup> so<sup>4</sup> zu'träg'lich<sup>5</sup> für<sup>6</sup> sei'ne<sup>7</sup> Bür'ger<sup>8</sup> mach'en<sup>1</sup>, daß es für<sup>4</sup> je'den<sup>5</sup> bes'ser<sup>3</sup> sein<sup>2</sup> sol'le<sup>1</sup> sie<sup>11</sup> zu<sup>6</sup> hal'ten<sup>7</sup>, als<sup>8</sup> zu<sup>9</sup> über'tret'en<sup>10</sup>.

Wol'le was du kannst, so kannst du was du willst.

erzählen, to relate.	anderwärts, elsewhere.
alt, ancient.	lachen, to laugh.
deutsch, German.	als, when.
glauben, to believe.	sehen, to see.
daß, that.	wie, how.
angemessen, becoming.	sich bemühen, to exert one's self.
Erhabenheit, dignity.	vertreiben, to expel.
himmlisch, heavenly.	Ungerechtigkeit, injustice.
Wesen, being.	Habsucht, avarice.
Gott, god.	Mitbürger, fellow-citizen.
einschließen, to inclose.	schreiben, to write.
Wand, wall.	scheinen, to appear.
oder, or.	ähnlich, similar.
darstellen, to represent.	Spinnengewebe, cobweb.
menschenartig, human.	festhalten, to arrest.
Gestalt, form.	schwach, weak.
heiligen, to consecrate.	klein, small.
Wald, wood.	sich fangen, to be caught.
Hain, grove.	aber, but.
mit, by.	zerreißen, to tear.
Name, name.	stark, strong.
bezeichnen, to signify.	groß, great.
geheimnißvoll, mysterious.	darauf, thereupon.
schauen, to contemplate.	soll (from sol'len), is said.
nur, only.	antworten, to answer.
Andacht, devotion.	halten, to keep.
auszeichnen, to distinguish.	Bündniß, bond.
durch, through.	wenn, when.
Freiheitsliebe, love of liberty.	nützlich, profitable.
Ereue, faithfulness.	Theil, party.
Frau, woman.	brechen, to break.
bei, among.	wollen, to will.
achten, to esteem.	machen, to make.
hoch, high.	zutraglich, advantageous.
als, than.	Bürger, citizen.
weit, far.	es solle (from sollen), it shall.
gebildet, cultivated.	für, for.
Ehe, marriage.	übertreten, to transgress.
halten, to hold.	wollen, to will.
heilig, sacred.	können, to be able.
Sitte, custom.	so, thus
gelten, to have effect.	
Gesetz, law.	

It is reported<sup>4</sup> of<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> Sybarites<sup>3</sup>, that they killed<sup>3</sup> all<sup>1</sup> (the) cocks<sup>2</sup>, that they might<sup>6</sup> dream<sup>5</sup> out<sup>5</sup> their<sup>1</sup> morning<sup>2</sup> dreams<sup>2</sup> without<sup>3</sup> disturbance<sup>4</sup>.

The philosopher Bias being asked, what animal he thought<sup>4</sup> (*for*<sup>1</sup>) the<sup>2</sup> most<sup>3</sup> hurtful<sup>3</sup>, replied, "Of wild creatures, a tyrant; and of tame (ones), a flatterer."

Praise, like gold and diamonds, owes its value only to its scarcity.

### The Tears.

Hillel was walking in a moonlight night with his disciple Sadi, in the gardens of the Mount of Olives.

Sadi said, "See yonder, that man in the light of the moon, what is he about (*begins he*)?"

Hillel answered, "It is Zadoc; he is sitting by the grave of his son weeping (*and weeps*)."

"Can<sup>1</sup>not<sup>9</sup> Zadoc<sup>3</sup> then<sup>2</sup>," said<sup>4</sup> the<sup>5</sup> young<sup>6</sup> man,<sup>6</sup> "moderate<sup>10</sup> his<sup>7</sup> grief<sup>8</sup>? The people call him the just and the wise."

Hillel replied, "Shall he, on this account, not<sup>3</sup> feel<sup>4</sup> the<sup>1</sup> pain<sup>2</sup>?"

"But," asked Sadi, "what advantage has the wise man over the fool?"

Then his<sup>2</sup> teacher<sup>3</sup> answered<sup>1</sup>, "Behold, the bitter tear of his eye falls to the earth, but his countenance is turned<sup>2</sup> toward<sup>1</sup> heaven<sup>1</sup>."

of, von. (*Dat.*)

the Sybarite, der Sybari'te, 2. a.

to report, erzäh'len.

that, daß.

cock, \*Hahn, m. 3. b. b.

to kill, töd'ten.

that, damit'.

morning dream, \*Morg'en-

traum, m. 3. b. b.

without, oh'ne.

disturbance, Stö'rung, f. 1. d.

to dream out, aus'träumen.

I may, ich kann, *mix.* (*Subj.*)

philosopher, Philosoph', m.

being asked, *translate*, when

he was<sup>2</sup> asked<sup>1</sup>; when, da,

to ask, fra'gen.

what, was'ches.

animal, Thier, n. 3. b. b.

for, für. (*Accus.*)

hurtful, schäd'lich.

to think, hal'ten. (*Subj.*)

to reply, ant'worten.

of, un'ter. (*Dat.*)

wild, wild.

creature, Geschöpf', n. 3. b. b.

tyrant, Tyrann', m. 2. b.

tame, zahm.

flatterer, Schmeich'ler, m. 3.

a. a.

praise, lob, n. 3. b.

like, wie.

gold, Gold, n. 3. b.

and, und.

- diamond, *Diamant'*, *m.* 3. b. d.  
to owe, *verdant'en*.  
value, *Werth*, *m.* 3. b. b.  
only, *allein'*.  
scarcity, *Sel'tenheit*, *f.* 1. d.  
tear, *Thrã'ne*, *f.* 1. c.  
to walk, *wan'deln*.  
in, in. (*Dat.*)  
moonlight, *mond'hell*.  
night, *\*Nacht*, *f.* 1. b.  
with, *mit*. (*Dat.*)  
disciple, *Schü'ler*, *m.* 3. a. a.  
garden, *\*Gar'ten*, *m.* 3. a. a.  
mount of Olives, *Ol'berg*, *m.*  
3. b. b.  
to say, *sa'gen*.  
to see, *se'hen*, *irr.*  
yonder, *dort*.  
man, *\*Mann*, *m.* 3. b. c.  
light, *licht*, *n.* 3. b. c.  
moon, *Mond*, *m.* 3. b. b.  
to be about, *begin'nen*, *irr.*  
to answer, *ant'worten*.  
to sit, *sit'zen*, *irr.*  
by, *an*. (*Dat.*)  
grave, *\*Grab*, *n.* 3. b. c.  
son, *\*Sohn*, *m.* 3. b. b.  
to weep, *wei'nen*.  
(can), to be able, *kö'n'nen*, *mix.*  
then, *denn*.  
to say, *sa'gen*.  
young man, *Jüng'ling*, *m.* 3.  
b. b.  
grief, *Frau'er*, *f.* 1.  
not, *nicht*.  
to moderate, *mäß'figen*.  
people, *\*Volk*, *n.* 3. b. c.  
to call, *nen'nen*, *mix.*  
just, *gerecht'*.  
wise, *wei'se*.  
to reply, *erwie'dern*.  
(shall), to be obliged, *sol'sen*,  
*irr.*  
on this account, *da'rum*.  
pain, *Schmerz*, *m.* 3. b. d.  
to feel, *empfin'den*, *irr.*  
but, *a'ber*.  
to ask, *fra'gen*.  
what, *wel'cher*. (*Acc.*)  
advantage, *\*Vor'zug*, *m.* 3. b. b.  
over, *vor*. (*Dat.*)  
fool, *Thor*, *m.* 2. b.  
then, *da*.  
teacher, *leh'rer*, *m.* 3. a. a.  
to behold, *se'hen*, *irr.*  
bitter, *bit'ter*.  
eye, *Au'ge*, *n.* 3. a. c.  
to fall, *sink'en*, *irr.*  
to the, *zur*. (*Dat.*)  
earth, *Er'de*, *f.* 1. c.  
but, *a'ber*.  
countenance, *Ant'lig*, *n.* 3. b.  
b.  
toward, (*Dat.*)  
heaven, *der Him'mel*, *m.* 3. a.  
a.  
to turn, *zu'wenden*, *mix.*

## CHAPTER VII.

## ADVERBS.

EVERY adjective in its simple form, may be used as an adverb; as, *die'ser Mann ist ehr'lich*, this man is honest; and *die'ser Mann han'delt ehr'lich*, this man acts honestly.

The following are the adverbs which most frequently occur in writing and conversation.

§ I. DIFFERENT KINDS OF ADVERBS.

A. *Adverbs of Place.*

wo, where?	in'nerlich, in'nerhalb, in-wardly.
woher', whence?	äu'ßerlich, au'ßerhalb, out-wardly.
wohin', whither?	o'ben, dro'o'ben, above.
hier, allhier', here.	darauf', or drauf, upon it, thereon.
hie'her, hither.	ab, off, down.
da, dort, daselbst', there.	auf und nie'der, or auf und ab, up and down.
da'her, dort'her, thence.	ein und aus, in and out.
dahin, dort'hin, thither.	hin und her, to and from.
dies'seit, dies'seits, on this side.	hier und da (dort), here and there.
jen'seit, jen'seits, on the opposite side.	fort, forth.
ir'gends, ir'gendwo, somewhere.	vorn, before, fronting.
nir'gends, nir'gendwo, nowhere.	hin'ten, behind.
an'derswo, or an'derwärts, elsewhere.	von wan'nen, whence.
an'derswoher, from another place.	von hin'nen, from hence.
an'derswohin, to another place.	nah, nah'e, near.
allenthal'ben, allerw'e'gen, or alleror'ten, everywhere.	fern, fer'ne, far.
in'nen, darin'nen, or drin'nen, within.	weit ab, far off.
au'sen, drau'sen, without.	na'he bei, hard by.
in'wendig, internally.	an'wesend, or ge'genwärtig, present.
aus'wendig, externally, outward.	ab'wesend, absent.

B. *Adverbs of Time.*

wann, when.	schon, already.
dann, alsdann', then.	früh, early.
nun, jetzt, now.	spät, late.
bald, soon.	je, je'mals, ever.
so'gleich', unverzüg'lich, immediately.	nie, nie'mals, never.
	noch, still, yet.

noch nicht, not yet.	gestern, yesterday.
beizet'en, betimes.	vor'gestern, e'hegestern, the day before yesterday.
al'lezeit, always.	mit'tags, at noon.
zuzeit'en, zuweil'en, or bis= weil'en, sometimes.	vor'mittags, before noon.
einst, ein'stens, once.	nach'mittags, afternoon.
neu'lich, lately, newly.	im'mer, always.
lest'tens, lest'lich, lest'hin, lastly, lately.	stets, continually, always, ever.
einst'mals, at some times.	so e'ben, just now.
vor'mals, or e'hemals, for= merly.	lang'e, schon lang'e, or längst, long ago, a long time since.
nach'mals, or nachher', after= wards.	vorlängst', long ago, &c.
wie'der, wie'derum, again.	unlängst', or ohlängst', not long ago.
seit'her', seit, since.	bis'her', hitherto.
heu'te, to day.	da'mals, at that time, &c.

### C. Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation.

ja, yes.	kaum, hardly.
nein, no.	in der That, indeed.
nicht, not.	unfehl'bar, doubtless.
wahr'lich, truly, verily.	schlechterdings', absolutely.
frei'lich, ja frei'lich, or ja wohl, yes to be sure, surely, yes.	wirk'lich, really.
allerdings', entirely, by all means.	im'mermehr, ever.
gar nicht, not at all.	nim'mermehr, never.
kei'neswegs, mit nicht'en, by no means.	glaub'lich, credibly.
	vielleicht', perhaps.
	vermuth'lich, probably.
	durchaus' nicht, absolutely not.
	unglaub'lich, incredibly.

### D. Adverbs of Various Use.

meist, fast, schier, almost.	als, wie, as.
beina'he, nearly.	wie, how.
genug', genung', enough.	warum', why.
voll, völ'lig, completely.	da'rum, therefore.
obenhin', superficially.	an'ders, otherwise.
vol'lends, fully.	gleich'falls, likewise.
theils, partly.	gleichwie', gleich als, like as
un'gefähr, or ohn'gefähr, about.	so, so.

sehr, gar, very, much.	sämmt'lich, all together.
zu, all'zu, too.	sach'te, softly.
ganz, gänz'lich, whole, wholly.	son'ders'lich, beson'ders, espe-
wohl, gut, well.	cially.
ü'bel, schlecht, ill.	kurz, in short.
bö'se, badly.	hauptsäch'lich, chiefly.
al'so, thus.	mit Fleiß, on purpose.
ungemein', uncommonly.	vielmehr', rather.
gleich, directly, equally.	red'lich, sincerely.
überaus', exceedingly.	recht, right.
zugleich', at the same time.	un'recht, wrong.
zusam'men, together.	end'lich, lastly.

The following adverbs seem to require some particular notice.

### Wohl, Wol,

is often found, where the English can affix no distinct meaning to it. It is not, however, a mere expletive; but serves to give to a sentence a peculiar modification. Sometimes the expressions, *may be, perhaps, probably, about, nearly, indeed*, may correspond with it. It occurs in questions; as, *Ha'ben Sie wohl gehört', was man davon' sagt?* Have you by chance heard, what is said of it? — and accompanies verbs in an indeterminate and conditional construction; as, *Ich möch'te wohl le'sen*, I should like to read (if I could). Instead of the adverb *wohl, well*, denoting, of a good quality, in a good manner, not ill, *gut* is frequently used; by which means the confusion, that might arise between this signification and the expletive, is obviated. For example: *Ich weiß nicht, wo man die'se Sach'en gut kau'fen kann*, I know not, where one may buy these things *well*. In this instance, if *wohl* were used, it would, by the generality of readers, be understood as an expletive. When used as an expletive, it is pronounced short, and some, in this case, write *wol* instead of *wohl*.

*Ger'ne* or *gern*, willingly: comparative, *lie'ber*, more willingly: superlative, *am lieb'sten*, most willingly.

By this adverb, the idea, *to like, to be fond of*, is expressed; as, *et'was ger'ne thun*, to do a thing willingly, to like to do it; *et'was gern es'sen*, to eat a thing willingly, that is, to like it;

et'was gern mö'gen, to like a thing. Et'was gern se'hen, to see a thing willingly, to see it with approbation; hence, to like, to approve. Er isst Gemü'se lie'ber als Fleisch, He likes vegetables better than meat; literally, he eats more willingly. Sie se'hen es am lieb'sten, They see it with most pleasure, that is, they like it best. The use of lie'ber, and am lieb'sten, will be readily understood from that of gern.

### Ein and Her.

See page 108.

### Da,

combined with prepositions, and followed by the conjunction daß, serves as a substitute for the English participle, united with a preposition. Examples: *By reading much he became learned*; Da'durch daß er viel las, wur'de er gelehrt'. *From talking too much, mischief often comes*; Dar'aus daß man zu viel schwagt, entsteht' oft Un'heil. *Justice consists in giving every one his own*; Gerech'tigkeit besteht' da'rin, daß man je'derman das sei'ne gibt.

### Doch,

put after an imperative, has the power of entreating and exhorting, and answers, in general, to the French *donc*, and, frequently, to the English *pray*. Examples: Sa'gen Sie mir doch, Pray tell me. Sein Sie doch so gut, Pray, be so good. Was sag'te er doch? Pray, what did he say? War das doch ein Lärm, What a noise that was! Occasionally it may be rendered by *somehow*; as, Ich fand mich doch bald wie'der, I somehow soon found my way again. — In common conversation, it is sometimes used for the affirmative ja, when a negative precedes.

### Ja,

besides its affirmative signification, *yes*, has an expletive use, in which it may be often translated by, *indeed, truly, certainly, see, I see, I wonder, forsooth*. Examples: Sie kom'men ja spät, You certainly are come late, or, I wonder you come so late.



Sie sind ja recht gros gewor'den, You, indeed, are grown very tall. Er stellt sich ja sehr son'derbar an, He, forsooth! behaves in a very singular manner. — Ja wohl, certainly, yes, certainly. Ja, combined with a negative, be it with the particle nicht, or nie, or the adjective kein, may be rendered by the same expletive terms, *pray, certainly, see, &c.*; but frequently it strengthens the expression; as, ja nicht, on no account; ja nie, never, spoken emphatically.

### Mit'ten,

before the prepositions in and un'ter, signifies *in the midst of*; as, mit'ten in sei'ner Rede, in the midst of his discourse; mit'ten un'ter den Fein'den, in the midst of the enemies.

### Noch,

signifies an addition, where the English use *more*. Noch eins, one thing more; noch ein'mal, once more; noch im'mer, still, by continuance, constantly. Er bleibt noch im'mer in Lou'don, He still continues in London.

### A Comparison

of things equal, is, in English, made by the repetition of *as*: for example, 'as brave as Leonidas.' In German, the first particle is rendered by so, and the second by als, or wie: so tap'fer als Leo'nidas. The word *than*, after the comparative *more*, is expressed by als. Sometimes the English put *but* after a comparative degree, instead of *than*: for example, "There was nothing farther to be done, *but* to fight." The German als, must here be retained. Wie is occasionally substituted for als, and then the so may be omitted; as, tap'fer wie Leo'nidas.

### The Negative

nicht is often used by the Germans, where the English would deem it superfluous; as, Es ist ü'ber ei'nen Mo'nat, seitdem' ich Sie nicht gese'hen ha've, It is above a month, since I have (*not*) seen you.

In interrogative exclamations, the *negative* gives emphasis. Wie viele Menschen sind nicht in die'sem Krie'ge un'gekomm-

men, How many men have (*not*) perished in this war! Wie stolz schien er nicht, How proud did he (*not*) appear! (The French also make use of the negative. *Quel bruit ces hommes n'auraient-ils pas fait, s'ils n'avaient attrapé à un tel banquet!*)

*Not a, not any*, are, in German, commonly expressed by *kein*, none; as, not a single line, *keine einzige Zeile*.

*Two negatives*, in the same sentence, are in general improper; although they sometimes occur not only in the language of common life, but also in the best writers. Sometimes, indeed, there may appear to be energy in the repetition of the negative; but, on the whole, it should be rather considered as a species of negligence in composition.

### *About, nearly.*

This idea, accompanying numbers, is differently expressed. 1. By certain adverbs, viz. *beinahe, etwa, fast, un'gefähr, wohl, bis*. *Es sind wohl drei Jahre*, It is about three years, *un'gefähr zehn Pfund*, about ten pounds; *zwei bis drei Wochen*, from two to three weeks. 2. By the use of the preposition, *an, bei, gegen*. *An die zwanzig*, nearly twenty; *bei (or gegen) vierzig*, nearly forty.

## § 2. OF THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are either original words, as, *ja*, yes; *nein*, no; *wo*, where; *wie*, how; or adjectives used as adverbs; or they are formed from nouns or adjectives, or by composition.

### A. *Adverbs derived from Nouns or Adjectives.*

A noun or adjective is formed into an adverb by adding either the letter *s* (the ancient characteristic of the genitive case for nouns of all declensions) or the syllable *lich* to the noun or adjective. The additional *s* always makes the word an adverb, without making it an adjective; while most of the words formed by adding *lich* are properly adjectives, which may be used also as adverbs.

1. The following substantives, denoting parts of the natural day, are changed into adverbs by an additional *s*.

<i>Substantives.</i>	<i>Adverbs.</i>
der Tag, the day ;	tags, or des Tags, in the day-time.
die Nacht, the night ;	nachts, or des Nachts, in the night.
der Mor'gen, the morning ;	mor'gens, or des Mor'gens, in the morning.
der A'bend, the evening ;	a'bends, or des A'bends, in the evening.
der Vor'mittag, the forenoon ;	vor'mittags, or des Vor'mittags, in the forenoon.
der Nach'mittag, the afternoon ;	nach'mittags, or des Nach'mittags, in the afternoon.
der Mit'tag, the noon ;	mit'tags, or des Mit'tags, at noon.

So, also, some adjectives become adverbs, by means of an additional *s* ; as, bereits', already, from bereit', ready ; stets, constantly, from stet, constant ; besou'ders, particularly, from besou'der, particular ; an'ders, otherwise, from au'der, other ; rechts, to the right hand, from recht, right ; links, to the left, from link, left, &c. Numerals become adverbs by the addition of *ens* or *tens* ; as, er'stens, in the first place, or first ; zwei'tens, secondly ; drit'tens, thirdly, &c. And the following words ; bes'tens, in the best manner ; mei'stens, mostly ; e'hestens, by the first opportunity ; höch'stens, at the most ; ü'brigens, as for the rest.

2. There are some adverbs formed by the addition of *lich*, which cannot be used as adjectives ; as, frei'lich, indeed, from frei, free ; wahr'lich, truly, from wahr, true ; gü'tlich, goodly, from gut, good.

### B. *Compound Adverbs.*

Among compound adverbs, those which are composed of a preposition and the adverbs hier, hic, here, da, there, wo, where, hin, thither, hcr, hither, deserve a particular notice. In these cases, if the preposition begin with a vowel or u, an *r* is often added to the adverbs da and wo.

1. With *da*, *dar*, instead of *der*, *die*'*ser*, *dersel*'*be*.

<i>dabei</i> '	by it, with it, thereby.	<i>darum</i> '	for it <i>or</i> that, there- fore.
<i>daran</i> '	on it <i>or</i> that, thereon.	<i>dawi</i> ' <i>der</i>	against that <i>or</i> it.
<i>darauf</i> '	upon it <i>or</i> that, there- upon.	<i>dazu</i> '	for that <i>or</i> it, thereto.
<i>daraus</i> '	from thence, it, that.	<i>davor</i> '	before that <i>or</i> it.
<i>darcin</i> '	thereinto, into it <i>or</i> that.	<i>dari</i> ' <i>ber</i>	on that account, at it.
<i>darin</i> '	therein, in it, within.	<i>darun</i> ' <i>ter</i>	under it <i>or</i> that.
<i>darnach</i> '	after it, thereafter.	<i>dafür</i> '	for that.
<i>dage</i> ' <i>gen</i>	against it <i>or</i> that.	<i>davon</i> '	of that <i>or</i> it, thereof, therefrom.
<i>damit</i> '	with that <i>or</i> it, by it, therewith.	<i>dazwischen</i> ' <i>en</i>	between, amidst that.
<i>daue</i> ' <i>ben</i>	near that <i>or</i> it, next to it.		

2. With *hier*, or *hie*, are compounded the same prepositions as above.

<i>hieran</i> '	on this <i>or</i> it, &c.	<i>hierauf</i> '	upon this <i>or</i> it, &c.
-----------------	---------------------------	------------------	-----------------------------

3. With *wo*, *wor*, instead of *wel*'*cher*, *was*.

<i>woan</i> '	on which, whereon.	<i>wover</i> '	before which.
<i>worauf</i> '	upon which, where- upon.	<i>wozu</i> '	to which, whereto.
<i>worin</i> '	in which, wherein.	<i>wonach</i> '	according to which.
<i>womit</i> '	with which, where- with.	<i>wone</i> ' <i>ben</i>	next to which.
<i>wodurch</i> '	by <i>or</i> through which.	<i>woru</i> ' <i>ber</i>	upon which, where- upon.
<i>worum</i> '	for which, why.	<i>wofür</i> '	for which, wherefore.
<i>woge</i> ' <i>gen</i>	against which.	<i>worum</i> ' <i>ter</i>	under which, among which, &c.

4. With *her* and *hin*, as adverbs.

<i>herab</i> '	<i>hinab</i> '	<i>herun</i> ' <i>ter</i>	down.	<i>heraus</i> '	out, &c.
<i>herauf</i> '	<i>hinauf</i> '		up.		

## § 3. THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are invariable, except that some admit the degrees of comparison, as;

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
gut, or wohl, well;	bess'er, better;	am (zum) bes'ten,* best.
n'bel, ill;	schlim'mer, worse;	..... schlimm'sten, worst.
viel, much;	mehr, more;	..... mei'sten, most.
wen'ig, little, few;	wen'iger, less;	..... we'nigsten, least.
na'he, near;	nâ'her, nearer;	..... nâch'sten, nearest.
hoch, high;	hø'her, higher;	..... høch'sten, highest.
e'he, before;	e'her, sooner;	..... e'hesten, soonest.
geru, readily, or willingly;	lie'ber, more rea- dily, or rath- er;	..... lieb'sten, most rea- dily, or most wil- lingly.

*Observation.* The syllable *un* changes adverbs from affirmative to negative, in the same manner as *in*, *im*, or *un*, in English; as, glaub'lich, credibly; unglaub'lich, incredibly; recht'lich, justly; un'rechtlich, unjustly.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## PREPOSITIONS.

Some prepositions are always separated; as,

um-wil'len, for the sake of; as, um des Frie'dens wil'len, for the sake of peace.

von-we'gen, in the name of; as, von Gerich'ts' we'gen, in the name of the court.

Some are separated or not according to the construction; as,

um-her', round about; as, Ich ging um das Schloß her, I walk-ed about the castle; and Ich ging umher', I walked about.

---

\* Or aufs (auf das) Bes'te.

*hinter=her'*, *hinter=drein'*, behind; as, *ich ging hin'ter dem Man'ne hei or drein*, I walked after the man, I followed the man; and *Ich ging hinterher'*, or *hinterdrein'*, I walked behind.

ABBREVIATION OF PREPOSITIONS.

In the familiar or colloquial style, the definite article and the preposition are generally contracted into one word; as, *am*, for *an dem*.

Examples.

<i>am</i> ,	<i>for an dem</i> ,	<i>as, am Fen'ster</i> , at the window.
<i>aus</i> ,	<i>an das</i> ,	<i>aus Licht</i> , into the light.
<i>aufs</i> ,	<i>auf das</i> ,	<i>aufs Haus</i> , upon the house.
<i>beim</i> ,	<i>bei dem</i> ,	<i>beim Va'ter</i> , by the father.
<i>durchs</i> ,	<i>durch das</i> ,	<i>durchs Fen'er</i> , through the fire.
<i>fürs</i> ,	<i>für das</i> ,	<i>fürs Geld</i> , for money.
<i>im</i> ,	<i>in dem</i> ,	<i>im Him'mel</i> , in heaven.
<i>ins</i> ,	<i>in das</i> ,	<i>ins Wasser</i> , in the water.
<i>vom</i> ,	<i>von dem</i> ,	<i>vom Ü'bel</i> , from evil.
<i>vors</i> ,	<i>vor das</i> ,	<i>vors Fen'ster</i> , before the window.
<i>vorm</i> ,	<i>vor dem</i> ,	<i>vorm Thor</i> , before the door.
<i>ü'berm</i> ,	<i>ü'ber dem</i> ,	<i>ü'berm Fen'er</i> , upon the fire.
<i>ü'bers</i> ,	<i>ü'ber das</i> ,	<i>ü'bers Meer</i> , beyond the sea.
<i>un'term</i> ,	<i>un'ter dem</i> ,	<i>un'term Kop'fe</i> , under the head.
<i>zum</i> ,	<i>zu dem</i> ,	<i>zum Bach'e</i> , to the rivulet.
<i>zur</i> ,	<i>zu der</i> ,	<i>zur Eh're</i> , for the honor.

Some of these abbreviations occur, not only in the familiar, but in every kind of style; as, *am*, *im*, *vom*, *zum*, *zur*.

CHAPTER IX.

CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunctions *a'ber*, and *son'dern*, which are both Englished *but*, have a distinct meaning and use in German.

*Son'dern* is used only after a negative, and always expresses a contradiction; as, *Er ist nicht reich, son'dern arm*, He is not rich, but poor; *Es friert nicht, son'dern es thaut*, It does not freeze, but it thaws. — *U'ber* is used to connect two sentences, of which the subsequent contains a limitation or modification of the antecedent; as, *Er ist arm, a'ber zufried'en*, He is poor, but contented; *Er spricht deutsch, a'ber nicht geläu'fig*, He speaks German, but not fluently.

## CHAPTER X.

## INTERJECTIONS.

The following is a list of some of the interjections used in German.

ach! ah! ah! ah!	willkom'men! welcome!
sei'der! alas!	sie'he! lo! behold!
oh! o! oh!	sie'he da! behold here!
wch! we'he! woe!	pfui! fie!
ei! hui! heigh!	lie'ber! pray!
wohlau'! well then!	behü'te Gott! God forbid!
hilf Gott! God help!	hol'la! he! holla!
hilf Him'mel! Heaven help!	st! still! hush! hist!
halt! halt! or stop!	

## CHAPTER XI.

## ADDITIONAL REMARKS, ON THE MODE OF FORMING NEW WORDS.

*General Remarks.*

The number of German words has been and may still be increased in two ways:

I. The language admits of being enriched out of its own substance.

a. One part of speech may be used for another. Thus the infinitive of the verb *le'ben*, to live, is used as a substantive, *das le'ben*, the life; and the neuter gender of the adject-

tive *erhaben*, sublime, may be used as a noun, *das Erhabene*, the sublime.

*b.* A word may be derived from another; as, *gütig*, kind, from *gut*, good.

*c.* Several words may be compounded into one; as, *Silberbergwerk*, silver mine, composed of *Silber*, silver, *Berg*, mountain, and *Werk*, work.

II. A number of foreign words have been introduced into the German language, and have become more or less naturalized; as, *Natur'*, nature; *Sympathie'* (*Mitgefühl*), sympathy.

§ 1. OF THE MOST IMPORTANT MODES OF ENRICHING THE LANGUAGE FROM WITHIN ITSELF.

*A. Of the Infinitive Mood and Adjectives, used as Nouns.*

Among the various modes in which a word may be changed from one part of speech to another, there is none of so much practical importance as the use of infinitives and adjectives as nouns.

1. The Germans use the infinitive of every verb as a noun, in the same manner as the English do the present participle; as, *das Fühl'en*, the feeling; *das Hö'rn*, the hearing; *das For'sch'en*, the searching, &c.

2. An adjective may be used as a noun in each of its three genders, and ought then to have a capital letter for its initial.

*a.* When the adjective in its *masculine* or *feminine* gender is used as a noun, it denotes most generally a man or a woman of such description as the adjective imports; as, *der Gute*, the good man; *die Gute*, the good woman; *ein From'mer*, a pious man; *ei'ne From'me*, a pious woman.

The noun should always be preceded by the definite or indefinite article, except in the vocative case; as, *Bes'ter*, best man; *Bes'te*, best woman.

Sometimes the adjective stands without the noun to which it refers, this noun being understood. In this case the adjective is not changed into a noun but remains an adjective; as, *Es giebt zwei'erlei Men'schen, gute und bö'se. Die bö'sen geben sich oft das An'sehn der guten.* There are two sorts of men, good and bad. The bad oftentimes give themselves the appearance of the good.



b. When the *neuter* of the adjective is used as a noun, if it is preceded by the definite article, it denotes the whole class of things to which the quality expressed by the adjective is ascribed; or it designates the quality itself; as, *das Schöne*, the beautiful; *das Erhabene*, the sublime.

If the neuter adjective, when used as a noun, is not preceded by the article, it means *any thing* having that quality which the adjective expresses; as, *Schönes*, any thing beautiful; *Zartes*, any thing tender.

While in English (at least in prose) only a few adjectives are used as nouns, the German language allows every adjective to be used in that manner; as, *das Zarte*, that which is tender; *das Starke*, that which is strong; *das Natürliche*, that which is natural; *das Künstliche*, that which is artificial.\*

Sometimes the *simple* form of the adjective is used instead of the neuter; as, *das Gelb und das Roth*, the yellow and the red; or without the article, *Gelb und Roth sind zwei Grundfarben*, Yellow and red are two primary colors.

In a few instances the indefinite article is used before the simple form or the neuter of the adjective; as, *ein Roth*, a red (color); *ein Meh'reres*, something further.

### B. Of the Derivation of Words from Others.

Among the various modes in which derivative words may be formed, we notice two, as particularly important.

1. In the formation of *nouns*, by adding to adjectives, numerals, nouns, or radical syllables of verbs, the syllables, *ei* (*ey*), *heit*, *keit*, *ung*, *thum*, *schaft*, *niss*; as, *Fischerci'*, fishery, (*Fisch'er*, fisherman); *Vollkom'menheit*, perfection, (*vollkom'men*, perfect); *Ein'heit*, unity, (*ein*, one); *Bie'derkeit*, righteousness, (*bie'der*, righteous); *Nei'gung*, inclination, (*sich nei'gen*, to incline); *Rit'terthum*, chivalry, (*Rit'ter*, knight); *Wissensschaft*, science, (*wissen*, to know); *Land'schaft*, landscape, (*land*, land); *Besorg'niss*, apprehension, (*besor'gen*, to apprehend).

2. The formation of *adjectives*, by the addition of the syllables *bar*, *sam*, *en*, *ern*, *ig*, *icht*, *isch*, *lich*, *haft*; as, *chr'bar*,

---

\* The great advantage that arises from this mode of using every adjective as a noun, to designate certain classes of things, or certain qualities, is evident, particularly in philosophy.

decent, (Eh're, honor); ar'beitsam, industrious, (Ar'beit, labor); gol'den, golden, (Gold, gold); stei'nern, of stone, (Stein, stone); feu'rig, fiery, (Feu'er, fire); thö'richt, foolish, (Thor, fool); dich'terisch, poetical, (Dich'ter, poet); säch'sisch, Saxon, (der Sach'se, the Saxon); kin'disch, childish, (Kind, child); kind'lich, childlike; münd'lich, oral, (Mund, mouth); herz'haft, hearty, (Herz, heart).

### C. Of the Composition of Words.

A compound word is produced by uniting two or more terms into one. Such expressions, therefore, as *newspaper*, *seaport*, *vainglory*, belong to this class.

The rules for composition, which are tacitly acknowledged in German, and ought to be uniformly observed, are these two :

*Rule I.* — The several terms which enter into the composition should suggest so many distinct ideas; and these ought to be so perspicuous, that, when combined, they shall render the word intelligible at the first glance.

*Rule II.* — The prior term of the compound should define and limit the other. Hence the first component may be called the *particular term*; and the second, the *general*. For example: Mond'licht, moonlight; the general term licht, light, being defined by the more particular term, Mond, moon: fun'mercvoll, sorrowful; the general term voll, full, being defined by the particular term, Kum'mer, sorrow.

To these two rules of composition, are to be added the following observations.

1. In compound substantives, the second component, or general term, furnishes the gender; as, das Rath'haus, the council-house, from der Rath, the council, and das Haus, the house; der Ar'beitslohn, wages for work, from die Ar'beit, labor, and der Lohn, the reward; Men'schenliebe, love of man, from der Mensch, man, and die Lie'be, love.

2. The compound should be neither too long, nor harsh to the ear.

3. Though one of the terms be a compound word, yet, when it enters into a new composition, it is supposed to convey only a single idea. For example, das Silberbergwerk, the silver mine, consisting of Silber, silver, and Berg'werk, a

mine, has for its second term, a compound word, *Berg'werk*. This may be resolved into *Berg*, mountain, and *Werk*, work; yet, the idea which it suggests as a component of *Sil'berbergwerk*, is only one. Consequently, words may be twice or oftener compounded, without being disqualified for serving in a new composition according to the second rule; care being taken not to make the compound too long. But whenever such words are admitted, a hyphen (:) is resorted to, in order to break their extended appearance: as, *General':Feldzeug'meister*, Master General of the Ordnance; *Reichs:General':Feldmar'schall*, Field-marshal General of the Empire.

4. A hyphen is, moreover, employed, when either one or both of the components are foreign words; as, *das Reichs:Collegium*, the council of the Empire; *das Criminal':Gericht*, the criminal court of justice; *der Justiz':Rath*, a council, or counsellor of justice; *das Intelligenz':Blatt*, a paper for advertisements; *das Intelligenz':Comptoir*, the advertising office; *das Justiz':Collegium*, the court of justice. The foreign words are written either in their own type, as is done in these examples, or in the German character; as, *Intelligenz'blatt*. But if the words are not too long, it is rather more usual to write them without the hyphen, as one word; as, *Intelligenz'blatt*.

5. By the process of composition are produced, in the following manner,

(1) SUBSTANTIVES.

a. *Both terms being Substantives.* Examples: *Die A'bend:stunde*, the evening-hour — from *der A'bend*, the evening, and *die Stun'de*, the hour; *der Ap'felbaum*, the apple-tree — *der Ap'fel*, and *der Baum*; *der Sonn'tag*, Sunday — *die Son'ne*, *der Tag*; *der Got'tesdienst*, divine service — *Gott*, God, *der Dienst*, the service; *der Hel'deamuth*, heroic courage — *der Held*, the hero, *der Muth*, courage; *die Her'zensgü'te*, goodness of heart — *das Herz*, *die Gü'te*.

b. *The first term being an Adjective.* *Die Gros'muth*, magnanimity — *gros*, great, *der Muth*, spirit; *die Schwer'muth*, heaviness of spirit, melancholy — *schwer*, heavy, *der Muth*,\* spirit; *die Ei'genliebe*, self-love — *ei'gen*, own, and *die Lie'be*.

\* It will be noticed, that in these two last examples, there is a deviation from the first observation (under Rule II.) relative to the gender of compound substantives.

c. *A Numeral the first term.* Der Drei'fuß, the tripod — drei, three, der Fuß, the foot; das Vier'eck, the square — vier four, die Ecke,\* the corner; das Acht'eck,\* the octagon — acht, eight.

d. *The Pronoun selbst the first term.* Das Selbst'vertrauen, self-confidence — das Vertrau'en; die Selbst'prüfung, self-examination — die Prü'fung; der Selbst'betrug, self-delusion — der Betrüg'.

e. *A Verb the first term.* Der Fecht'boden, the fencing-school — fect'h'en, to fence, der Bo'den, the floor; die Reit'bahn, the riding-school — rei't'en, to ride, die Bahn, the course, the ground; das Wart'geld, pay for waiting, for attendance — war't'en, to wait, das Geld, money.

f. *A Particle the first term,* such as ab, an, ein, &c. Die Ab'reise, the departure; die An'kunft, the arrival; der Ein'gang, the entrance.

## (2) ADJECTIVES.

a. *A Substantive being the first term.* Zu'gendreich, rich in virtue — die Zu'gend, virtue, reich, rich; kraft'voll, full of strength or power — die Kraft, voll; eis'kalt, cold as ice — das Eis, kalt; gold'gelb, yellow as gold — das Gold, gelb; pech'schwarz, black as pitch — das Pech, schwarz; got'tesfürchtig, pious, fearing God — Gott, God, and fürchtig (an adjective, not usual except in composition); hülfs'bedürftig, destitute, wanting help — die Hül'fe, bedürftig.

b. *An Adjective the first term.* leicht'fertig, thoughtless, flighty; hell'blau, light blue; frei'willig, voluntary; alt'klug, wise as an old man.

c. *A Numeral the first term.* Drei'eckig, three-cornered, triangular; vier'eckig, quadrangular, square; sechs'füßig, six-footed; acht'seitig, having eight sides.

d. *A Particle the first term.* Ab'hängig, dependent; an'ständig, becoming; ü'bermüthig, overbearing, insolent; zu'künftig, future; un'gläubig, unbelieving; un'gerecht, unjust.

e. *A Verb the first term.* Denk'würdig, memorable — den'ken, to think of, and wür'dig, worthy; hab'süchtig, avaricious —

---

\* See note on preceding page.

ha'ben, to have, and die *Sucht*, eager desire; lie'benswürdig, lovely, amiable — lie'ben, to love, wür'dig, worthy; lo'benswerth, praiseworthy — lo'ben to praise, werth, deserving.

## (3) VERBS.

a. *A Substantive being the first term.* Brand'schäzen, to raise contributions, by the menace of fire — der Brand, fire, schat'zen, to raise contributions; lust'wandeln, to walk for pleasure, to take a walk — die lust, pleasure, wandeln, to walk; wett'eifern, to emulate — die Wett'e, the wager, competition, eifern, to be eager or zealous; wet'terleuchten, to lighten without thunder — das Wet'ter, the weather, the tempest, leuch'ten, to shine; hand'haben, to handle — die Hand, the hand, ha'ben, to have.

b. *An Adjective the first term.* Vollbring'en, to accomplish — voll, full, bring'en, to bring; vollzie'h'en, to execute — zie'h'en, to draw.

c. *A Particle the first term.* This species of composition has been treated of at large, from page 107 to page 114.

## (4) PARTICIPLES.

*A Substantive being the first term.* (a.) The present participle: ehr'liebend, loving honor, generous — die Eh're, honor, lie'bend, loving; gesetz'gebend, legislative — das Gesetz', the law, ge'bend, giving; wach'habend, having the guard, being on duty, as an officer — die Wach'e, the guard, ha'bend, having. (b.) The past participle: blu'menbekränzt, crowned with flowers — die Blu'me, the flower, bekränzt', crowned; schnee'bedeckt, covered with snow — der Schnee, the snow, bedeckt', covered; see'gebo-ren, born of the sea — die See, the sea, gebo'ren, born.

## (5) PARTICLES.

*Compounded with Particles.* Vor'wärts, forward, zurück', back; hinein', into; heraus', out of; mithin', therefore; daher', thence; nunmehr', now.

6. The components often remain unaltered; as, Apfelbaum, apple-tree; Uhr'macher, watchmaker; tugendreich, rich in virtue: but in many instances, the first term undergoes some change, by letters being either added or omitted.

## (1) LETTERS ADDED.

es: as, der Got'tesdienst, divine service — from Gott; Gei'steskraft, power of mind — der Gei'st; die To'desnoth, agony of death — der Tod.

s: as, das Him'melslicht, the light of heaven — der Him'mel; das E'selsohr, an ass's ear, the corner of a leaf of a book turned down — der E'sel; das Ar'beitshaus, the work-house — die Ar'beit; der Geburts'tag, the birth-day — die Geburt'; das Hülf's'mittel, means of assistance, resource — die Hülf'e.

ns, ens: as, die Frie'densfeier, the celebration of peace — der Frie'de; die Her'zensgüte, goodness of heart — das Herz.

The above additional letters mark the genitive case, in the first component.

e: as, das Her'zleid, affliction of heart — das Herz; der Pf'er'defuß, the horse's foot — das Pferd; der Gän'sebraten, the roasted goose — die Gans, the goose.

In some of these examples, the inserted *e* may be considered as the characteristic letter of the plural number.

n, or en: as, das Freu'denfest, the festival of joy, the jubilee — die Freu'de; das Drach'enblut, dragon's blood — der Drach'e; der Hel'denmuth, heroic courage — der Held, the hero; das Hir'tenleben, pastoral life — der Hirt, the herdsman; der Bau'ernstolz, vulgar pride — der Bau'er, the rustic, the clown.

The additional *n*, or *en*, may, in some instances, indicate the genitive case, in others the plural number.

er: as, der Ei'erkuchen, the omelet — das Ei, the egg, and der Ku'chen, the cake; die Bil'derschrift, ideographic writing — das Bild, the image, figure, and die Schrift, the writing; die Wei'berlist, craft of women — das Weib, the woman, and die list, cunning.

The letters *er* correspond, in these words, with the termination of the plural.

i: this occurs only in two very ancient compounds; die *Nach'tigall*, the nightingale, and der *Bräu'tigam*, the bridegroom.

(2) LETTERS OMITTED.

e, in substantives: as, die *End'silbe*, the final syllable — das *En'de*, the end; die *Erb'folge*, the succession — das *Er'be*, the inheritance, die *Fol'ge*, the act of following *or* succeeding; der *Sonn'tag*, Sunday — die *Sonne*; der *Kirsch'baum*, the cherry-tree — die *Kir'sche*.

en, in infinitives: as, der *Fecht'boden*, the fencing-school — *fech'ten*, to fence; die *Reit'bahn*, the riding-school — *rei'ten*, to ride; *denk'würdig*, memorable — *denk'en*, to think of, and *wür'dig*, worthy; *hab'süchtig*, avaricious — *ha'ben*, to have.

These omissions take place because only the radical syllable of the first component is employed in composition.

7. It is not settled by rule when and how these changes in the first component are to be made. Analogy and euphony alone determine the question. Sometimes a diversity occurs in the state of the first component, as it is combined with different words; as, der *Bau'erhof*, the farm, and der *Bau'erkrrieg*, the war of peasants — both from der *Bau'er*, the husbandman, the peasant; die *Ehr'furcht*, reverence, and der *Ehr'enräuber*, the reviler — from die *Ehre*; der *Feu'erherd*, the hearth, and die *Feu'ersbrunst*, a great fire — from das *Feu'er*; das *Herzleid*, affliction of heart, and die *Herzensangst*, anxiety of heart — from das *Herz*. But even in regard to the same compounds, an uncertainty occasionally prevails: for example, der *Eichenbaum*, or der *Eich'baum*, the oak-tree — from die *Ei'che*, the oak; *Erd'flos*, or *Er'denflos*, the clod of earth — from die *Er'de*.

8. There are a few instances in which a change of signification is produced by the mode of composition; as, der *Land'mann*, the husbandman, the peasant, and der *Land'smann*, the compatriot; *Heil'mittel*, medicine, and *Heils'mittel*, means of salvation; *Feld'wirthschaft*, agriculture, and *Fel'derwirthschaft*, rotation in crops.

9. The more ancient compounds cannot always be reduced to that analogy, by which the composition of words is now regulated.

10. When it happens that two or more compound words occur in a sentence, having the second component the same, this component is frequently omitted in the first word, or words, and only expressed in the word that is last: as, *Pfaffen- und Weiberlist*, craft of priests and women; *Kriegs- und Friedenszeiten*, times of war and peace; *Bet- Bus- und Fast-tag*, day of prayer, repentance, and fasting. The hyphen is then put after the first word or words.

## § 2. OF THE INTRODUCTION OF FOREIGN WORDS INTO THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

The German language is sufficiently copious and productive, to furnish native words for any idea that can be expressed at all. Moreover, it is so old, that none of the known languages of the earth can be considered as its parent; and the radical words as well as the manner of forming new terms, are so peculiar, that the German cannot borrow expressions from foreign languages without violating its own idiom. This being the character of the language, the best German scholars have laid down the general rule, that in speaking and writing, all those terms which are not of genuine German growth, but imported from foreign languages, should be avoided. It was by disregarding this principle, that, particularly from the last half of the sixteenth, until the last half of the eighteenth century, a considerable number of Latin and French terms were introduced into the language; many of which are still in common use. But a sounder taste, and a better knowledge of the native riches and powers of the language, have already cleared it of many of those heterogeneous ingredients; and there is reason to hope that this purifying principle will by degrees succeed in removing all these inconsistencies, without indulging in the blind zeal of an over-hasty and extravagant "purism."

According to this principle, we ought to be directed by the following rules.

1. No foreign word should be used, if the same idea may be conveyed by a native term, equally expressive and usual. It is improper, for example, to say *excusiren*, instead of *entschul-*



digen, to excuse; or *Medicament'*, instead of *Heil'mittel*, medicine; or *National'miliz*, instead of *Land'wehr*, national militia.

2. A genuine German word should be preferred to a foreign one, if the former, although less usual, is equally expressive, and not yet wholly obsolete. Thus, *Vor'hut*, advanced guard, is better than *Avant'garde*; *Nach'hut*, rear guard, is better than *Arriere'garde*; and *Mit'teltreffen*, centre of the army, is better than *Centrum*.

3. If we find no word already formed to express a particular idea, we should, instead of resorting to foreign languages, rather try to form a new word, in the true German style, either by *derivation*, or *composition*, which have been treated of in the preceding section.

a. By *derivation*, for example, the words *Volks'thum*, nationality, *volks'thümlich*, national, and *Volks'thümlichkeit*, national peculiarity, have lately been formed from the radical word *Volk*, people or nation; and those words have already, in a great measure, displaced the foreign terms, *Nationalität'*, national', and *National'-Eigenthüm'lichkeit*.

b. In the way of *composition*, a foreign word may be rendered in German, by resolving its meaning into the component ideas.

Take for example the French word *courrier*, which means a messenger who is to proceed with speed. In this instance, the more general idea of a *messenger* is defined by the particular idea of speed. Messenger, in German, is *Bo'te*, and speed, *Ei'le*; and these two words being put together according to Rule II. of the preceding section, form the word *Eil'bote*. This is preferable to *Courier'*, which ought not to be considered a German word, as it is needlessly borrowed from a foreign language. — In the same manner the French word *diligence*, which is frequently used in Germany to denote a carriage which is to travel with despatch, may be rendered by *Eil'wagen*; from *Wägen*, carriage, and *Ei'le*, despatch; and this German word has already displaced in a great measure the barbarous term *Di'ligencc*.

But in seeking native for foreign words, we ought to guard against mere literal translations. It is the *sense* of the foreign words which is to be rendered in German, and not the man-

ner in which this sense is expressed in the language to which they belong. Thus the French word *allée*, which is sometimes used in Germany as signifying a walk planted with trees, cannot be rendered simply by *Gang*, walk; but by *Baumgang*, from *Gang*, walk, and *Baum*, tree.

4. The general language which is at present spoken by all well-bred persons in Germany, may be recruited, by antiquated German words, and by local or provincial expressions. But they cannot be considered as parts of the general and living language, until good German writers have obtained for them the sanction of public opinion.

*a.* The word *türnen*, to perform gymnastic exercises, is an example of an antiquated term, which has been restored to the living language. This word, having lately been revived by Jahn, is now, with all the derivative and compound words which have been formed from it, a legitimate German term.

*b.* "Provincial terms," says Jahn, "are the militia, which take the field when the standing army of book-words is defeated." Thus the Swiss word *Lawine*, avalanche, has become a classical German word.

5. A number of foreign words which have taken a German termination, and of which many derivative and compound words have been formed, may now be considered as naturalized; as, the word *Natur*, nature, which has been employed in forming the derivative expressions *Unnatur*, unnatural state; *naturlich*, natural, *Naturlichkeit*, natural appearance; and the compound words, *Naturstand*, state of nature; *Naturrecht*, natural right; and many others. The words, *Regel*, rule, and *Familie*, family, are similar instances of naturalized words.

6. There are some expressions, borrowed from foreign languages, which may be considered almost in the light of proper names, peculiarly and exclusively belonging to the objects which they designate. Of this kind are *Thee*, tea; *Kaffee*, coffee; *Schokolade*, chocolate; *Tabak*, tobacco. To attempt to Germanize such terms would be an absurdity.

7. There are some foreign terms, which, according to their general and permanent signification, might be rendered in

German, but are nevertheless preserved by good writers, because they have a reference to peculiar circumstances and times. Thus the native words, *Volk*, people, and *Heer*, army, are in general to be preferred to the foreign terms, *Nation'*, and *Armee'*; but in the time of Napoleon, the expressions, *die gro'se Armee'*, the Grand Army, and *die gro'se Nation'*, the Great Nation, had a special and transitory meaning, for which the foreign appellatives were better suited than the true German expressions.

8. As the process of purifying the language from improper mixtures must be a gradual one, it is particularly desirable that they should be most carefully avoided in works which are likely to be of lasting importance. From works of this character, the changes may and will proceed, by degrees, to lighter kinds of literature, and conversation; while a precipitate or preposterous attempt at purification, which would obstruct the natural flow of thought and expression, is as much averse to the genius of the language, as those very impurities which it is intended to remove.

# BOOK II.

## SYNTAX.

---

### AGREEMENT, GOVERNMENT, AND ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

The *agreement* of words consists in their being put in the same gender, number, case, and person.

One word is said to *govern* another, when, by the power of the former, the latter is made to assume a particular form; for example, a certain case in declension, or mood in conjugation.

The *arrangement* of words consists in placing them in the proper order in which they should succeed each other.

## CHAPTER I.

### THE ARTICLE.

#### § 1. AGREEMENT AND GOVERNMENT.

##### RULE I.

The articles *ein* and *der* are generally used in German, as *a* and *the* in English. In German, moreover, they must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case, whether the noun be preceded by an adjective or not; as, *ein Mann*, a man; *ei'nem gu'ten Man'ne*, to a good man; *ei'ner treff'lichen Frau*, to an excellent woman; *das theu're An'denken ei'nes gelieb'ten Kin'des*, the dear remembrance of a beloved child.

*Obs. 1.* The article is never placed between the noun and its adjective, but always before the adjective; as, ein halber Bo'gen, half a sheet; ei'ne hal'be Stun'de, half an hour; ein hal'bes Jahr, half a year; die bei'den Län'der, both the countries; das gan'ze Jahr, all the year; der hal'be Tag, half the day.

*Obs. 2.* In compounds the article agrees with the gender of the last word; as, der Lie'besbrief, the love letter; die Wet'terfahne, the weathercock; das Stadt'haus, the town-house.

### Exercises.

Give me the book. Bring me a pen. Here is a knife. Lend him the penknife. He has the ink. Write an answer. I saw the friends.

to give, ge'ben, *irr.*

book, Buch, *n. 3. b. c.*

to bring, bring'en.

pen, Fe'der, *f. 1. c.*

here, hier.

knife, Mess'er, *n. 3. a. a.*

to lend, lei'hen.

penknife, Fe'dermesser, *n. 3. a. a.*

ink, Din'te, *f. 1. c.*

to write, schrei'ben.

answer, Ant'wort, *f. 1. d.*

to see, se'hen, *irr.*

friend, Freund, *m. 3. b. b.*

### RULE II.

The article *der* is used in German, though not in English, before most nouns in a universal sense, or where a common noun is, as it were, personified; as, das Le'ben, life; das Al'ter, age; der Früh'ling, spring; der Som'mer, summer; der Mensch, man; die Men'schen, men *or* mankind; also before all common nouns in the oblique cases; as, das Kind des Bru'ders, the brother's child.

Also before most adjectives taken substantively; as, das Gu'te, good *or* goodness; ein Gelehr'ter, a learned man; der Gelehr'te, the learned.

### RULE III.

Before proper names the article is generally omitted.

1. Before the proper names of *places*, the article is most commonly omitted, particularly in the nominative; as, London,

Petersburg, Euro'pa, Eng'land. But the following nouns are exceptions to this rule :

die Türkei', Turkey.

der Haag, the Hague.

die Lombardei', Lombardy.

die Schweiz, Switzerland.

die Niederlande, the Netherlands.

die Levante, the Levant.  
die Pfalz, the Palatinate.

Also the Germans say, die Stadt Lon'don, the city of London ; das Kö'nigreich Frank'reich, the kingdom of France, &c.

2. The proper names of *persons* generally take no article in the nominative, nor, when they have a change of termination, in the oblique cases ; as, Cicero's Rede, Cicero's Orations. In the oblique cases, when there is no change of termination, the article may be used ; as, Brutus tö'dete den Cä'sar, Brutus killed Cæsar.

In speaking familiarly of well-known persons, the definite article is sometimes used, even in the nominative case ; as, der Karl, Charles ; die Luise, Louisa.

A proper name when used as a common noun, requires the article before it ; as der Plä'te sei'nes Zeit'alters, the Plato of his age.

### Exercises.

Death itself is not so dreadful.  
Man is rational, man is mortal.  
He has a house in (the) town.  
We are going to (the) church.  
They come from (the) church.  
Neptune was the god of the seas.  
I am going to London.  
I come from Holland.  
Cicero was an excellent orator.  
The temple of Solomon was magnificent.

Death, Tod, *m.* 3. b. b  
itself, selbst.  
not, nicht.  
so, so.  
dreadful, fürch'terlich.  
man, Mensch, *m.* 2. b.  
rational, vernünftig.

mortal, ster'blich.  
house, Haus, *n.* 3. b. c.  
in, in. (*Dat.*)  
town, Stadt, *f.* 1. b.  
to go, ge'hen, followed by in.  
(*Acc.*)  
church, Kirche, *f.* 1. c.

to come, kom'men.  
 from, von. (*Dat.*)  
 Neptune, Neptun'.  
 was, war.  
 god, Gott, *m. 3. b. c.*  
 sea, Meer, *n. 3. b. b.*  
 to go, ge'hen.  
 to, nach.

to come, kom'men.  
 from, von.  
 Cicero, Ci'cero.  
 excellent, treff'lich.  
 orator, Red'ner, *m. 3. a. a.*  
 temple, Tem'pel, *m. 3. a. a.*  
 Solomon, Sa'lomo.  
 magnificent, prächt'ig.

## RULE IV.

The article is repeated before nouns of different genders; as, *der Vater, die Mutter und das Kind*, the father, mother, and child: but before nouns each of which requires the same article, it should be put only before the first; as, *der Rock und Hut*, the coat and hat.

Sometimes, however, the article is repeated before each of several nouns of the same gender, for the purpose of expressing the importance of each one of them: for example, when different subjects are enumerated in a title, or superscription; as in that of the fable, *Der Fuchs und der Rabe*, The Fox and the Raven.

## Exercises.

The man, woman, and child are gone out.  
 The hare and pigeon.  
 The father, mother, son, and daughter are in the country.  
 The sheep, cow, and dog.  
 I left the book and ruler upon the table.  
 Give me the pen and penknife.  
 The father and son (do) not<sup>3</sup> resemble<sup>1</sup> each<sup>2</sup> other<sup>2</sup>.

man, \*Mann, *m. 3. b. c.*  
 woman, Frau, *f. 1. d.*  
 child, Kind, *n. 3. b. c.*  
 to go out, aus'gehen, *irr.*  
 hare, Ha'se, *m. 2. a.*  
 pigeon, Lau'be, *f. 1. c.*  
 in, auf. (*Dat.*)  
 country, Land, *n. 3. b. c.*  
 sheep, Schaf, *n. 3. b. b.*  
 cow, Kuh, *f. 1. b.*  
 dog, Hund, *m. 3. b. b.*

to leave, las'sen, *irr.*  
 book, Buch, *n. 3. b. c.*  
 ruler, Lineal', *n. 3. b. b. (Acc.)*  
 upon, auf. (*Dat.*)  
 table, Tisch, *m. 3. b. b.*  
 pen, Fe'der, *f. 1. c.*  
 penknife, Fe'dermesser, *n. 3. a. a.*  
 father, \*Vater, *m. 3. a. a.*  
 son, Sohn, *m. 3. b. b.*  
 to resemble, glei'chen.  
 each other, sich.

## RULE V.

In an emphatic manner of speaking, the article is frequently omitted where it ought to be used, according to Rule II, and Rule IV, particularly in the plural number; as, *Gerech'te und Un'gerechte, Men'schen und Thie're fan'den in den Wel'sen ihr Grab*, The just and the unjust, men and beasts found their grave in the waves.

## RULE VI.

The article is omitted, whenever the substantive expresses a part of a thing, which in English is denoted by the word *some*, (answering to the French *du, de la, de l', des*); as, *Bring'en Sie mir Brod*, Bring me some bread; *Ha'ben Sie Papier', Din'te, &c.?* Have you some paper, ink, &c.?

## Exercises.

Have you eaten<sup>2</sup> bread<sup>1</sup> and drunk<sup>2</sup> water<sup>1</sup>?  
 Bring me some wine and water.  
 I have bought<sup>3</sup> some<sup>2</sup> silk<sup>2</sup> to-day<sup>1</sup>.  
 Give me some paper, ink, and pens.

bread, *Brod*, *n. 3. b. b.*  
 to eat, *es'sen*, *irr.*  
 water, *Was'ser*, *n. 3. a. a.*  
 to drink, *trin'k'en*, *irr.*  
 wine, *Wein*, *m. 3. b. b.*

to-day, *heu'te*.  
 silk, *Sei'de*, *f. 1.*  
 to buy, *kau'fen*.  
 to give, *ge'ben*, *irr.*  
 paper, *Papier'*, *n. 3. b. b.*

## RULE VII.

In some phrases the article is commonly omitted in German, where it is in English either expressed, or has a pronoun put in its place; as, *Überbring'er die'ses*, the bearer of this; in *bes'ter Ord'nung*, in the best order; *vor En'digung des Schau'spiels*, before the conclusion of the drama; *ich ha'be es in Hän'den*, I have it in my hands; *ich ha'be es vor Au'gen*, I have it before my eyes. — The same peculiarity is to be observed in regard to some adjectives and participles; as, *er'sterer*, the former; *let'zterer*, the latter; *besag'ter*, the aforesaid; *erwäh'n'ter*, or *gedach'ter*, the abovementioned; *genann'ter*, the



abovenamed; folgender, the following: also with respect to some proper names; as, *Ostindien*, the East Indies; *Westindien*, the West Indies.

## § 2. ARRANGEMENT.

The article must be put immediately before the noun to which it belongs, if the noun is not preceded by other words which qualify it; as, *ein Mann*, a man; *die Frau*, the woman. If the noun is preceded by other qualifying words, the article must be put before them. Thus, if the noun be preceded by an adjective, the article must be placed before the adjective, as, *der gute Mann*; and if the adjective is qualified by an adverb or a participial construction, the article precedes this; as, *eine sehr gute Frau*, a very good woman; *die alles überwiegende Liebe zum Ruhm*, the all-surpassing love of glory. If the adjective, for the sake of emphasis, is put after the noun in the way of apposition, the article immediately precedes the adjective, or the adverb, or participial construction, by which it is qualified; as, *Natur'*, *die heilige*, sacred nature; *unser Freund der schmerzlich vermisste*, our deeply regretted friend; *Krieg, der Länder verheerende*, war which desolates countries.

### Exercises.

Of the celebrated painter. An ill fed horse. The sea<sup>3</sup> connecting<sup>2</sup> (the) nations<sup>1</sup>. The<sup>2</sup> most<sup>3</sup> hearty<sup>3</sup> joy<sup>1</sup>. Forbearance, (*the*) never tiring. He was a victim of (*the*) passion, (*the*) deluding the heart, corrupting the taste, deranging the intellect.

celebrated, *berühmt'*.

painter, *Ma'ler, m. 3. a. a.*

ill, *schlecht*.

fed, *gesüttert*.

horse, *Pferd, n. 3. a. a.*

nation, *\*Volk, n. 3. b. c.*

to connect, *verbin'den*.

sea, *See, f.*

joy, *Freu'de, f.*

hearty, *herz'lich*.

forbearance, *lang'muth, f.*

never, *nie*.

to tire, *ermü'den*.

victim, *Op'fer, n.*

passion, *Lei'denschaft, f.*

to delude, *bethö'ren*.

heart, *Herz, n.*

to corrupt, *verder'ben*.

taste, *Geschmack', m. 3. b.*

to derange, *zerrüt'ten*.

intellect, *Geist, m. 3. b. c.*

## CHAPTER II.

## NOUNS.

## § 1. AGREEMENT AND GOVERNMENT.

## RULE I.

Two or more nouns are put in the same case,

1. When they are brought together only to show their common relation to another object; as, *Gerech'tigkeit, Wohlthätigkeit und Frö'migkeit sind die Merk'male ei'nes Christen*, Justice, charity, and piety are the characteristics of a Christian.

2. When they are put together to denote the same object, so that one of them either completes or explains\* the other; as, *der Mo'nat Mai*, the month of May; *der Rath dei'nes Bru'ders, des Rechts'gelehrten*, the advice of thy brother, the lawyer.

## RULE II.

When one noun is qualified by another, the latter is generally put in the genitive case; as, *die Freuden der Jugend*, the pleasures of youth; *die Frucht der Erkennt'niß des Gu'ten und Bö'sen*, the fruit of the knowledge of good and evil.

An exception is made when the noun which qualifies another, denotes the object, of which the other is a part, only in a general manner; especially, if the qualifying noun expresses an object which may be measured, weighed, or numbered. In such instances the qualifying noun remains in the nominative, singular or plural; as, *zehn Ellen Tuch* (instead of *Tuches*), ten yards of cloth; *ein Stück Brod* (instead of *Brodes*), a piece of bread; *ein Glas Wein* (instead of *Weines*), a glass of wine; *ein Dutzend Lichter*, a dozen candles.

---

\* When the preceding is explained by the subsequent noun, the latter is said to be *in apposition* with the former.

But the genitive is required if the qualifying noun is more exactly designated by a pronoun or an adjective; as, *zehn Ellen dieses Tuches*, ten yards of this cloth; *zwei Fässer guten Weines*, two casks of good wine.

*Observation.* Nouns of the masculine and neuter genders, expressing measure, weight, or number, remain, after numerals, in the nominative singular; as, *zwanzig Fuß* (instead of *Füße*) *lang'e*, twenty feet in length; *drei Zoll* (instead of *Zolle*) *breit*, three inches in breadth; *zwei Paar* (instead of *Paare*) *Strümpfe*, three pairs of stockings. Measures of time, as, *Jahr*, year, *Tag*, day, and names of coins, as, *Schilling*, shilling, are excepted.

### RULE III.

The genitive case is, frequently, supplied by the preposition *von*, of, with the dative. This is done,

1. When the article is excluded; as, *der nördliche Theil von England*, the northern part of England; *die Grenzen von Frankreich*, the boundaries of France.

2. When quality, condition, or proportion, is implied; as, *ein Mann von Verstande*, a man of sense; *ein Herr von edler Denkungsart*, a gentleman of a noble character; *eine Reise von zehn Meilen*, a journey of ten miles; *ein Schiff von zwei hundert Tonnen*, a ship of two hundred tons; *eine Summe von zwanzig Gulden und fünf Groschen*, a sum of twenty guilders and five groats; *ein Mann von achtzig Jahren*, a man of eighty years.

3. When the material is mentioned, of which any thing is made; as, *eine Uhr von Golde*, the same as, *eine goldene Uhr*, a gold watch; *ein Becher von Silber*, a silver cup; *ein Stuhl von Elfenbein*, an ivory chair.

4. Before the indefinite article, to denote character; as, *ein Abscheu von einem Menschen*, a horrible villain, (literally, a horror of a man); *ein Ausbund von einem ehrlichen Manne*, a pattern of an honest man.

5. To prevent an inelegant repetition of the same endings; as, *die Ursache von dem sonderbaren Betragen des Mannes*, the reason of the singular conduct of the man, — instead of *die Ursache des sonderbaren Betragens des Mannes*.

Sometimes it is indifferent, whether *von* be made use of, or the genitive case: for example, *den Schein von Redlichkeit haben*, or *den Schein der Redlichkeit haben*, to have the appearance of honesty; *der nördliche Theil von England*, or *der nördliche Theil Englands*, the northern part of England; *einer von meinen Freunden*, or *einer meiner Freunde*, one of my friends. But where the genitive is not distinguished by the article, or the termination, *von* must be employed. Before the article it is often superfluous; as, *den Schein von der Tugend haben*, to have the show of virtue. *Der Tugend*, as the genitive case, would be sufficient, without the preposition.

### Exercises.

The friends of right and order are contending against the passions and prejudices of the oppressors and the oppressed.

The town of Schwytz is the capital of the canton of Schwytz.

You confounded John the Baptist with John the Evangelist.

The merits of the first President of the United States.

What is the price of a hundred weight of lead?

I see a great number of children.

I want three cords of that wood.

He gave me a canister of genuine imperial tea.

I bought ten pounds of meat.

Natives of Europe displaced the aborigines of America.

He is a man of high rank and great pretensions, but no merit.

A helmet of steel with ornaments of silver.

Is he not a model of a good son?

friend, *Freund*, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.*

right, *Recht*, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.*

order, *Ordnung*, *f.* 1. *d.*

to contend, *kämpfen*.

against, *ge'gen*, (*Acc.*)

passion, *Leidenschaft*, *f.* 1. *d.*

and, *und*.

prejudice, *Vor'urtheil*, *n.* 3.

*b.* *b.*

oppressor, *Unterdrücker*, *m.* 3.

*a.* *a.*

oppressed, *unterdrückt*'.

town, *Städt'chen*, *m.* 3. *a.* *a.*

capital, *Haupt'ort*, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.*

canton, *Canton'*, *m.* 3. *b.* *b.*

to confound, *verwech'seln*.

John, *Johan'nes*.

Baptist, *Täu'fer*, *m.* 3. *a.* *a.*

with, *mit*. (*Dat.*)

Evangelist, *Evangelist'*, *m.* 2. *b.*

merit, *Verdienst'*, *n.* 3. *b.* *b.*

the first, *der erste*.

president, <i>Präsident'</i> , <i>m.</i> 2. b.	meat, <i>Fleisch</i> , <i>n.</i> 3. b. b.
united, <i>verei'nigt</i> .	native, <i>ein'geboren</i> .
state, <i>Staat</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. b. d.	Europe, <i>Euro'pa</i> .
price, <i>Preis</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.	to displace, <i>verdräng'en</i> .
hundred weight, <i>Cent'ner</i> , <i>m.</i>	aborigines, <i>Ur'bewohner</i> , <i>m.</i>
3. a. a.	3. a. a.
lead, <i>Blei</i> , <i>n.</i> 3. b. b.	man, <i>*Mann</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. b. c.
to see, <i>se'hen</i> .	high, <i>hoch</i> .
great, <i>groß</i> .	rank, <i>Rang</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. b.
number, <i>Meng'e</i> , <i>f.</i> 1. c.	pretension, <i>*An'spruch</i> , <i>m.</i> 3.
child, <i>Kind</i> , <i>n.</i> 3. b. e.	b. b.
to want, <i>brau'chen</i> .	but, <i>a'ber</i> .
cord, <i>Klaster</i> , <i>f.</i> 1. a.	no, <i>kein</i> .
wood, <i>Holz</i> , <i>n.</i> 3. b. e.	helmet, <i>Helm</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.
to give, <i>ge'ben</i> , <i>irr</i> .	steel, <i>Stahl</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.
canister, <i>Büch'se</i> , <i>f.</i> 1. c.	with, <i>mit</i> . ( <i>Dat.</i> )
genuine, <i>ächt</i> .	ornament, <i>Zie'rath</i> , <i>f.</i> 1. d.
imperial tea, <i>Kai'serthee</i> , <i>m.</i>	silver, <i>Sil'ber</i> , <i>n.</i> 3. a. a.
3. a.	not, <i>nicht</i> .
to buy, <i>kau'fen</i> .	model, <i>Mus'ter</i> , <i>n.</i> 3. a. a.
pound, <i>Pfund</i> , <i>n.</i> 3. b. b.	good, <i>gut</i> .
	son, <i>Sohn</i> , <i>m.</i> 3. b. b.

## RULE IV.

The genitive case often occurs, where there is apparently no word to govern it. Thus it expresses :

1. Relation of time. *Des Abends*, in the evening ; *des Mor'gens*,\* in the morning ; *des Mit'tags*, at noon ; *des Nachts*,† in the night ; *Sonn'abends*, on Saturday ; *Mon'tags*, on Monday ; *ei'nes Ta'ges*, one day, on a certain day ; *heu'tiges Ta'ges*, this day ; *ein'mal des Mo'nates*, once in a month ; *vier'mal des Jah'res*, four times in a year.

\* The same idiom prevails in the Greek language ; as, *ὄρθρου*, early in the morning ; *νυκτός*, in the night.

† Here the article corresponds with the termination, and not with the gender, of the substantive ; the addition of *s* (to *Nacht*, *f.* 1. b.) being formerly the characteristic of the genitive singular in all declensions.

2. Relation of place. Die'ses Or'tes, in this place; gehö'rigem Or'tes, in or at a proper place; al'ler Or'te, in all places, every where.

3. Way and manner. Gera'des (or gera'den) We'ges, straightways; ste'henden Fu'sses, immediately; die'ser Gestalt', in this manner; fol'gender Gestalt', in the following manner; mei'nes Theils, on my part; un'sern Theils, on our part; mei'nes Wis'sens, to my knowledge; mei'nes Bedünk'ens, in my opinion; ei'niger Ma'sen, in some measure; gewis'ser Ma'sen, in a certain degree; un'verrichteter Sach'e, not having effected one's purpose. Also the following phrases: Hung'ers ster'ben, to die of hunger; ei'nes schmerz'lichen To'des ster'ben, to die a painful death; der Hoff'nung le'ben, to live in hope; des Zu'trauens le'ben, to live with confidence, *that is*, to entertain a confident opinion with regard to a thing. With the verb sein: as, Wil'lens sein, to intend; der Mei'nung sein, to be of an opinion; des To'des sein, to perish.

## RULE V.

The accusative case is employed to denote time, both as to date and duration. — *Date*: den zeh'n'ten Tag nach der Schlacht, the tenth day after the battle; so war es das er'ste Jahr, thus it was (in) the first year; den neun'ten Ju'li, the ninth of July; vo'rigen Dien'stag, last Tuesday; drei mal die Woch'e (Acc.), three times a week. — *Duration*: ich bin den gan'zen Tag zu Hau'se gewe'sen, I have been at home the whole day; ich wer'de noch ei'nen Mo'nat in der Stadt blei'ben, I shall remain yet a month in town; verwei'sen Sie ei'nen Augenblick, stay one moment. The adverb lang, long, is frequently subjoined to mark the duration; as, zehn Jah're lang, for ten years.

After certain adjectives and verbs, signifying weight, measure, extent, age, price, value, such as, gros, great, breit, broad, schwer, heavy, wie'gen, to weigh, kost'en, to coast, the accusative follows. Ei'nen Fus breit, a foot broad; ei'nen Mo'nat alt, a month old; es wie'gt ei'nen Zent'ner, it weighs a hundred weight.

Space and motion are indicated by the accusative. Ei'nen lang'en Weg ge'h'en, to go a long way; den Berg hinu'ter lau'fen, to run down the mountain; er geht ei'nen gu'ten Schritt, he walks a good pace.

## RULE VI.

The gender is deviated from, when the meaning of the word is more regarded, than its grammatical nature. *Dieſes Frau'enzimmer iſt am ſchön'ſten, wenn ſie ſich nicht ſchminkt,* This lady is moſt handsome when ſhe does not paint herſelf. *Frau'enzimmer* is of the neuter gender, but the pronoun *ſie*, ſhe, is feminine, becauſe this is the gender which the ſubject naturally has. *Er liebt ſein Weib nicht, ſon'dern mißhandelt ſie,* He does not love his wife, but treats her ill. *Weib* is neuter, and the feminine *ſie* answers to it.

## RULE VII.

The English often admits a different number, in the verb, from what its ſubject, according to ſtrict grammar, would require; as, "All the company *were* preſent;" "The army of martyrs *praiſe* thee." The German, however, does not allow this deviation, but always requires the verb to agree in number with its ſubject; as, *die ganze Geſellſchaft war zugegen.*

On the other hand, in German the ſingular number is ſometimes uſed collectively, in reference to more than one ſubject, where in English the plural would be employed. For example: *Zehn Menſchen ha'ben ihr Leben ein'gebüßt,* Ten perſons have loſt their *life*; according to the English, *lives*. *Mehr als hundert Bür'ger ha'ben ih'ren Na'men unterzeich'net,* More than a hundred citizens have ſubſcribed their *name*, — in English, *names*. *Die ro'the, blau'e, und gel'be Far'be,* the red, blue, and yellow *color*, — in English, *colors*. *Die Franzö'ſiſche und Italiä'n'iſche Spra'che,* the French and Italian *language*, — in English, *languages*. In theſe two laſt examples, the German idiom may be accounted for by the figure ellipſis, thus; *die ro'the (Far'be), blau'e (Far'be), und gel'be Far'be,* the red (color), the blue (color), and the yellow color; *Die Franzö'ſiſche (Spra'che) und Italiä'n'iſche Spra'che,* The French (language), and Italian language.

## Exercises.

The people call them time-pleaſers, flatterers. We are wholly of your opinion. He walks ten miles, twice a day. Their faces are turned<sup>3</sup> to<sup>1</sup> (the) Eaſt<sup>2</sup>. In the forenoon I am

commonly at home, but in the afternoon I<sup>2</sup> ride out. He did<sup>1</sup> not<sup>2</sup> yield<sup>1</sup> a<sup>2</sup> finger's breadth (*a finger broad.*)

people, *Volk, n. 3. b. c.	East, Mor'gen, m. 3. a. a.
to call, nen'nen, mix.	to turn, wen'den, mix.
time-pleaser, Wet'terfahne, f.	forenoon, Vor'mittag, m. 3.
1. c.	b. b.
flatterer, Schmeich'ler, m. 3.	commonly, gewöhn'lich.
a. a.	at home, zu Hau'fe.
wholly, ganz.	afternoon, Nach'mittag, m. 3.
opinion, Mei'nung, f. 1. d.	b. b.
to walk, ge'hen, irr.	to ride out, aus'reiten, irr.
mile, Mei'le, f. 1. c.	to yield, wei'chen, irr.
day, Tag, m. 3. b. b.	not a, kein.
face, Gesicht', n. 3. b. c.	finger, Fing'er, m. 3. a. a.
to, nach. (Dat.)	broad, breit.

## § 2. ARRANGEMENT.

### RULE I.

The noun, in the nominative case, being the *subject* of a sentence, is generally placed before the verb.

*Note.* — *The subject* is to be distinguished from *the object*: the former governs the verb, and the latter is governed by the verb: for instance, *Der Va'ter liebt sei'nen Sohn*, The father loves his son. Here, *der Va'ter* is *the subject*, which governs the verb, that is to say, the verb must agree with it, in number and person; *sei'nen Sohn'* is *the object*, which is governed by the verb, because it must, in compliance with the nature of the verb, stand in a particular case.

### *Exceptions to the first Rule.*

The subject is put after the verb,

1. In a direct question; as, *Schreibt der Mann?* Does the man write? *Schreibt*, the verb — *der Mann*, the subject. It is the same, when the question begins with an interrogative pronoun, or interrogative adverb; as, *Was sagt der Va'ter?* What says the father? *Wel'ches Buch liest der Schü'ler?* Which



book does the pupil read? Warum' lacht der Kna'be? Why does the boy laugh? Wesswe'gen weint die Schwester? What does the sister weep for?

2. When instead of the subject, some other word or phrase, generally for the purpose of emphasis, is placed at the head of the sentence; particularly in the following cases:

a. When the object is placed at the head of a sentence. For instance; Die'ses Glück genießt' der Tugendhafte, *This happiness the virtuous man enjoys.* Der Tugendhafte, is the subject, which follows after the verb genießt'; because the object, die'ses Glück, begins the sentence.

b. When the dative or accusative case of the person stands first; as, Dem Menschen ist das Leben theu'er, *To man life is dear;* Die'sen Kna'ben hat mein Freund die Französische Sprache gelehrt', *To this boy my friend taught the French language.* The sentences here begin with a case of person, and the subject is found after the verb. This, and the preceding exception, may perhaps be together comprehended in these words, viz. When any oblique case of declension begins a sentence, the subject must come after the verb.

c. When an adjective or pronoun, belonging to the subject or object, begins the sentence. Gut ist der Wein zwar, a'ber auch theu'er, *The wine indeed is good, but also dear.* The adjective gut, in this instance, belongs to the subject, and, beginning the sentence, displaces the subject, der Wein. Gut fin'det mein Vater den Wein, &c. *My father finds the wine good.* Here gut belongs to the object, den Wein, and has the same influence on the subject. The same is also to be observed of the pronoun, when it belongs to the subject or object; as, Mein ist das Haus, *Mine is the house;* mein belongs to das Haus, which is the subject, and is put after the verb.

d. When the pronoun es begins the sentence: for example, Es kömmt der Sprech'er, *The speaker is coming;* Es sa'gen die Leute, *People say.*

e. When an infinitive is put at the beginning, either as a member of the sentence, or for the sake of emphasis: for example, Um Ruhe zu genie'sen, müssen die Gesetze erfüllt'

wer'den, In order to enjoy peace, *must the laws* be fulfilled; Gehor'chen wol'len die Leu'te nicht, *Obey will the people* not; — for, the laws must, the people will not.

f. The participles, with an adverbial power, to express the manner of being, acting, or suffering, and participles generally, when placed at the beginning of a sentence, cause the subject to follow the verb. For instance: Weinend sprach der Va'ter, *Weeping* the father spoke; Trauernd ging'en die Gefähr'ten zu dem Grab'male, *Mourning* the companions went to the sepulchre. Thus with the past participle; Geliebt' und an'gebeter versies' der Held sei'ne Mit'bürger und eilte in das Schlacht'feld, neu'e Lor'bern zu erring'en, *Beloved and adored*, the hero left his fellow citizens and hastened into the field of battle, to obtain new laurels.

g. The subject must come after the verb, when an adverb or certain cases of nouns used in an adverbial signification, or absolute cases, commence the sentence. Bald kömmt der Win'ter, *Soon* winter comes; Schnell geht die Zeit dahin', *Quickly* time passes; Unglücklicher Wei'se traf das Loos sei'nen Bru'der, *Unfortunately* the lot fell upon his brother.

h. When a preposition, with its case, takes the lead, Mit freu'diger Mie'ne ging'en die Ein'wohner ih'rem Befrei'er entgegen, *With a joyful countenance* the inhabitants went to meet their deliverer. When, however, the preposition, with its case, forms an exclamation, it is considered as an interjection, and does not move the subject from its place; as, Bei mei'ner Eh're, der Mensch ist un'schuldig, Upon my honor, the man is innocent.

3. The following conjunctions have the same effect, in transposing the subject, when they commence the sentence: but they may themselves be placed after the verb. Also, signifying, so, thus; daher', thence, therefore; darauf, thereupon, then; darum', for that reason; demnach', consequently; sonach', accordingly; dann, then; des'halb, des'hal'ben, for that reason; des'wegen, on that account; des'glei'chen, likewise; doch, yet, still, (it does not always affect the situation of the subject); fer'ner, moreover; folg'lich, consequently; gleich'wohl, nevertheless; indes'sen, in the meanwhile; jezt, now; kaum, scarcely; mithin', consequently; noch, yet, nor; nun, now; theils, partly; so, either meaning

so, or beginning the subsequent member of a sentence; *ü'ber-*  
*dies, auferdem'*, besides; *ü'brigens*, in other respects; *da*,  
 then (which must always precede the verb). — When the con-  
 junctions, *auch*, also; *entwe'der*, either; *zwar*, indeed, are in  
 the beginning of the sentence, the subject may be put after  
 the verb, by which means a stress falls either upon the sub-  
 ject, or the verb; as, *Auch rief das Volk*, The people even  
 exclaimed; *Entwe'der liest der Kna'be, o'der er schreibt*, The  
 boy either reads or writes; *Zwar schein't die Son'ne, a'ber*  
 &c., The sun indeed shines, but, &c. When the emphasis is  
 on the subject, it should remain before the verb; as, *Auch das*  
*Volk rief*, Even the people cried out. — In old and formal lan-  
 guage, the subject is sometimes placed after the verb, when  
*und*, and, precedes. *Und hat Beklag'ter erwiesen*, And the  
 defendant has proved. Here *Beklag'ter*, the subject, is after  
 the verb.

4. In quoting, the subject is put after *sa'gen*, or any simi-  
 lar verb, when part of the quotation goes before; as, *Das*  
*Glück, sagt der We'ise, ist verrä'therisch*, 'Fortune,' says the wise  
 man, is treacherous.

5. The subject always follows the verb, in the subsequent  
 member of a sentence.

*Note.* — The *subsequent member* of a sentence is that, which  
 comes after one beginning with a relative pronoun (such as  
*was*, what), or a relative adverb (such as *wo*, where), or a  
 conditional, causal, or consecutive conjunction (such as *wenn*,  
 if; *weil*, because; *da*, when). Examples: *Was der Va'ter*  
*sagt, thut der Sohn*, what the father says, the son does. The  
 first member of this sentence begins with the relative pronoun,  
*was*; in the second or subsequent member, therefore, *the sub-*  
*ject, der Sohn*, stands after the verb, *thut*. *Wo das Aas ist,*  
*versam'meln sich die Ad'ler*, Where the carrion is, the eagles are  
 collected. Here, the first member commences with the rela-  
 tive adverb, *wo*; and the subject in the following member, is  
 after the verb.\* *Wenn das Wet'ter gün'stig bleibt, so kommt*

---

\* Strictly speaking, we ought, in the second, here called  
 the subsequent, member, to supply some demonstrative word,  
 corresponding to the relative, in the first; namely *das*, in  
 reference to the preceding *was*; and *da*, in correspondence

mein Freund in we'nigen Ta'gen, If the weather continues favorable, my friend comes (*or will come*) in a few days. This sentence also consists of two members: *the first*, if the weather continues favorable; *the second*, my friend comes, or will come; in the latter, which is the *subsequent member*, the subject is placed after the verb. So likewise, Weil die Zeit schnell verstreicht', so benüzt' der Weise je'den Augenblick, Because time passes quickly, the wise man turns every moment to account. Here are again two members, *the antecedent*, because time passes; and *the subsequent*, the wise man turns every moment to account. The subject in the latter, of course, stands after the verb. Da Cäsar sich näherte, entwich'en die Fein'de, When Cæsar approached (*antecedent*), the enemy withdrew (*subsequent*). — The subsequent member, after an antecedent, with a conjunction of the description alluded to, frequently begins with the particle so, concerning which it is proper to refer to Book II. Ch. 8. § 1. This particle serves as a connecting link, between the antecedent and subsequent members.\* For example: Wäre der Fluß schiff'bar, (or Wenn der Fluß schiff'bar wäre,) so würde der Han'del blühen, If the river were navigable, trade would flourish. — The conjunction desto, and also je, when equivalent to desto, constitute a subsequent member. Ex. Je mehr du fragst, desto we'niger wer'de ich ant'worten, The more you ask, the less I shall answer. — A subsequent member is likewise produced, when an infinitive begins the sentence, expressing purpose and design. Um reich zu wer'den, unterzucht' sich der Mensch oft den größ'ten Mü'h/seligkeiten, In order to grow rich, man undergoes the greatest hardships. "Man undergoes," &c. is the subsequent member, in which the subject must be put after the verb.

In order to lay more stress upon the subject in the subsequent member of the sentence, it is sometimes, by way of exception, placed after the verb. Ex. Herr, wärest du hier

---

with wo. The subsequent member may, perhaps, in every instance, be said to depend upon connecting words, which are understood.

\* Such a link between the antecedent and subsequent members, may always be supposed; and if not expressed, it is understood.

gewe'sen, mein Bru'der wã're nicht gestor'ben, Sir, if thou hadst been here, my brother would not have died.

6. The last instance, in which the verb precedes the subject, is where the conjunction wenn, if, is to be supplied; as, Wã're mein Va'ter hier gewe'sen, so wã're das Un'glück nicht gesche'hen, Had my father been here, the misfortune would not have happened. Wã're mein Va'ter hier gewe'sen, stands for, wenn mein Va'ter hier gewe'sen wã're, if my father had been here; and the subject, as appears, is after the verb.

### Exercises.

The enemy approached the suburbs.

(Do) you<sup>2</sup> see<sup>1</sup> this temple?

Why did our teacher change his plan?

This measure nobody can excuse.

The courageous, God assists.

Short was his life, but eternal are his deeds.

The command was given.

They never saw him weep.

The Spartan died composed and smiling.

Man commonly believes.

Without altercation, they divided the prize.

We therefore determined to stay.

The papers indeed mention it, but I do not believe it.

Not every thing which glistens, is gold, says the proverb.

Because he saw it in others, he imitated it.

If you had not walked so slowly, you would have overtaken us.

enemy, Feind, *m.*

to approach, na'hen. (*Dat.*)

suburb, \*Vor'stadt, *f.* 1. b.

to see, se'hen, *irr.*

temple, Tem'pel, *m.* 3. a. a.

why, warum'.

to change, an'dern.

teacher, Leh'rer, *m.* 3. a. a.

plan, Plan, *m.* 3. b. b.

measure, Mas'regel, *f.*

nobody, nie'mand.

I can, ich kann, *mix.*

to excuse, entschul'digen.

courageous, mu'thig.

to assist, hel'sen, *irr.* (*Dat.*)

God, Gott.

short, kurz.

life, le'ben.

but, a'ber.

eternal, e'wig.

deed, That, *f.* 1. d.

command, Befehl', *m.*

to be given, erge'hen, <i>irr.</i>	to mention, erwäh'nen.
to weep, wei'nen.	indeed, zwar.
they, man.	but, a'ber.
never, nie.	to believe, glau'ben.
composed, gefasst'.	not, nicht.
smiling, läch'elnd.	every thing, alles.
to die, ster'ben, <i>irr.</i>	to glisten, glän'zen.
the Spartan, der Sparta'ner.	gold, Gold.
commonly, gewöhnlich.	to say, sa'gen.
to believe, glau'ben.	proverb, Sprich'wort, <i>n.</i>
man, der Mensch.	because, weil.
without, oh'ne.	in, von.
altercation, Strei'tigkeit.	others, an'dere.
to divide, thei'len.	to imitate, nach'machen. (See
prize, Preis, <i>m. 3. b. b.</i>	Book II. Ch. 5. § 2. F.)
therefore, daher'.	slowly, lang'sam.
to determine, beschlie'sen, <i>irr.</i>	to walk, ge'hen, <i>irr.</i> (with sein.)
to stay, blei'ben.	to overtake, ein'holen.
paper, Zei'tung, <i>f. 1. d.</i>	

## RULE II.

The Substantive, being the *object*, is generally put after the verb: for example, *Ich lie'be mei'nen Va'ter*, I love my father; *mei'nen Va'ter* is the object.

*Exceptions:*

1. When a stress is laid upon the object, it may be placed at the beginning of the sentence; as, *Den Homer' le'se ich mit Vergnü'gen und Bewun'derung*, *Homer* I read with pleasure and admiration.

2. In certain cases the verb is removed to the end of the sentence; \* then the object naturally comes before it.

## RULE III.

The Substantive in the *Genitive* case, not being the object, †

\* See Book II. Ch. 5. § 2.

† The genitive may be the object, viz. when it is governed by the verb. See Book II. Ch. 5. § 1. F. Rule II.

generally stands after the word by which it is governed; as, *der Sohn mei'nes Freun'des*, the son of my friend.

But it is found,

1. Before the substantive that governs it, when it bears an emphasis. *Des Vä'ters Se'gen bau'et den Kin'dern Hän'ser, a'ber der Mut'ter Fluch reißet sie nie'der*, A father's blessing builds houses for the children, but a mother's curse pulls them down.

When the noun in the genitive precedes the governing word, the latter loses its article; for example, *des Le'bens Freu'de*, life's joy; for, *die Freu'de des Le'bens*, the joy of life. It may happen that the governing word, though put after the genitive, keeps the article; but then the genitive is deprived of it; as, *Volks die Meng'e*, a multitude of people; *Freu'de die Fül'le*, abundance of joy. This, however, is not to be extended beyond the phrases established by custom.

The position of the genitive, before the governing word, should be easy and unaffected; otherwise it is better to leave that case in its natural place. Thus two, or more, genitive cases, when transposed, produce a heavy and unharmonious sound, as in this example; *des gro'sen Philoso'phen Kant' Le'ben*; better thus, *das Le'ben des gro'sen Philoso'phen Kant'*, the life of the great philosopher Kant. And it is worse, when of two genitives, before a third word, one governs the other; as, *des Kö'nigs der Frank'en Krö'nung*, instead of *die Krö'nung des Kö'nigs der Frank'en*, the coronation of the king of the Franks.

2. Before adjectives; as, *des Verbrech'ens schul'dig*, guilty of the crime; *des Lo'bes wür'dig*, worthy of the praise; *der Sor'ge un'werth*, undeserving of the care.

3. Before some prepositions.\*

#### RULE IV.

The *Dative* has its place commonly after the verb, and if there be an accusative case besides, it generally depends on

\* See Book II. Ch. 7. § 2.

emphasis or euphony whether the dative or accusative is to be put first. The emphasis is generally on the last word. Ex. *Er gibt dem Man'ne das Buch*, He gives the book to the man, or *Er gibt das Buch dem Man'ne*.

When it is to be marked with peculiar emphasis, it should be moved from its place, and stand before the verb; as, *Dem Man'ne gibt er das Buch*. If the object be a monosyllable, or a short word, and the dative case consist of more syllables, the former should be put first, because a long word commonly finishes the sentence better than a short one; for example, *Er sag'te dies dem Va'ter*, He told this to the father.

## RULE V.

Two accusatives are sometimes used after the same verb, one expressing a person, and the other a thing. The former is then placed in the same manner as the dative, according to the preceding rule. Examples: *Ich nen'ne den Mann Freund*, I call the man friend; *Ich hei'ße ei'nen sol'chen Mann ei'nen Hel'den*, I call such a man a hero; *Er lehrt den Sempro'nus die Rech'enkunst*, He teaches Sempronius arithmetic.

When the subject, the object, and the case of person meet together, either before or after the verb, they commonly follow in this order: subject, case of person, object. For example, before the verb; *Da der Feld'herr dem Fein'de den Frie'den an'geboten hat*, Since the general has offered peace to the enemy. After the verb; *Auf die'se Wei'se verschaff'te Cä'sar sei'nen Freun'den Genug'thuung und benahm' sei'nen Fein'den al'le Hoff'nung zur Nach'e*, In this manner Cæsar procured satisfaction for his friends, and deprived his enemies of all hope of revenge.

## RULE VI.

The *Dative* and *Accusative* cases stand before the adjectives,\* by which they are governed.†

## RULE VII.

The *Vocative* case may be put either before or after the verb, at the option of the speaker.

\* See Book II. Ch. 3. § 1. Rule v. — 2 and 3.

† Compare Book II. Ch. 3. § 2. Rule ii.



## Exercises.

Give me the book. Such men I like. The fruits of the earth. Love's labor is in vain. He is tired of life.

He mentioned it to me afterward, but to her he entrusted it first.

When they had told me every thing, I<sup>2</sup> appointed<sup>1</sup> them a time of meeting.

to give, ge'ben, *irr.*

book, \*Buch, *n. 3. b. e.*

such, sol'cher-e-es.

man, \*Mann, *3. b. e.*

to like, lie'ben.

fruit, \*Frucht, *f. 1. b.*

earth, Er'de, *f.*

love, lie'be, *f.*

labor, Mü'he, *f.*

in vain, umsonst'.

life, le'ben, *n. 3. a.*

tired, ü'berdrüssig. (*Gen.*)

to mention, erwäh'nen.

afterwards, spä'terhin.

but, a'ber.

to entrust, vertrau'en.

first, zuerst'.

when, nachdem'.

every thing, al'les.

to tell, sa'gen.

to appoint, bestim'men.

time, Zeit, *f. 1. d.*

meeting, Zusam'menkunft, *f. 1.*

## CHAPTER III.

## ADJECTIVES.

## § 1. AGREEMENT AND GOVERNMENT.

## RULE I.

Every adjective may be used, not only as such, to qualify a noun, as, die ho'he Ul'me, the high elm; but also as an adverb, to qualify either a verb, or another adjective; as, Diese Pflanze wächst langsam, This plant grows slowly; ein gründlich gelehrter Mann, a thoroughly learned man.

## RULE II.

Every adjective when used in its declinable form must agree with its substantive in gender, number, and case.

This rule applies to the adjective not only in its first, or positive, state, but also in the degrees of comparison. The substantive is sometimes understood, yet the agreement remains: for example, *der gute Mann, und der böse* (Mann understood), the good man, and the bad (man); *den zwölften dieses Monats*, the twelfth of this month (Tag, day, understood); *Bessere Menschen, herzlichere und treuere habe ich nirgends gefunden*, Better men, more hearty and faithful ones, I have nowhere found.

#### RULE III.

Every adjective must be used in its declinable form, whenever it is in its natural position, i. e. immediately before the substantive which it qualifies. The substantive itself may be either expressed or understood. Examples: *der tapfere Mann*, the brave man; *eine rothe Rose*, a red rose; *die freien und guten Bürger*, the free and good citizens; *Er erhielt eine Antwort, aber nicht eine genehmigende, sondern eine abschlagende* (Antwort understood), He received an answer, yet not a permitting but a refusing one.

In all other cases the adjective is used in its simple, indeclinable form; as, *die Bürger, gut und frei*, the citizens, good and free; *Der Mann ist tapfer*, The man is brave; *Die Früchte werden reif*, The fruits become ripe; *Sie wehrten sich tapfer*, They defended themselves bravely.

#### RULE IV.

Cardinal numbers are generally not declined, except *ein, eine, ein, or einer, eine, eines*, one, and the other cardinal numbers when they do not stand before nouns but take the place of nouns; as, *Er fährt mit vier Pferden*, He drives with four horses; *Er fährt mit vieren*, He drives with four. *Ein, eine, ein*, is used when it precedes a noun; as, *Ich kaufte ein Pfund Zucker*, I bought one pound of sugar: *einer, eine, eines*, is used when it takes the place of a noun; as, *Ich kaufte nur eines* (or *eins*), I bought only one.

#### RULE V.

Some adjectives govern cases.

1. The following adjectives, most of which are in English

followed by *of*, govern the genitive; *bedürftig*, in want of; *bedürftig*, in need of; *bewußt*', conscious, (with the reciprocal dative, and the genitive of the object; as, *Ich bin mir der Sache nicht bewußt*', I am not conscious of that thing); *ein'gedenk*', mindful; *fähig*, capable of, (it is also joined with the preposition *zu*); *froh*, glad, satisfied, (also with the prep. *ü'ber*, and the accusative); *gewahr*', informed of, aware of, (also with the accusative: it generally occurs with the verb *wer'den*, to become; as, *Er ward der Gefahr*' [genitive], or, *die Gefahr*' [accusative], *gewahr*', He perceived the danger); *gewâr'tig*, expecting; *gewiß*', certain; *gewöhnt*', accustomed to, (also with the accusative); *finn'dig*, skilled in, experienced in; *los*, free from, rid of; *mäch'tig*, in possession of; *mü'de*, tired of; *quitt*, rid of; *satt*, tired of; *schul'dig*, guilty; *theil'haft*, partaking of; *ü'berdrüssig*, tired with; *verdâch'tig*, suspected; *verlu'ftig*, having forfeited *or* lost; *voll*, full of, (also with *von*); \* *werth*, worth, deserving; *wür'dig*, worthy; and the negatives corresponding to these adjectives, as, *un'würdig*, *un'kundig*, *un'bewußt*, *un'gewöhnt*, *un'fähig*, &c.

2. The following adjectives, most of which are in English followed by *to*, govern the dative case; *ähn'lich*, like, resembling; *an'gemessen*, adapted, suitable; *an'nehm*, agreeable; *bekannt*', known to; *bequem*', convenient; *bang'e*, anxious, fearful, (as, *Mir ist bang'e*, I am fearful); *beschwer'lich*, troublesome; *dien'lich*, serviceable; *furcht'bar*, formidable; *gehör'sam*, obedient; *gemäß'*, suited to; *getreu*', faithful; *gewo'gen*, inclined to, favorable; *gleich*, like; *na'he*, near; *verwand't*', related to; *nö'thig*, necessary; *nüt'slich*, useful; *schâd'lich*, hurtful; *zu'trâglich*, conducive, useful; and others, signifying advantage, or disadvantage. — In many instances, the above adjectives take after them prepositions governing their appropriate cases; such as, *für*, for; *ge'gen*, towards, against; *zu*, to, &c.

3. Those which imply measure, weight, age, value, generally with a numeral preceding, require the accusative, and are put after the noun in their simple (indeclinable) form. Of

---

\* Sometimes the substantive, dependent on *voll*, remains undeclined after it; as, *voll Muth*, instead of *Mu'thes*, full of courage.

this kind are *lang*, long; *breit*, broad; *hoch*, high; *tief*, deep; *groß*, great; *schwer*, heavy; *alt*, old; *werth*, worth; *schul'dig*, indebted, owing. For example: *zehn Fuß lang*, ten feet long; *zwölf Pfund schwer*, weighing twelve pounds; *funfzig Jahr alt*, fifty years old; *drei Tha'ler werth*, worth three dollars; *Er ist viel Geld schul'dig*, He owes a great deal of money. *lang*, joined in this manner to words denoting time, expresses duration: as, *zehn Jahre lang*, for ten years; *ei'ne Zeit lang*, for a time.

*Observations.* (1.) The cardinal numbers, and the words *viel*, much *or* many, and *wen'ig*, little *or* few, govern the genitive; and are always put after it. They are frequently combined with the personal pronouns; as, *un'ser zwölf*, twelve of us; *ei'rer zwanzig*, twenty of you; *ihr'er dreißig*, thirty of them: *un'ser vie'le*, many of us; *ihr'er wen'ige*, few of them.

(2.) The word *all*, in English, commonly has the definite article after it; as, *all the world*. — *All*, in German, is commonly without the article; as, *al'le Welt*, all the world; *al'les Geld*, all the money. There is only one construction in which this word requires the article, namely, before possessive pronouns, when used substantively; as, *al'le die Mei'nigen*, all my friends; *al'les das Un'srige*, all we possess. The article may also stand before adjectives, which are employed as substantives; as, *al'le die Gu'ten*, all the good people; *al'les das Bö'se*, all the evil. Otherwise it is not necessary, except when a relative follows, nor even then always; as, *al'le die nach'theiligen Folgen, wel'che daraus' entstan'den*, all the disadvantageous consequences, which arose from it. The truth is that in the instances first adduced, the article should not be considered as belonging to *al'le*, but to the possessive pronouns. — *All* sometimes follows the word to which it belongs: for example, *die Bei'spiele al'le*, all the examples; *die Thrä'nen al'le*, all the tears; *von den ü'brigen al'len*, of all the rest; *die'ses al'les*, all this, for *al'les die'ses*; *das al'les*, for *al'les das*, all that. It is always put after the personal and relative pronouns; as, *wir al'le*, all of us; *sie al'le*, all of them; *die Leu'te wel'che al'le zuge'gen wa'ren*, the people who all were present.

## Exercises.

After Alfred the Great, succeeded his son, Edward the elder.

The Romans, brave in war, and wise in their legislation.

Ten dollars Saxon money are eighteen florins Rhenish.

Although conscious<sup>3</sup> of<sup>1</sup> his<sup>1</sup> guilt<sup>2</sup>, he<sup>5</sup> was<sup>4</sup> incapable of remorse.

It is pleasant to the eye, but dangerous to the soul.

Three good leagues off.

He pleased all of us.

They are stirring (*stir themselves*) by thousands.

after, nach. (*Dat.*)

great, groß.

to succeed, fol'gen.

son, Sohn, *m. 3. b. b.*

old, \*alt.

the Roman, der Rö'mer.

brave, tap'fer.

in, in. (*Dat.*)

war, Krieg, *m. 3. b. b.*

wise, wei'se.

in, in. (*Dat.*)

legislation, Gesetz'gebung, *f.*

1. d.

dollar, Tha'ler, *m. 3. a. a.*

Saxon, Säch'sisch.

florin, Gul den, *m. 3. a. a.*

Rhenish, Rhei'nisch.

although, wiewohl'.

guilt, Schuld, *f. 1. d.*

conscious, bewusst'.

incapable, unfähig.

remorse, Reu'e, *f. 1.*

pleasant, an'genehm.

but, a'ber.

dangerous, gefähr'lich.

good, gut.

league, Stun'de, *f. 1. c.*

off, weit.

to please, gefallen, *irr. (Dat.)*

to stir, sich rüh'ren.

by, zu. (*Dat.*)

## § 2. ARRANGEMENT.

## RULE I.

The place of the adjective is before the substantive; as, der schön'e Tag, the fine day.

Except:

1. When it is joined to a proper name, as a title of distinction; as, Karl der Küh'ne, Charles the Bold; Alexan'der der Große, Alexander the Great.

2. When it is connected with the substantive by a verb; in this case the adjective is put after the verb; as, *Der Mann ist gut*; or before it with an emphasis, *Gut ist der Mann*.

3. When the adjective stands as it were in apposition to the noun; for example, *der Held, mächt'ig im Fel'de und weis'e im Ra'the*, the hero, powerful in the field, and wise in the council. This stands for *wel'cher mächt'ig im Fel'de, und weis'e im Ra'the ist*, who is powerful in the field, and wise in the council.

4. Adjectives derived from names of places and countries are, in certain phrases, put after substantives; as, *zehn Pfund Eng'lish*, ten pounds English; *zwan'zig Mark Lü'beckisch*, twenty marks of Lubeck; *hun'dert Fuß Rhe'in'ländisch*, one hundred feet Rhenish.

#### RULE II.

The numerals are placed before other adjectives, preceding a substantive; as, *Drei gu'te, ehr'liche Men'schen*, three good, honest men.

When cardinal and ordinal numbers meet before a substantive, it depends on the emphasis, which of them is to be put first: whether, for instance, it be, *die drei er'sten*, the three first; or, *die er'sten drei*, the first three. This applies also to the words, *die an'dern*, the others, *die leß'ten*, the last, and generally to adjectives in the superlative degree, which may be put either before or after the cardinals. Examples, *die drei leß'ten*, or, *die leß'ten drei*, the three last; *die vier an'dern*, or, *die an'dern vier*, the other four; *die sechs bes'ten*, or, *die bes'ten sechs*, the six best; *die zehn schön'sten*, or, *die schön'sten zehn*, the ten finest. It is to be noticed that the emphasis, in these instances, falls upon the word, which is put last. — The words *al'le*, all; *man'che*, several; *vie'le*, many; *je'der*, each, stand before both the numerals, and the adjectives.

#### RULE III.

Adjectives usually follow the cases they govern; as, *die'ser Eh're wür'dig*, worthy of this honor; *des Verbrech'ens schul'dig*, guilty of the crime; *dem Va'ter äh'n'lich*, like the father; *zehn El'sen lang*, ten yards long; *drei Fuß breit*, three feet broad;

sechs Pfund schwer, weighing six pounds. They are likewise frequently put after, when they are connected with nouns that are governed by prepositions; as, *Es ist zur Unterhaltung sehr nützlich*, It is very useful for entertainment; *Selbstzufriedenheit ist zur Glückseligkeit unentbehrlich*, Self-content is indispensably necessary to happiness.

### Exercises.

An old man, as vigorous and active as a youth.

Their attacks were violent, but calm was his reply.

Six beautiful, spirited horses.

The three most dangerous.

Many honest men.

Tired of the confusion. Recollecting his menaces.

old, alt.

as, ebenso.

vigorous, kräftig.

active, thätig.

as, als.

youth, Jüngling, *m.*

attack, Angriff, *m.* 3. b. b.

violent, heftig.

but, aber.

calm, gelassen.

reply, Antwort, *f.*

beautiful, schön.

spirited, feurig.

horse, Ross, *n.* 3. b. b.

dangerous, gefährlich.

honest, ehrlich.

confusion, Verwirrung, *f.*

tired, überdrüssig.

menace, Drohung, *f.* 1. d.

recollecting, ein'gedenk.

## CHAPTER IV.

### PRONOUNS.

#### § 1. AGREEMENT AND GOVERNMENT.

##### RULE I.

Pronouns agree with the substantives to which they are prefixed, in gender, number, and case; and the relative corresponds with the antecedent substantive to which it belongs, in gender and number, the case depending upon other circumstances; as, *Glaubet uns, eu'ren Freunden, de'ren Aufrichtigkeit ihr kennt*, Believe us, your friends, whose sincerity you know. Here, the genitive *de'ren*, whose, depends upon *Aufrichtigkeit*, sincerity.

The *personal* pronouns are not combined with substantives, as the others are, but only bear a reference to them, and, in that reference, they agree with them in number, and the third also in gender; as, *Ich will euch und ihm gleich wohl*, (*literally*, I will to you and to him equally well), I am equally a friend to you and to him. This is likewise to be observed of pronouns demonstrative and interrogative, when they stand by themselves; and the connexion between the *relative*, and its antecedent, is of a similar description; as, *Welcher von beiden hat es gesagt?* Which one of the two has said it? *Derjenige, welcher dir gegenüber sitzt*, The one who sits opposite to you.

*Observations.* — 1. Speaking of any inanimate object, the English use the neuter of the pronoun of the third person, *it*, all such objects being considered as of the neuter gender; the Germans, having three distinct genders, even for lifeless things, apply the pronouns accordingly. *Hier ist ein neuer Hut*, Here is a new hat; *Er ist sehr fein*, (He) It is very fine; *Wo haben Sie ihn gekauft?* Where did you buy (him) it? *Hut* is of the masculine gender; therefore, the masculine pronoun appertains to it. So, *Wie gefällt Ihnen diese Witterung?* How do you like this weather? *Sie ist sehr unangenehm*, (She) It is very unpleasant. The personal pronoun is in the feminine gender, on account of the substantive. *Das Pferd geht recht gut, aber es ist zu hitzig*, The horse goes very well, but *it* is too fiery. The neuter, *es*, *it*, is used because *das Pferd* is of that gender.

2. The personal, or reflective, or reciprocal pronoun, in the dative case, with the definite article after it, frequently supplies the office of a possessive pronoun; as, *Er winkte ihm mit der Hand*, He beckoned to him with *his* hand; *Ich habe mir das Bein verrenkt*, I have sprained *my* leg; *Er hat sich den Hals abgescnitten*, He has cut *his* throat; *Sie machen sich das Leben sauer*, They embitter each other's life.

3. A demonstrative pronoun or an equivalent adjective, is sometimes preferred to the pronoun of the third person, especially in the oblique cases, for the sake both of distinction, and of sound. When a nearer object is alluded to, *dieser*, or *der* *letztere*, the latter, is used; when a distant one, *jener*, or *der* *erstere*, the former; or the whole sentence is changed. Examples: *Zuise war bei Karoline auf Besuch, als sie die Nachricht*



erhielt', Louisa was on a visit to Caroline, when she received the news. In this case, *sie* may refer either to Louisa, or to Caroline; and therefore, if we mean the former, it is better to use *je'ne*; and if the latter, *die'se*; instead of the ambiguous *sie*. *Die Nachsicht, die er ihm zeig'te, war sein Verder'ben*, The indulgence he showed him was his ruin. If in this instance we mean the ruin of the person to whom the indulgence was shown, it would be better, instead of *sein Verder'ben*, to say *das Verder'ben des letz'teren*, the ruin of the latter; but if we refer to the one who showed indulgence, we say, *das Verder'ben des er'steren*, the ruin of the former.

*Dersel'be* is sometimes substituted for a personal pronoun; as, *Wenn man die Salz'auflösung noch mehr erhit't, so verdun'stet diesel'be*, or *sie*, If we heat the solution of salt still more, it evaporates.\*

4. The genitive case of the demonstrative pronoun, *der, die, das*, viz. *des'sen, de'ren, des'sen*, in the singular, and *de'rer* or *de'ren*, in the plural, is put instead of the possessive, to avoid confusion; for example, *Cicero lies die Mit'verschworenen des Catili'na in des'sen Hau'se ergrei'fen*, Cicero ordered the accomplices of Catiline to be seized in his (Catiline's) house. Here *des'sen* stands for *seinem*, and prevents, at once, all misconception; but *sei'nem*, his, might be referred to Cicero. *Der Consul wand'te sich an den Senat', weil er auf des'sen Muth' traute*, The consul applied to the senate, because he trusted to its (the senate's) courage. If it were *sei'nen*, his, (*Senat'* being of the masculine gender,) it would be uncertain, whether the courage of the consul, or that of the senate, was intended.

5. It has been observed, already, that the neuter of the pronoun of the third person often begins a sentence, in connexion

---

\* In the ceremonial style which is used in speaking of persons of high rank, the pronouns *diesel'ben, hoch'dieselben, höchst'dieselben*, and *allerhöchst'dieselben*, with the verb in the plural after them, are used instead of the personal pronouns. The words *hoch*, high; *höchst*, highest; and *allerhöchst'*, highest of all, with which *diesel'ben* is compounded, mark the degree of nobility belonging to the person addressed, or spoken of.

with a noun of a different gender and number; for example, *Es ist ein Mann*, It is a man; *Es ist ei'ne Frau*, It is a woman. *Es* here corresponds with a masculine, and a feminine. However, the English language admits the same mode of expression in these instances. The peculiarity of the German appears in the following; *Es sind vie'le Men'schen da*, There are many people; *Es ruft der Va'ter*, The father is calling; *Es kom'men leu'te*, People are coming. This frequently answers to the English *there*; as, *There is a quarrel in the house*; *Es ist ein Streit im Hau'se*; *There is a doubt among the learned*, *Es ist ein Zweifel un'ter den Gelehr'ten*. Sometimes this way of opening a sentence is calculated to give it more effect, than if the subject itself were placed at the beginning; for the attention of the hearer is excited by the expectation of the word which is to follow. It is, therefore, often used with the subjunctive mood, to convey a forcible sentiment: for example, *Es le'be das Va'terland!* (Long) live (*the*) our country! *Es kom'me mir kei'ner zu na'he!* Let no one come too near me! The neuters of the demonstrative pronouns are used in a similar manner; as, *Dies* (instead of *die'ses*) *ist mein Freund*, This is my friend; *Je'nes mein Feind*, That is my enemy; *Das sind Solda'ten*, Those are soldiers.

6. In regard to the manner, in which the two relative pronouns, *wel'cher* and *der*, are used, it may here be remarked, that the genitive of *der* is, in general, preferred to that of *wel'cher*; as, *Der Mann, de'ssen ich gedach'te*, The man I mentioned; *Die Eh're, de'ren er so wu'r'dig ist*, The honor of which he is so deserving; *Die Ma'n'ner, de'ren Verdien'ste so gros sind*, Those men, whose merits are so great. — *Der* must be made use of, when a vocative case precedes; as, *O Du, der du al'les mit Weis'heit verwal'test*, O Thou, who governest all things with wisdom. The repetition of the personal pronoun, which, in such instances, is necessary, after the relative *der*, gives force to the sentence. — The particle *als* is sometimes found before *wel'cher*, as a mere expletive; *Die Frem'den, als wel'che erst fu'rz'lich hier an'gekommen sind*, The strangers, who have but lately arrived here. Now and then it may have an explanatory force, similar to the Latin *quippe qui*, but, generally speaking, it is superfluous and improper.

7. The relative pronoun *wel'cher*, *wel'che*, *wel'ches*, (or *der*, *die*, *das*,) is used in preference to the relative pronoun *wer*,

was, if the object to which it relates is a distinct one; but if it is vague or only vaguely referred to, the relative pronoun *wer, was*, should be used. Examples: *der Mann, welcher* (or *der*) *dieſe That gethan' hat*, the man who has done this deed; *Ich weiſ nicht wer dieſe That gethan' hat*, I know not who has done this deed; *Einer von bei'den muß es gethan' haben, a'ber ich weiſ nicht, welcher*, one of the two must have done it, but I know not which; *Alles, was ich ſah, gefiel' mir*, All (that) I saw pleased me; *al'le die Ed'len, welche für die Wahr'heit geſtor'b'en ſind*, all the excellent (persons) who have died for the truth.

The choice between the two interrogative pronouns, *wel'cher*, *wel'che*, *wel'ches*, and *wer, was*, depends, in the same manner, on the distinctness or indistinctness of the object. Examples: *Hier ſind drei Gemäl'de; wel'ches gefällt' dir am beſ'ten?* Here are three pictures; which do you like best? *Was meiniſt du?* What do you mean? *Vou wem re'deſt du?* Of whom do you speak?

8. *The Relative Pronoun* is, in English, sometimes omitted, and understood: in German it must always be expressed; as, *The man I love*, *Den Mann, den* (or *wel'chen*) *ich lie'be*. With *auch* or *auch im'mer*, following, it signifies whoever, whosoever, whatever, whatsoever; as, *Wer auch der Mann ſein mag*, Whoever may be the man; *Was auch im'mer die Fel'ge ſein mag*, Whatever may be the consequence.

9. *The Dative Singular of the Pronouns of the first and second person*, *mir, dir*, is, in familiar language, often inserted, merely as an expletive: *Du biſt mir ein ſchö'ner Geſel'le*, Thou art a fine fellow; *Ich lö'be mir den Rhein'wein*, I give the preference to Rhenish wine; *Das mag dir ei'ne Freu'de gewe'ſen ſein!* That must have been a (great) joy! The plural is also thus found, especially in the second person: *Das war euch ei'ne Luſt!* That was a pleasure! *Das war euch ein Feſt!* That was a festivity! Or, in speaking to a person with whom we are not familiar, *Das war Ih'nen ein Feſt!* That was a festivity! The third person likewise is to be met with in another connexion; as, *Ein Krank'er, der ihm ſtarb'*, One of his patients who died: here the personal *ihm*, to him, represents, in fact, the possessive *his*.

10. *The Possessive Pronoun* is, sometimes, put after the genitive case; as, *deſ Vaters ſein Bru'der*, the father's *his*

brother; *des Knaben seine Mutter*, the boy's *his* mother; *der Frau ihr Kind*, the woman's *her* child, instead of the father's brother, the boy's mother, the woman's child. In these cases the addition of *sein*, *seine*, *ihr*, is in most cases useless and inelegant, and ought to be avoided.

When, in English, an individual object of possession is to be indicated, out of a greater number of the same kind, the possessive pronoun absolute, with *of* before it, is placed after the substantive; as, *a friend of mine*, *a servant of yours*, *an acquaintance of ours*, *a book of his*. In German this must be differently expressed; as, *Ein Freund von mir*, a friend of me, or *Ein'er von mei'nen Freun'den*, one of my friends: *Ein Bedien'ter von uns*, a servant of us, or *Ein'er von un'sern Bedien'ten*, one of our servants; *Ein'es von sei'nen Bü'chern*, one of his books; or *Ein'er mei'ner Freun'de*; *Ein'er un'serer Bedien'ten*; *Ein'es mei'ner Bü'cher*.

11. *The Demonstrative die'ser, die'se, die'ses*, may relate to what is past, present, or future. *Die'se Nacht* may signify *this night*, that is to say, the night which is now present, or which is to come, and also *last night*.

12. The substantive pronouns *et'was*, something, and *nichts*, nothing, are sometimes used by themselves; as, *Sich ihm et'was*, Give him something; *Sich ihm nichts*, Give him nothing. *Et'was* is also used adjectively before nouns; as, *et'was Brod*, some bread; and adverbially before adjectives and adverbs; as, *Er befand' sich in ei'ner et'was miß'lichen La'ge*, He found himself in a somewhat uneasy situation; *Er benimmt' sich et'was wunderlich*, He conducts (himself) somewhat strangely. *Nichts*, never occurs as an adjective except before an adjective in the neuter gender being used as a substantive; as, *Es ist nichts Wah'res an die'sem Gerüch'te*, There is no truth (*literally* nothing true) in this report.

13. *Ein'ige*, and *et'liche*, some, joined with numerals, denote an undetermined excess of the number mentioned; as, *ei'nige* or *et'liche zwanzig Pfund*, some twenty pounds, that is, twenty odd pounds. When prefixed to a hundred, or a higher number, they intimate a repetition of the same; as, *ei'nige hundert Men'schen*, some hundreds of men; *et'liche tausend Tha'ler*, some thousands of dollars.

14. *Al'le*, in familiar language, signifies, sometimes, that a thing is consumed, finished, that nothing of it is left; as, *Der Wein ist al'le*, The wine is finished (all gone); *Die Erd'beeren sind al'le*, The strawberries are eaten.

## Exercises.

She, the youngest of the three sisters whom we saw<sup>2</sup> yesterday<sup>1</sup>, deserves all the praise that was<sup>5</sup> bestowed<sup>4</sup> on<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> two<sup>2</sup> others.<sup>3</sup>

Here are the portraits; which of them (do) you<sup>2</sup> like<sup>1</sup> best?

The man who does<sup>3</sup> his<sup>1</sup> duty<sup>2</sup>, despises the dangers which surround<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup>.

This painting is better than that which you have<sup>7</sup> honored<sup>6</sup> with<sup>1</sup> such<sup>3</sup> a<sup>2</sup> rich<sup>4</sup> frame<sup>5</sup>.

Which of the two suppositions appears to you most probable, this or that?

How (do) you<sup>2</sup> find<sup>1</sup> this pen? It is not sufficiently<sup>2</sup> pointed<sup>1</sup>.

He told him that his bills of exchange had<sup>2</sup> arrived<sup>1</sup>.

After they had<sup>4</sup> found<sup>3</sup> the<sup>1</sup> place<sup>2</sup>, they<sup>6</sup> searched<sup>5</sup> it thoroughly.

Is this or that one the gentleman you mentioned? It is neither of the two.

It is a difficult task.

These are his own words.

This is the man whose works we all so much admire.

Is he a relation of yours? He is not a relation, but a friend of mine.

Last night I<sup>2</sup> dreamt<sup>1</sup> I was walking through fifty odd rooms which contained<sup>4</sup> some<sup>1</sup> millions<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> books<sup>3</sup>.

Whatever be<sup>4</sup> the<sup>1</sup> cause<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> it<sup>3</sup>, I shall know<sup>4</sup> it<sup>1</sup> this<sup>2</sup> night<sup>3</sup>.

young, jung.

sister, Schwester, f. 1. c.

yesterday, gestern.

to see, se'hen, irr.

to deserve, verdie'nen.

praise, lob, n. 3. b.

on, Dat.

the other, der an'dere.

to bestow, erthei'len.

here, hier.

portrait, Bild'niß, n. 3. b. b.

I like, mir gefällt' (from gefäl'sen, to please).

best, am bes'ten.

man, Mann, m. 3. b. c.

duty, Pflicht, f. 1. d.

to do, thun, irr.

to despise, verach'ten.

danger, Gefahr', f. 1. d.

to surround, umring'en.

painting, Gemäl'de, <i>n. 3. a. a.</i>	place, <i>Platz, m. 3. b. b.</i>
better, <i>besser.</i>	to search, <i>durchsu'chen.</i>
than, <i>als.</i>	thoroughly, <i>gründ'lich.</i>
with, <i>mit. (Dat.)</i>	gentleman, <i>Herr, m. 2. b.</i>
such, <i>sol'cher-e-es.</i>	to mention, <i>erwäh'nen. (Gen.)</i>
rich, <i>köst'bar.</i>	none, <i>kei'ner.</i>
frame, <i>Rah'men, m. 3. a. a.</i>	of, <i>von. (Dat.)</i>
to honor, <i>bee'hren.</i>	the two, <i>bei'de.</i>
supposition, <i>Voraus'setzung,</i>	difficult, <i>schwie'rig.</i>
<i>f. 1. d.</i>	task, <i>Ar'beit, f. 1. d.</i>
to appear, <i>schei'nen.</i>	own, <i>ei'gener-e-es.</i>
most, <i>am mei'sten.</i>	word, <i>Wort, n. 3. b. b.</i>
probable, <i>wahr'scheinlich.</i>	work, <i>Werk, n. 3. b. b.</i>
or, <i>o'der.</i>	much, <i>sehr.</i>
how, <i>wie.</i>	to admire, <i>bewun'dern.</i>
to find, <i>fin'den, irr.</i>	relation, <i>Verwand'ter.</i>
pen, <i>Fe'der, f. 1. c.</i>	but, <i>a'ber.</i>
not, <i>nicht.</i>	night, <i>Nacht, f. 1. b.</i>
pointed, <i>spiz.</i>	I dream, <i>träumt mir.</i>
sufficiently, <i>genug'.</i>	to be walking, <i>ge'hen, irr.</i>
to tell, <i>sa'gen. (Dat.)</i>	through, <i>durch.</i>
that, <i>daß.</i>	room, <i>*Gemach', n. 3. b. c.</i>
bill of exchange, <i>Wech'sel, m.</i>	book, <i>*Buch, n. 3. b. c.</i>
<i>3. a. a.</i>	to contain, <i>enthal'ten, irr.</i>
to arrive, <i>an'kommen, irr. (with</i>	cause, <i>Ur'sache, f. 1. c.</i>
<i>sein.)</i>	of it, <i>davon'.</i>
after, <i>nachdem'.</i>	to know, <i>erfab'hren.</i>

## § 2. ARRANGEMENT.

The *Pronoun* either stands in the room of a substantive, or is connected with it in the character of an adjective; and has accordingly either the position of the one or the other.

Therefore, when used substantively, it may serve as the subject, or as the object, in a sentence, and is placed accordingly. The personal pronouns never occur otherwise than as substantives; and the demonstrative pronouns *occasionally* assume this character. When the latter are employed as adjectives, they occupy the place of the article, and go before any other word, that may be joined with the substantive; as, *Diese drei guten Leute*, These three good people; *Die vier ersten tapferen Männer*, Those four first brave men. The

word *all*, however, may precede them. — In *Va'ter un'ser*, our father, which is the beginning of the Lord's Prayer, it might seem, as if the possessive were put after the substantive, *Va'ter*; but *un'ser*, is there the genitive plural of the pronoun of the first person, in imitation of the Greek.

The personal pronoun, in the accusative case, is commonly put before the dative; as, *Er gibt es mir*, He gives it to me; — *es*, the accusative case, before the dative *mir*. *Schic'ke sie ihm*, Send them to him; — *sie*, them, preceding *ihm*, to him.\* The dative is found before the object; as, *Sib mir es*; but not so frequently as after it; and then it is often contracted in familiar language; as, *mir es*, into *mir's*, *dir es*, into *dir's*.

Farther, the personal pronoun, in the dative, or accusative, is sometimes placed before the subject, when the verb is at the end of the sentence. *Wenn mir das Glu'ck gu'n'stig ist*, If fortune is propitious to me; *Weil dich dein Va'ter liebt*, Because thy father loves thee.

The relative pronoun has its place, naturally, at the beginning of that part of the sentence, to which it belongs. The word *all* may sometimes stand before it.

#### Exercises.

Those last free Romans.

They refused it to him. Grant him his request.

As long as misfortune persecuted him.

the last, *der lez'te*.  
free, *frei*.

Roman, *Rö'mer*, *m. 3. a. a.*

to refuse, *wei'gern*.

to grant, *gewäh'ren*.

request, *Gesuch'*, *n. 3. b. b.*

as long as, *so lang'e als*.

misfortune, *das Un'glu'ck*.

to persecute, *verfol'gen*.

---

\* Book II. Ch. 2. § 2. Rule iv.

## CHAPTER V.

## VERBS.

## § I. AGREEMENT AND GOVERNMENT.

A. *Persons and Numbers.*

## RULE I.

The verb must agree with its subject in number and person; as, *Wir lieben ihn wie er uns geliebt hat*, We love him as he has loved us.

*Observations.*—1. When the verb belongs to two or more substantives of the singular number, it is commonly put in the plural; as, *liebe, Haß und Eifersucht sind heftige Leidenschaften*, Love, hatred, and jealousy, are violent passions. Sometimes, the verb stands in the singular after two or more substantives: for example, *Mord und Verwüstung herrschet im Lande*, Murder and destruction reign in the land. It is a sort of elliptical form, which should be thus supplied, *Mord herrschet im Lande, und Verwüstung herrschet im Lande.*

2. When the subjects are of different persons, the first person is preferred to the second; and the second to the third: consequently, the verb will be in the first person plural, when one of the subjects is of the first person, and in the second, if there is a second and no first person: for example, *Du, dein Bruder und ich wollen spazieren gehen*, You, your brother, and I will take a walk. *Wollen* is in the first person plural, because one of the subjects (*du, dein Bruder und ich*) happens to be in the first person, namely, *ich*. *Du, dein Bruder, und deine Schwester seid heute eingeladen worden*, You, your brother, and your sister, have been invited to-day. *Seid*, is the second person of the verb, on account of *du*, the second person, which takes the lead in the absence of the first.

3. The verb is put in the plural number, with a subject in the singular, in titles of address; as, *Eure Excellenz haben befohlen*, Your excellency has ordered; *Eure Majestät* (or abbreviated *Em. Majestät*) *geruhen*, Your Majesty is graciously



pleased; *Ih're* (or, according to an antiquated form, *Ih'ro*) *Gna'den bemer'ken*, Your Lordship observes. In the above, *ha'ben*, *geru'hen*, *bemer'ken*, are in the plural number. Persons of title, or rank, are sometimes spoken of in this form, even when absent; as, *Der Herr Baron' sind hier gewe'sen*, My Lord Baron has been here. But persons of good taste always say, *Der Herr Baron' ist hier gewe'sen*.

#### RULE II.

The personal pronouns are generally to be expressed.

*Observations.* — 1. The imperative mood takes no pronoun in the second person, except for the sake of emphasis and distinction. But the third person singular and plural, and the first person plural, cannot be used without the pronoun. See the Conjugation of Verbs.

2. When two or more verbs, of the same person, come together, one pronoun (or substantive) may serve for them all: for example, *Ich lese und schreibe*, I read and write; *Er kam zu mir, ging aber bald wieder weg*, He came to me, but soon went away again; *Wir haben Ih're Einladung erhalten, dank'en für Ih're Gü'te, und werden uns das Vergnü'gen mach'en, Sie zu besu'chen*, We have received your invitation, thank you for your kindness, and will do ourselves the pleasure of calling upon you; *Der Feind kam, und verheer'te das Land*, The enemy came, and desolated the country.

3. The pronoun of the first person is sometimes omitted in antiquated and formal language, particularly in addressing persons of superior rank; as, *Eu're Gna'den kann hiermit versich'ern*, I can herewith assure your Lordship; *De'ro Schreiben ha'be erhalten*, I have received your letter. This notion seems to have sprung from an imaginary kind of reverence, by which he that spoke, or wrote, was too modest to mention his own person, at the same time with the person spoken to. But this awkward form of affected modesty is going out of use.

4. In familiar language, and in poetry, the pronouns of the first and the second person are sometimes omitted; as, *Bin* (instead of *ich bin*) *so ganz verlassen hier*, I am so entirely

forsaken here; *Bist* (instead of *bist du*) *mir gut?* Are you kindly disposed toward me?

### Exercises.

Exorbitant riches, and extreme poverty, beget ambition and servility, and undermine the freedom and order of society.

Your father, you, and I, have accepted<sup>3</sup> the<sup>1</sup> invitation<sup>2</sup>.

You and her youngest brother were classmates.

Urge me no further.

Stand thou at his right hand, and let him stand<sup>4</sup> at<sup>1</sup> his<sup>2</sup> left<sup>3</sup>.

Let us go<sup>2</sup> hence<sup>1</sup>.

Be so kind as to hand me that book.

exorbitant, *ü'bermä'ssig.*  
 riches, (*Plural of*) \**Reich* =  
*thun, n. 3. b. c.*  
 extreme, *äu'serster-e-es.*  
 poverty, *Ar'muth, f.*  
 to beget, *erzen'gen.*  
 ambition, *Ehr'geiz, m. 3. b.*  
 servility, *Unterthän'igkeit, f.*  
 to undermine, *untergra'ben.*  
 freedom, *Frei'heit, f.*  
 order, *Ord'nung, f.*  
 society, *Gesell'schaft, f.*  
 father, *Va'ter.*  
 invitation, *Ein'ladung, f.*  
 to accept, *an'nehmen, irr.*  
 young, \**jung.*  
 brother, *Bru'der.*  
 class-mate, *Schul'freund, m.*  
 3. b. b.

to urge, *dräng'en.*

no, *nicht.*

further, *wei'ter.*

to stand, *ste'h'en.*

at, *zu. (Dat.)*

the right hand, *die Rech'te*, (an adjective used as a noun, *Hand*, hand, being understood.)

to let, *las's'en.*

the left hand, *die link'e*, (an adjective used as a noun).

to go, *ge'h'en.*

hence, *von hin'u'en.*

so, *so.*

kind, *güt'ig.*

as to, *und.*

to hand, *rei'chen. (Imperat.)*

book, \**Buch, n. 3. b. c.*

### B. Tenses.

1. To signify past time, the German language has one absolute tense, the Perfect; and two relative tenses, the Imperfect and the Pluperfect.

The *Perfect* tense is commonly employed to express an action past, without any particular reference to other events;

as, *Er hat sich gebessert*, He has become better, *Die Schiffe von Indien sind an'gekommen*, The vessels from India have arrived.

The two relative tenses are used to denote an event in reference to another.

The *Pluperfect* indicates an event in its relation to another successive event; as, *Ich war kaum an'gekommen (pluperfect), als der Krieg erklärt' wur'de*, I had scarcely arrived when war was declared.

The *Imperfect* designates an event in its relation to another, which is either past, or cotemporary, or correlative (*i. e.* connected by the relation of cause and effect.) Accordingly, with respect to *past* events, we cannot say, *Ich war kaum an'gekommen, als der Krieg erklärt' wor'den ist (perfect)*, but we must say, *erklärt' wur'de*. — If those two events, my arrival, and the declaration of war, are to be represented as *contemporaneous*, we ought to say, *Ich kam gera'de an, als der Krieg erklärt' wur'de*, I just arrived when war was declared. *Correlative* events also are to be expressed in the same manner; as, *Da ich sei'ne Gesin'kung kunn'te, trau'te ich ihm nicht*, As I knew his character, I did not trust him. Sometimes the choice of the perfect or imperfect depends on euphony.

2. In the historical style, the present tense is frequently substituted for the imperfect, to enliven the representation. This is sometimes done in English, but more seldom than in German.

3. The present tense is occasionally applied to a future action. *Ich rei'se mor'gen ab*, I (shall) set off to-morrow; *In drei Woch'en se'hen Sie mich wie'der hier*, In three weeks' time you (will) see me here again; *Ich kom'me gleich wie'der*, I (shall) come back immediately.

4. The imperfect subjunctive is frequently used for the simple conditional; as, *Ich wünsch'te, er schrie'be mir*, (instead of, *Er wü'r'de mir schrei'ben*.) I wish he would write to me.

5. The pluperfect subjunctive is frequently used instead of the compound conditional; as, *Wenn er an'gekommen wä're, so hät'te man mir es oh'ne Zweifel geschrie'ben* (instead of *So wü'r'de man mir es oh'ne Zweifel geschrie'ben ha'ben*.) If

he had arrived, they would without doubt have written it to me.

6. The perfect is often used for the compound future; as, *Sobald' ich sei'nen Geg'ner gehö'rt' ha'be* (instead of *gehö'rt' ha'ben wer'de*), *wer'de ich mei'nen Entschluß' fass'en*, As soon as I have heard (*shall have heard*) his adversary, I shall form my resolution.

7. In quoting, the verb of the sentence quoted is generally put in the present, perfect, or future, though the imperfect or pluperfect should precede. Ex. *Ich versich'erte ihm daß er sich irr'e*, I assured him that he *was* mistaken; *Sie sag'te ihm voraus'*, *er wer'de sich nicht glück'lich füh'len*, She foretold him that he *would* not feel happy; *Er behaup'tete, er sei krank gew'e'sen*, He asserted he *had* been sick.

### Exercises.

He has begun<sup>4</sup> his<sup>1</sup> great<sup>2</sup> work<sup>3</sup>, but not<sup>2</sup> yet<sup>1</sup> finished.

He had packed<sup>4</sup> all<sup>1</sup> his<sup>2</sup> things<sup>3</sup>, and was about to depart, when he received<sup>3</sup> this<sup>1</sup> news<sup>2</sup>.

Had you learned<sup>3</sup> our<sup>1</sup> language<sup>2</sup> before you came<sup>4</sup> to<sup>1</sup> this<sup>2</sup> country<sup>3</sup>?

When he saw<sup>5</sup> the<sup>1</sup> consequences<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> his<sup>3</sup> conduct<sup>4</sup>, he repented (*was he penitent*), and endeavoured to repair (*to<sup>8</sup> make<sup>9</sup> good<sup>7</sup>*) the<sup>1</sup> injury<sup>2</sup> which<sup>3</sup> he<sup>4</sup> had<sup>6</sup> done<sup>5</sup>.

When he arrived, she<sup>2</sup> had<sup>1</sup> already died.

As their whole business was<sup>4</sup> carried<sup>3</sup> on<sup>3</sup> upon<sup>1</sup> credit<sup>2</sup>, (*so*) they<sup>7</sup> must<sup>5</sup> fail when the political affairs of the country were changed.

If he had<sup>3</sup> known<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>, he<sup>5</sup> would<sup>4</sup> have<sup>4</sup> come<sup>8</sup> with<sup>6</sup> me<sup>7</sup>.

When I shall<sup>4</sup> have<sup>4</sup> learned<sup>3</sup> his<sup>1</sup> decision<sup>2</sup>, I<sup>6</sup> will<sup>5</sup> communicate<sup>9</sup> it<sup>7</sup> to<sup>8</sup> you<sup>8</sup>.

great, groß.  
work, *Werk*, n. 3. b. b.  
to begin, *begin'nen*, *irr*.  
but, *a'ber*.  
yet, *noch*.  
to finish, *en'digen*.  
all, *al'le*.  
thing, *Sach'te*, f. 1. c.

to pack, *pac'fen*.  
about, *im Begriff'e*.  
to depart, *ab zu reiß'en*.  
when, *als*.  
news, *Nach'richt*, f.  
to receive, *erhal'ten*, *irr*.  
language, *Spra'che*, f.  
to learn, *erler'nen*.

before, e'he.	business, Geschäft', <i>n.</i>
to, in. ( <i>Acc.</i> )	upon, auf.
country, Land, <i>n.</i> 3. b. c.	credit, Credit', <i>m.</i> 3. b.
to come, kom'men, <i>irr.</i>	to carry on, füh'ren.
consequence, Folge, <i>f.</i> 1. c.	so, so.
conduct, Beträ'gen, <i>n.</i> 3. a.	I must, ich muß, <i>mix.</i>
to see, se'hen, <i>irr.</i>	to fail, zahl'unfähig wer'den.
to repent, reu'ig wer'den.	political, öf'fentlich.
to endeavour, sich bemü'hen.	affair, An'gelegenheit, <i>f.</i> 1. d.
injury, Schä'den, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a.	to be changed, sich än'dern.
to do, thun, <i>irr.</i>	if, wenn.
to repair, gut mach'en.	to know, wissen, <i>mix.</i>
to arrive, an'langen.	with, mit. ( <i>Dat.</i> )
already, bereits'.	when, sobald'.
to die, ster'ben, <i>irr.</i> (with sein).	decision, Entschei'dung, <i>f.</i>
as, da.	to learn, erfah'ren, <i>irr.</i>
whole, ganz.	to communicate, mit'theilen.

### C. Moods.

The *Indicative* and *Imperative* require no elucidation.

#### RULE I.

The *Subjunctive* is to be used ; 1. When a state of uncertainty is implied. It is, therefore, to be found after some conjunctions, which convey that idea. Such are in many cases *wenn*, *if*; *als wenn*, *as if*; *ob*, *whether*; *damit'*, *in order that*; *daß*, *that*. But the subjunctive mood must not be supposed to be governed by those conjunctions. It solely depends upon the uncertainty, or doubtfulness, with which the action of the verb is conceived. Thus the subjunctive occurs after *daß*, when any one of these verbs precedes: *bit'ten*, *to beg*; *ra'then*, *to advise*; *ermah'nen*, *to exhort*; *beför'gen*, *to apprehend*; *fürch'ten*, *to fear*; *schei'nen*, *to appear, to seem*; *beding'en*, *to make conditions*; *wün'schen*, *to wish*; *wöl'len*, *to desire*; *zwei'feln*, *to doubt*, &c. For, when we *beg, advise, exhort, apprehend, fear, wish, desire*, that a thing may be done, a degree of uncertainty exists, as to the event. This is farther manifest from the verb *sa'gen*, *to say*, and similar ones; as, *ant'worten*, *to answer*; *behaup'ten*, *to maintain*, &c. When that which is said or maintained, remains, in our opinion, liable to doubt, the subjunctive should follow after

daß: for example, *Man sagt mir, daß es gedon'ert ha'be*, They tell me that there has been thunder; *Un'ser Freund behaup'tet, daß dies ein frucht'bares Jahr sein wer'de*, Our friend maintains that this will be a fruitful year. When, on the other hand, the idea is considered as positive, and unquestionable, the indicative must be made use of; for instance, when a person speaks of himself; as, *Ich behaup'te, daß es wahr ist*, I maintain that it is true. Here the subjunctive would be wrong, because the notion is strongly affirmative. If what a person maintains be not certain in his own conception, he should look for another expression, such as, *ich glau'be, ich denk'e*, I believe, I think. *Ich weis, daß er das Geld bekom'men hat*, I know that he has received the money; the indicative, for the same reason. — The conjunction, *wenn*, does not require the subjunctive mood after it, except when the sentence to which it belongs is connected with one that contains a conditional future; as, *Ich wü'r'de es thun, wenn es mög'lich wä're*, I should do it, if it were possible. Here *wä're*, the verb belonging to *wenn*, is in the subjunctive mood, because the preceding sentence contains a conditional future, *I should do it*. It is evident, that the subjunctive rests upon the opinion that is formed of the certainty or uncertainty in the action of the verb. It is a natural consequence of this, that, in some circumstances, it may be questioned, whether the indicative or the subjunctive be more proper; the decision will be according to the point of view, in which the sentence is contemplated.

2. The subjunctive mood is used when *wenn* or *daß* is to be supplied, in the following cases.

*a.* The subjunctive must be used at the beginning of a sentence when the conjunction *wenn*, if, is to be supplied before the imperfect or pluperfect tense; as in the following, *wä're ich an Ih'rer Stel'le*, were I in your place, instead of *wenn ich an Ih'rer Stel'le wä're*, if I were in your place; *hät'te er die Schät'ze des Crösus*, had he the treasures of Cræsus, for *wenn er die Schät'ze des Crösus hät'te*, if he had the treasures of Cræsus. — But when the conjunction *wenn* is to be understood before the present tense, it must be in the indicative mood. Examples; *Bist du reich, so gib viel*; *bist du arm, so gib dein Weniges ger'ne*, *If thou art rich, give much*; *if thou art poor, give thy little cheerfully*. *Hö'rest du was*

böses, das sa'ge nicht nach, *If thou hearest* any thing bad, do not repeat it.

b. The subjunctive is generally used when *daß* is to be supplied; as, *Er glaubt, es sei nicht mög'lich*, He thinks (that) it is not possible; *Man sagt, der Kaiser ha'be Frie'den gemacht'*, They say (that) the Emperor has made peace.

3. It frequently has a potential signification, expressing, either a wish; as, *Der Him'mel ge'be es*, May heaven grant it; *Gott behü'te*, God forbid; — or a permission, and concession; as, *Er ge'he wohin' er wol'se*, Let him go where he pleases: — or a supposition; as, *Es wä're besser, wenn wir Ih'ren Rath befolgt' hät'ten*, It would be better if we had followed your advice; *Die Franzosen hät'ten die Schlacht nicht gewon'nen, wenn sie nicht ei'ne so gro'se U'bermacht an Len'ten gehabt' hät'ten*, The French would not have gained the battle, if they had not had such superior numbers: — or surprise, or wonder; as, *Hät'te ichs doch nicht geglaubt'!* I should not have thought it!

#### RULE II.

*The Infinitive Mood* occurs either *without* the preposition *zu*, or *with* it.

##### a. Without *zu*.

1. When it stands by itself and unconnected, for example, in a vocabulary; as, *lie'b'en*, to love; *se'h'en*, to see.

2. When it is in the room of a substantive, either as the subject, or as the object; as, *Versprech'en und erfül'len sind zwei verschie'dene Sach'en*, To promise and to fulfill are two different things; *Das nen'ne ich sech'ten*, That I call to fight, or fighting; *Das hei'se ich grau'sam verfab'ren*, That I call to act cruelly, or acting cruelly.

3. When for the purpose of laying peculiar stress on the simple action or condition expressed by the verb, the infinitive is used without an auxiliary; as, *Ich mein'es Bru'ders Kin'der nicht erken'nen? Ich sie nicht erken'nen?* I not recognise the children of my brother? I not recognise them?

4. After the verbs *kön'nen*, to be able; *mög'en*, to like;

lassen, to permit, or cause; dürfen, to be permitted; sollen, to be obliged; wollen, to will; müssen, to be forced; and werden, when it is the auxiliary to the future tense; as, Ich werde fragen, I shall ask; and similar verbs.

5. After the verbs, heißen, to bid; helfen, to help; lehren, to teach; lernen, to learn; hören, to hear; sehen, to see; fühlen, to feel. For example: Ich hies ihn gehen, I bid him go; Er hilft mir schreiben, He helps me to write, that is, he assists me in writing; Der Vater lehrt das Kind lesen, The father teaches the child to read; Wir lernen tanzen, We learn to dance; Ich höre sie singen, I hear them sing; Ich sehe ihn kommen, I see him come *or* coming; Er fühlte sein Blut gähren, He felt his blood boil *or* boiling. — After some of these verbs, the English more commonly use the participle; but the Germans constantly employ the infinitive. lehren and lernen sometimes admit zu before the infinitive that follows them.

6. Some verbs are joined to an infinitive, without zu, in particular phrases. These are:

Bleiben, to remain — with the infinitive, it signifies continuance of locality; as, Er bleibt liegen, He continues lying; Er bleibt sitzen, He continues sitting, he keeps his seat, he does not move from his seat; Er bleibt stehen, He continues standing. It is used in the same manner with stecken, to stick fast; hangen, to hang; knien, to kneel; kleben, to adhere, to stick.

Fahren, to go in a carriage, with spazieren; as, Ich fahre spazieren, I drive out for exercise, for an airing.

Finden, to find, is occasionally followed by the infinitive, where the English put the participle. Er fand sie schlafen, He found them sleeping *or* asleep; Ich fand das Buch auf dem Tische liegen, I found the book lying upon the table. The participle might here be used, even in German.

Gehen, to go; as, Ich gehe spazieren, I take a walk; Er geht schlafen, He goes to bed, (literally, *he goes to sleep*); and with some other verbs.

haben, to have, in these and similar phrases; Er hat gut reisen, It is easy for him to travel; Sie haben gut sprechen, You may well say so; Wir haben Geld auf Zinsen stehen, We have money out on interest.

Sich legen, to lay one's self down, with schlafen, to sleep; as, Ich lege mich schlafen, I lay myself down to sleep.



*Mach'en*, when it signifies to cause, or occasion; as, *Er macht mich lach'en*, He makes me laugh; *Er macht mich wein'en*, He makes me cry.

*Rei'ten*, to ride on horseback, with *spazie'ren*; as, *Ich rei'te spazie'ren*, I take a ride.

*Thun*, to do, with *nichts als*, after it; as, *Die Frau thut nichts als zank'en*, The woman does nothing but quarrel; *Der Mann thut nichts als schel'ten*, The man does nothing but scold.

### b. With *zu*.

1. After substantives and adjectives, when in English either *to*, with the infinitive, or *of*, with the participle, is used: for example, after a substantive, *Lust zu spie'len*, an inclination to play; *das Vergnü'gen Sie zu se'hen*, the pleasure of seeing you; *der Wunsch gelobt' zu wer'den*, the wish of being praised: — after an adjective, *Ich war froh mei'nen Freund wie'der zu se'hen*, I was happy to see my friend again; *mü'de zu ste'hen*, tired of standing; *neu'gierig zu wisse'n*, curious to know; *begie'rig zu erfah'ren*, anxious to be informed.

2. After verbs, when purpose or design is intimated. *Ich ging zu dem Man'ne, ihm die Sach'e vor'zustellen und mit ihm darü'ber zu sprech'en*, I went to the man, to represent the thing to him, and to converse with him about it. And here the particle *um* is frequently joined with *zu*, which expresses design still more distinctly; as, *lieb't die Ar'beit, um glück'lich zu sein*, Love labor (in order) to be happy.

3. After the following verbs and others of a similar signification: *an'fangen*, to begin; *auf'hören*, to cease; *befeh'len*, to command; *bit'ten*, to beg; *erwar'ten*, to expect; *hoffen*, to hope; *fürch'ten*, to fear; *dro'hen*, to threaten; *pfl'e'gen*, to be wont; *behaup'ten*, to maintain; *erken'nen*, to acknowledge, with the infinitive in the perfect tense; as, *Er erkennt', sich geirrt' zu ha'ben*, He acknowledges himself to have been mistaken; *bek'en'nen*, to confess, with the infinitive perfect; as, *Er bekennt', das Geld erhal'ten zu ha'ben*, He confesses having received the money; *schei'nen*, to appear, to seem; *wün'schen*, to wish; *verlang'en*, to desire; *ermang'eln*, to fail; *erlau'ben*, to permit; *gestat'ten*, to allow; *verdic'nen*, to deserve; *wä'gen*, to venture; *ha'ben*, to have; as, *Ich ha'be Ih'nen et'was zu sa'*

gen, I have something to tell you : sein, to be ; as, Es ist zu fürch'ten, It is to be feared ; wiß'sen, to know how ; as, Er weiß es zu ma'chen, He knows how to do it ; and these verbs ; hel'fen, nüt'zen, from'men, when they signify to be of use, to answer a purpose.

4. The prepositions oh'ne, without, and statt or anstatt', instead of, require zu before the infinitive. The English construe these with the participle ; as, oh'ne zu wiß'sen, without knowing, (French, *sans savoir*) ; statt zu schla'fen, instead of sleeping ; anstatt' zu schrei'ben, instead of writing.

In English, the infinitive, with *to*, is put after some verbs, where the Germans prefer the conjunction daß, with the indicative or subjunctive : for example, *I knew him to be the man*, Ich wuß'te, daß er der Mann war ; *They thought me to be mistaken*, Sie dach'ten, daß ich mich ir'rete ; *He believed it true*, Er glaub'te, daß es wahr wä're. — The infinitive with *to*, is also employed by the English, after such words as, *when, where, how, which, what, whose, whom*, when certain verbs, such as, *to know, to tell, to be told*, and the like, precede. For example, *You know how to write it ; I will tell you what to do ; Teach me what to say*. In German, the indicative or subjunctive of some helping verb, such as, muß, soll, must, ought, shall, is to be made use of ; as, Sie wissen, wie Sie es schrei'ben müß'sen, You know how you must write it ; Ich will Ih'nen sa'gen, was Sie thun müß'sen, I will tell you what you must do ; Ich'ren Sie mich, was ich sa'gen soll, Teach me what I shall say.\*

*The Infinitive*, with zu, is used, where the English employ the participle, with a preposition, such as *of, from*, and others. For example, das Vergnü'gen ei'nen Freund zu se'hen, the pleasure *of* seeing a friend.

*Observations.* — 1. *The Infinitive* of the active voice, after certain verbs seems to have a passive signification, while in

---

\* In a sentence like this, *He knows how to make it*, if the object is to express the simple fact that he *can* make it (no matter *how*), we say, in German, Er weiß es zu mach'en ; but if the *manner* be the prominent object, we say, Er weiß wie er es mach'en soll (or muß).

fact this peculiarity arises from the omission of the immediate object of these verbs. *Laß ihn ru'fen*, Let him call; may also signify, Let him be called, in which case it stands for *laß je'manden ihn ru'fen*, Let *some one* call him. The same remark applies to other similar expressions; as, *Der Rich'ter hies ihn bin'den*, The judge ordered him to bind, *also* to be bound; *Wir sa'hen ihn schla'gen*, We saw him beating, *also* beaten. In phrases like these, *Die'ser Um'stand ist zu erwä'gen*, literally, this circumstance is to consider, for, to be considered, the infinitive is used as a noun; as, *Die'ser Um'stand ist zum* (or *zu dem*) *Erwä'gen*, This circumstance is for considering, *i. e.* worth considering *or* to be considered. But in the use of this construction, care must be taken to avoid ambiguity.

2. The *Infinitive* of the verbs *dür'fen*, *sol'len*, *kön'nen*, *mö'gen*, *lassen*, *müss'en*, *wol'len*, *hö'ren*, *se'hen*, is substituted for the *Past Participle*, when an infinitive precedes. *Ich ha'be es nicht thun dür'fen* (for *gedurft'*), I was not allowed to do it; *Du hät'test kom'men sol'len* (for *gesollt'*), You ought to have come; *Er hat ein Haus bau'en lassen* (for *gelassen*), He has caused a house to be built; *Ich ha'be ihn an'hören müss'en* (for *gemusst'*), I have been obliged to listen to him; *Hät'ten wir aus'gehen wol'len* (for *gewollt'*), Had we been inclined to go out; *Ich ha'be ihn rei'ten se'hen* (for *gese'hen*), I have seen him ride. — *Ich'ren*, to teach, and *ler'nen*, to learn, likewise allow the use of this infinitive; though the past participle is, at present, more frequently employed; as, *Er hat mich schrei'ben leh'ren*, or *gelehrt'*, He has taught me to write; *Ich ha'be bei ihm zeich'nen ler'nen*, or *gelernt'*, I have learnt of him to draw.

#### RULE III.

The participle, besides its connexion with the verb, is, in Syntax, liable to the rules of the adjective.

There are some participles, which may be said to represent pronouns, having a demonstrative signification. Of this description are: *befagt'*, aforesaid; *gedacht'*, *erwähnt'*, aforementioned; *genannt'*, aforenamed; *fol'gend*, the following.

The *Present Participle*, with *zu*, to, before it, and used as an adjective, expresses futurity, with the implied notion of necessity or possibility; as, *ein sorg'fältig zu vermeidender*

Um'stand, a circumstance carefully to be avoided; ein leicht zu vermeidender Um'stand, a circumstance that may easily be avoided.

The *Past Participle of certain Verbs*, is united with the verb *kommen*, to come, in an active signification, to express the manner of coming; as, *Er kommt geritten*, He comes riding on horseback; *Er kommt gegangen*, He comes walking; *Er kommt gefahren*, He comes riding in a carriage.

The past participle is combined in a particular way, with the verbs *wollen*, *haben*, and *wissen*; as, *Ich wollte Sie gefragt haben*, I would have you asked, *that is*, I should wish to ask you. *Dieses Verbrechen wollen wir gehudet wissen*, We would know this crime punished, *that is*, we wish to have it punished.

*Cases Absolute.* The accusative case joined to past participles is taken absolutely. Examples: *das Gesicht nach Osten gekehrt*, his face being turned to the east; *den Blick nach dem Vaterlande gewendet*, his looks being turned towards his country; *die Augen nach dem Himmel gerichtet*, his eyes being directed towards heaven; *diesen Umstand vorausgesetzt*, this circumstance being supposed; *den Gewinn abgerechnet*, the gain being deducted; *dies ausgenommen*, this being excepted.

Sometimes the past participle is substituted for the imperative mood; as, *Rosen auf den Weg gestreut, und des Harms vergessen!* Strew roses on the path, and forget sorrow! *Die Stube aufgeräumt!* Clear the room! in which examples *gestreut*, *vergessen*, and *aufgeräumt*, are past participles.

#### Exercises.

I asked you if you had<sup>3</sup> been<sup>2</sup> there<sup>1</sup>.

They praise us that we might<sup>4</sup> return<sup>3</sup> the<sup>1</sup> compliment<sup>2</sup>.

I always<sup>2</sup> thought<sup>1</sup> that he would<sup>3</sup> please<sup>2</sup> you.<sup>1</sup>

Promise me that you will<sup>3</sup> follow<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup>, if he sets<sup>4</sup> you<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> example<sup>3</sup>.

If you had<sup>3</sup> known<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup>, you could not<sup>4</sup> have<sup>6</sup> asked<sup>5</sup> such<sup>2</sup> a<sup>1</sup> question<sup>3</sup>.

Are you satisfied? then let us go.

(May) wisdom be your guide.

Had I not<sup>3</sup> told<sup>4</sup> it<sup>1</sup> to<sup>2</sup> them<sup>2</sup>, they would have<sup>3</sup> no<sup>1</sup> guilt<sup>2</sup>.

To come, to see, and to conquer, were almost simultaneous acts.

I saw him paint, and you heard him sing.

She does nothing but weep and lament.

It avails nothing to<sup>2</sup> say<sup>3</sup> it<sup>1</sup>, if we (do) not venture to<sup>2</sup> do<sup>3</sup> it<sup>1</sup>, without waiting<sup>3</sup> any<sup>1</sup> longer<sup>2</sup>.

I know not how to tell her, without hurting<sup>3</sup> her<sup>1</sup> feelings<sup>2</sup>.

You have wished to<sup>3</sup> see<sup>4</sup> it<sup>1</sup> accomplished<sup>2</sup>; it is now no more to be altered.

Rise up, and move<sup>3</sup> your<sup>1</sup> hands<sup>2</sup>.

to ask, fra'gen.

if, ob.

there, da.

to praise, lo'ben.

that, damit'.

compliment, Ur'tigkeit, *f*.

to return, ermie'dern.

I may, ich mag, *mix*.

to think, dent'en, *mix*.

always, im'mer.

that, daß.

to please, gefal'sen, *irr*.

to promise, versprech'en, *irr*.

(*Dat.*)

to follow, fol'gen. (*Dat.*)

I will, ich will, *mix*.

example, Bei'spiel, *n. 3. b. b.*

to set, ge'ben, *irr*.

to know, ken'nen, *mix*.

I can, ich kann, *mix*.

to ask such a question, ei'ne

sol'che Fra'ge thun, *irr*.

satisfied, befriedigt.

to let, las'sen.

to go, ge'hen.

wisdom, Weis'heit, *f*.

guide, Gelei'terin, *f*.

to tell, sa'gen.

no guilt, kei'ne Schuld.

to come, kom'men.

to see, se'hen.

to conquer, sic'gen.

almost, beina'he.

simultaneous, gleich'zeitig.

act, Hand'lung, *f. 1. d.*

to paint, ma'len.

to hear, hö'ren.

to sing, sing'en.

nothing, nichts.

but, als.

to weep, wei'nen.

to lament, klä'gen.

to avail, from'men.

to venture, wa'gen.

without, oh'ne.

any, ir'gend.

long, lang.

to wait, war'ten.

to know, wis'sen, *mix*.

how, wie.

feelings, Gefühl', *n. 3. b. b.*

to hurt, verlet'zen.

to wish, wün'schen.

to accomplish, vollbring'en, *mix*.

now, nun.

more, mehr.

to alter, än'dern.

to rise up, auf'stehen, *irr*.

your, *def. art.*

hand, \*Hand, *f. 1. b.*

to move, re'gen.

#### D. The Passive Voice.

The passive voice of neuter verbs is employed impersonally, as in Latin, when the subject of the verb is to be expressed in

an indeterminate manner. Ex. *Es wird gelaufen*, They run (Lat. *curritur*); *Es wurde getanzt*, There was dancing (Lat. *saltabatur*).

### E. *The Auxiliaries.*

When the same auxiliary belongs to more than one verb, it need be only once employed; as, *Ich habe es gehört und gesehen*, I have heard and seen it; *Wir haben geschrieben, gelesen, und gesprochen*, We have written, read, and talked. It would encumber the sentence, to express the auxiliary more than once in these examples. The English language coincides in this with the German. But the latter has a peculiarity, which is not found in most other tongues: namely, that in the perfect and pluperfect tenses the auxiliaries *haben* and *sein*, when placed at the end of a sentence, may be omitted. For example: *Mein Freund hat mir gesagt, daß er Ihren Brief gelesen*, My friend has told me, that he has read your letter. After *gelesen*, the auxiliary *habe*, is to be understood. It would be quite as well, if it were expressed, though sometimes the omission has a good effect, by preventing the monotonous repetition of the same auxiliary word. The auxiliary *werden*, though at the end of the sentence, can never be left out.

### Exercises.

The trial is finished, and the sentence is passed.

He would have<sup>10</sup> been<sup>9</sup> taken<sup>3</sup> to<sup>1</sup> account<sup>2</sup> and<sup>4</sup> judged<sup>8</sup> by<sup>5</sup> our<sup>6</sup> law<sup>7</sup>, if he had<sup>9</sup> not<sup>2</sup> judged<sup>4</sup> him<sup>1</sup>self<sup>3</sup> and<sup>5</sup> abdicated<sup>8</sup> his<sup>6</sup> power<sup>7</sup>.

As soon as he had<sup>10</sup> arranged<sup>3</sup> his<sup>1</sup> affairs<sup>2</sup>, and<sup>4</sup> taken<sup>9</sup> leave<sup>8</sup> of<sup>5</sup> his<sup>6</sup> friends<sup>7</sup>, he<sup>12</sup> departed<sup>11</sup>.

trial, *Recht'streit, m.*

to finish, *enden*.

sentence, *Urtheil, n.*

to pass, *fällen*.

to take to account, *zur*

*Rechenschaft ziehen, irr.*

by, *nach. (Dat.)*

law, *Gesetz, n. 3. b. b.*

to judge, *richten*.

power, *Macht, f.*

to abdicate, *niederlegen*.

as soon as, *so bald als*.

affair, *Angelegenheit, f. 1. d.*

to arrange, *berichten*.

from, *von. (Dat.)*

his friends, *die Seinigen*.

leave, *Abschied, m. 3. b. b.*

to take, *nehmen, irr.*

to depart, *abreisen*.

F. *The Verb governing Cases.*

## RULE I.

*The Nominative case, as the object, is required,*

1. By the following verbs: *sein*, to be; *wor'den*, to become; *bleiben*, to remain; *hei'sen*, to be called, to bear a name; *schei'nen*, to seem. Examples: *Fried'rich war ein gro'ser Feld'herr*, Frederic was a great general; *Mein Bru'der ist Soldat' gewor'den*, My brother has become a soldier; *Er bleibt ein Thor, wie er im'mer war*, He remains a silly man, as he always was; *Die'ser Mensch hei'st der Ober'ste*, This man is called the colonel; *Es scheint ein gu'ter Plan*, It seems a good plan. The nouns, after the verbs, are here in the nominative case.

2. By the passive voice of such verbs, as, in the active, govern a double accusative: for example, *nen'nen*, to call, to name — *Er wird ein ehr'licher Mann genannt'*, He is called an honest man; *hei'sen*, to call, to name; *tau'sen*, to christen — *Das Kind ist Hein'rich getauft' wor'den*, The child has been christened Henry; (*Hein'rich*, is here the nominative case;) *schel'ten*, to abuse — *Er wird ein Betrüg'ger geschol'ten*, He is abused as a cheat; *schim'pfen*, to insult by opprobrious appellations — *Er ward eine Niem'me geschimpft'*, He was insulted as a coward. Some verbs occur, in English, with two accusatives in the active, and two nominatives (namely, one as the subject before, and the other as the object after the verb) in the passive voice; where, in German, the second accusative is construed with a preposition. Such are the verbs, *to appoint, to choose, to declare*, and the like: for example, *Er ist zum Doc'tor gemacht' wor'den*, He has been made a doctor; *Er ist zum Rich'ter ernannt' wor'den*, He has been appointed judge; *Er wur'de für ei'nen Spig'buben erklärt'*, He was declared a thief. Here the prepositions *zu* and *für*, are required, while in English the nominative case is sufficient. Sometimes the verb *leh'ren*, to teach, is joined with a double accusative, in the active voice; as, *je'manden Musi'k' leh'ren*, to teach a person musick. The dative also is used with the verb *leh'ren* — *ei'nem et'was leh'ren*, to teach something to a person.

3. The reflexive verbs are followed by a nominative, after

als, or wie, *as*: for example, *Er betragt' sich als ein recht-schaffener Mann*, He conducts himself *as* an honest man; *Er zeich'net sich als ein gu'ter Soldat' aus*, He distinguishes himself *as* a good soldier. But it must be observed, that this nominative case is not governed by the reflective verb. The phrase is elliptical, and at full length, would be, *Er betragt' sich, als ein recht'schaffener Mann sich betragt'*, He conducts himself, as an honest man conducts himself; *Er zeich'net sich aus, als ein gu'ter Soldat' sich aus'zeichnct*, He distinguishes himself, as a good soldier distinguishes himself. The same takes place after verbs which are not reflective; as, *Der Kna'be schreibt wie ein Mann*, The boy writes as a man; for *Der Kna'be schreibt, wie ein Mann schreibt*, The boy writes as a man writes. If the case be referred to the reflective verb, it must be the accusative: for example, *Er zeigt sich als ei'nen tuch'tigen Feld'herrn*, He shows himself an able general.

### Exercises.

Although he seems<sup>7</sup> to<sup>5</sup> be<sup>6</sup> a<sup>1</sup> man<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> talent<sup>4</sup>, he<sup>9</sup> will<sup>8</sup> never become<sup>3</sup> an<sup>1</sup> artist<sup>2</sup>, but remain<sup>3</sup> a<sup>1</sup> bungler<sup>2</sup>.

He was at first called<sup>4</sup> a<sup>1</sup> great<sup>2</sup> man<sup>3</sup>, but afterward insulted<sup>3</sup> (as) a<sup>1</sup> villain<sup>2</sup>.

By the mark (*which*) they put<sup>4</sup> upon<sup>1</sup> this<sup>2</sup> pawn<sup>3</sup>, they<sup>6</sup> made<sup>5</sup> him a knight.

He first<sup>3</sup> conducted<sup>1</sup> himself<sup>2</sup> toward others as an unprincipled man, and then<sup>2</sup> treated<sup>1</sup> himself<sup>3</sup> as his bitterest enemy.

although, obgleich'  
talent, Un'sage, *f. c.*  
to seem, schei'nen.  
never nie'mals.  
artist, Kunst'ler, *m.*  
to become, wer'den.  
but, son'dern.  
bungler, Stumm'per, *m.*  
to remain, blei'ben.  
at first, zuerst'.  
great, gro's.  
to call, nen'nen, *mix.*  
afterward, nach'her.

villain, Verbrech'er, *m.*  
to insult, schel'ten, *irr.*  
by, durch. (*Acc.*)  
mark, Merk'zeichen, *n. 3. a. a.*  
upon, an. (*Dat.*)  
pawn, Bau'er, *m. 3. a. c.*  
to put, an'bringen, *mix.*  
to make, mach'en.  
knight, Spring'er.  
to conduct one's self, sich be-  
tra'gen, *irr.*  
first, zuerst'.  
toward, ge'gen. (*Acc.*)



others, an'dere.  
unprincipled, gewissenlos.  
to treat, behan'deln.

then, dann.  
bitter, bit'ter.  
enemy, Feind, *m. 3. b. 6.*

## RULE II.

The Genitive case is governed,

1. By verbs which in English are generally followed by the preposition *of*; as, an'klagen, to accuse of; bedür'fen, to be in need of, (sometimes construed with the accusative case); beschul'digen, to accuse of, to charge with; berau'ben, to rob; überhe'ben, to disburden; wür'digen, to deign, to think worthy of. The thing that we are accused of, in need of, charged with, robbed of, freed from, thought worthy of, is put in the genitive case, and the person in the accusative: for example, je'manden des Mor'des an'klagen, to accuse a person of murder; je'manden der Verrätherei' beschul'digen, to charge a person with treachery; je'manden sei'nes Vermö'gens berau'ben, to rob a person of his fortune; je'manden der Mü'he überhe'ben, to free a person from trouble; je'manden großer Eh're wür'digen, to think a person worthy of great honor.

2. The following take the genitive case of the thing, and the accusative of the person: but they may also be placed in some other construction; gewäh'ren, to grant; entlö'sen, to strip; entlassen, to dismiss; entlä'den, to disburden; entle'digen, to free from, to acquit, to disencumber; entset'zen, to displace; überfüh'ren or überwei'sen, to convict; überzeugen, to convince; versich'ern, to assure; verwei'sen, to banish. For example: je'manden sei'nes Wunsch'es gewäh'ren, to grant to a person his wish, that which he wishes: ei'nen Mann sei'nes Am't'es entset'zen, to discharge a man from his office; sich ei'ner Last entle'digen, to disencumber one's self of a burden; den Schul'digen sei'nes Verbrechen's überfüh'ren, to convict a guilty person of his crime; Ich versich'ere dich mei'ner Freund'schaft, I assure thee of my friendship. Those beginning with *ent* and *über*, may be construed with the preposition *von*, and the dative; as, je'manden von sei'ner Last entlä'den, to free a person from his burden; je'manden von sei'nem Dien'ste entlas'sen, to dismiss a person from his office; je'manden von sei'nem Irr'thume überzeugen, to convince a person of his error. Gewäh'ren, and versich'ern, are more frequently joined with

the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing; as, *Ich gewäh're dir dei'ne Bit'te*, I grant (to) you your request; *Ich versich'ere es dir*, I assure (it to) you. *Versich'ern* is likewise combined with the preposition *von*; as, *Ich bin von der Sach'e versich'ert*, I am assured of the thing. — *Beleh'ren*, has the genitive of the thing, in the expression, *je'manden ei'nes bessern beleh'ren*, to inform a person of what is better, to set him right. But commonly *von* is made use of — *Er hat mich von der Sach'e belehrt'*.

3. Several reflexive verbs are construed with the genitive case of the thing. Such are, *sich an'masen*, to claim; as, *sich ei'nes Ti'tels an'masen*, to claim a title (more frequently with the accusative, *sich ei'nen Ti'tel an'masen*); *sich (ei'ner Sach'e) an'nchmen*, to interest one's self in a thing; *sich bedenk'en*, to consider; *sich besin'nen*, to think upon; *sich bedie'nen*, to make use of; *sich bege'ben*, to resign, to give up; *sich bemäch'tigen*, *sich bemei'stern*, to make one's self master of a thing, to gain possession of it; *sich enthal'ten*, to abstain; *sich entschl'a'gen*, to get rid of a thing; *sich entsin'nen*, to recollect; *sich erbar'men*, to have mercy, to have compassion; *sich erin'nern*, to remember; *sich erwch'ren*, to resist; *sich freu'en*, to rejoice in, to enjoy; *sich getrö'sten*, to hope for with confidence; *sich rüh'men*, to boast of; *sich schä'men*, to be ashamed; *sich unterfang'en*, *unterwin'den*, to venture on, to undertake; *sich verse'h'en*, to be aware of; *sich weig'ern*, to refuse.\* Also some impersonals; as, *Es reut* or *gereut' mich*, I repent; *Mich jam'mert*, I pity, am sorry for; *Es verlangt' mich*, I desire; *Es verlohnt' sich (der Mü'he)*, It is worth (the trouble). Many of these verbs also admit other cases and prepositions.

4. The verbs *sein*, to be, and *wer'den*, to become, have the genitive case after them, in some phrases; as, *der Mei'nung sein*, to be of opinion; *Wil'lens sein*, to purpose; *Han'dels ei'nig wer'den*, to agree upon a bargain.

5. The following govern either the genitive, or the accusa-

---

\* The reflexive, or reciprocal pronoun, in most of these verbs, is in the accusative case: *an'masen* has it in the dative when it is construed with the accusative of the thing; as, *Ich ma'ße mir dies an*, This I pretend to.

tive, the former being more usual with some of them, and the latter with others; ach'ten, to mind, to care about; bedür'fen, to want; begeh'ren, to desire; entbeh'ren, to want, to be without; erwäh'nen, to mention; genie'ssen, to enjoy; pfl'e'gen, to foster, to take care of; scho'nen, to spare; spot'ten, to mock; verges'sen, to forget; war'ten, to attend to, to take care of; as, sei'nes Am'tes war'ten, to attend to one's office. — Sedenk'en, to remember, to think of, has the genitive after it, and sometimes the preposition an with the accusative.

The combination of the genitive case with verbs was formerly more frequent, than it is at the present day. It is found in old writings after many verbs, which now take other cases, or are followed by the prepositions. For instance, to express a part of a thing, the mere genitive was put, where a preposition is now more commonly employed; as, Iß des Bro'des, Eat of the bread; Trink'e des Wei'nes, Drink of the wine; Nimm des Getreid'es, Take of the corn. In modern language it would commonly be, Iß von dem Bro'de, Trink'e von dem Wei'ne.

### Exercises.

He is charged<sup>3</sup> (with) (*the*<sup>1</sup>) ingratitude<sup>2</sup> and accused<sup>3</sup> of (*the*<sup>1</sup>) slander<sup>2</sup>, and no one takes pity on him, to<sup>4</sup> free<sup>5</sup> him<sup>1</sup> (from) his<sup>2</sup> imprisonment<sup>3</sup>.

Deprived<sup>4</sup> of<sup>1</sup> his<sup>1</sup> former<sup>2</sup> friends<sup>3</sup>, he<sup>6</sup> finds<sup>5</sup> no lawyer who will<sup>4</sup> engage<sup>3</sup> in<sup>3</sup> his<sup>1</sup> cause<sup>2</sup>.

While I mention<sup>7</sup> his<sup>1</sup> good<sup>2</sup> deeds<sup>3</sup> in<sup>4</sup> which<sup>4</sup> we<sup>5</sup> rejoice<sup>6</sup>, I<sup>9</sup> am<sup>8</sup> not willing to<sup>7</sup> spare<sup>8</sup> his<sup>1</sup> errors<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> which<sup>3</sup> he<sup>4</sup> is<sup>6</sup> convicted<sup>5</sup>.

I (do) not<sup>2</sup> recollect<sup>1</sup> the circumstances which you mentioned.

Give up the power which you have<sup>2</sup> assumed<sup>1</sup>.

We (do) not<sup>4</sup> want<sup>1</sup> your<sup>2</sup> services<sup>3</sup>.

ingratitude, die Un'dankbar-

keit, *f.*

to charge, beschul'digen.

slander, Verläum'dung, *f.*

to accuse, an'klagen.

no one, nie'mand.

to take pity, sich erbar'men.

imprisonment, Haft, *f.*

to free, entle'digen.

former, eh'malig.

to deprive, berau'ben.

to find, fin'den.

a lawyer, ein Rechts'gelehrter.

cause, Sach'e, *f.*

to engage in, sich an'nehmen,

irr.

I will, <i>ich will, mix.</i>	to recollect, <i>sich erin'nern.</i>
while, <i>wäh'rend.</i>	circumstance, <i>*Um'stand, m.</i>
deed, <i>That, f. 1. d.</i>	3. b. f.
to rejoice, <i>sich freu'en.</i>	to mention, <i>gedenk'en, mix.</i>
to mention, <i>erwäh'nen.</i>	to give up, <i>sich bege'ben, irr.</i>
to be willing, <i>Will'ens sein.</i>	power, <i>Gewalt', f.</i>
error, <i>Verirr'ung, f. 1. d.</i>	to assume, <i>sich an'masen.</i>
to be convicted, <i>überwie'sen</i>	to want, <i>bedür'fen.</i>
<i>sein.</i>	service, <i>Dienst', m. 3. b. b.</i>
to spare, <i>scho'nen.</i>	

## RULE III.

The *Dative case* is used,

1. After transitive verbs, which, at the same time, govern the accusative. The accusative is then called the case of the thing, and the dative the case of the person: for example, *Ge'ben Sie dem Man'ne das Buch*, Give the book to the man. *Dem Man'ne* is the dative case of the person, and *das Buch*, the accusative of the thing. — The following transitives take the dative of the person; *ge'ben*, to give; *neh'men*, to take from a person; *sa'gen*, to say, to tell; *erzäh'len*, to tell, to relate; *ant'worten*, to answer; *bring'en*, to bring; *befehl'en*, to command; *bezah'len*, to pay; *kost'en*, to cost; *bie'ten*, to offer; *bor'gen*, to lend; *lei'h'en*, to lend; *glaub'en*, to believe; *gdn'nen*, not to envy, not to grudge; *fla'gen*, to complain of, to state in the form of complaint; *lie'fern*, to furnish; *lei'sten*, to show, to render, as, *Dien'ste lei'sten*, to render services; *erlass'en*, to remit; *erwie'dern*, to return, to give in turn, to reply; *gebie'ten*, to command; *gelo'ben*, to vow; *erlau'ben*, to permit; *gestat'ten*, to allow; *widerra'then*, to dissuade from: also verbs compounded with *ab*; as, *ab'bitten*, to beg pardon, *ei'nem ei'nen Feh'ler ab'bitten*, to beg pardon of a person for a fault; *ab'fordern*, to demand from; *ab'zwing'en*, to force from; *ab'rath'en*, to dissuade; *ab'schlagen*, to refuse; *ab'sprechen*, to give sentence against a person, to deny, *ei'nem et'was ab'sprechen*; *ab'kaufen*, to buy of: some verbs with *an*; as, *an'bieten*, to offer; *an'rath'en*, to advise; *an'deuten*, to signify; *an'dichten*, to attribute falsely; *an'zeigen*, to announce; and others: some with *bei*; as, *bei'bringen*, to impart; *bei'legen*, to attribute; *bei'messen*, to impute: some with *ent*; *entrei'ssen*, to snatch away; *entzie'h'en*, to take away, &c.:

some with *wi'der*; as, *widerra'then*, to dissuade. To these may be added the reflective verbs, *sich an'masen*, to claim, to pretend to; *sich ein'bilden*, to fancy, to imagine: as, *Ich ma'se mir den Ti'tel an*, I pretend to the title; *Ich bil'de mir den Um'stand ein*, I imagine the circumstance. After *sich an'masen*, the genitive of the thing may be put, instead of the accusative (Rule II. 3.), and then the person is put in the accusative; as, *Ich ma'se mich des Ti'tels an*.

2. After intransitive verbs; as, *an'hängen*, to adhere to; *an'liegen*, to apply to, to solicit; *gehö'ren*, and *an'gehören*, to belong to; *begeg'nen*, to meet, to happen to; *bekom'men*, to agree with, said of things that refer to health, sometimes also used in a figurative sense; *bevor'stehen*, to impend; *bei'fallen*, to agree with a person in opinion; *bei'kommen*, to come near, to get at; *bei'pflichten*, to coincide with in opinion; *bei'stehen*, to assist; *dan'ken*, to thank; *die'nen*, to serve; *dro'h'en*, to threaten; *entflie'h'en*, *entge'h'en*, to escape; *entspre'chen*, to answer to, to correspond to; and other compounds with *ent*; *ein'fallen*, to occur to the thoughts, or the memory; *ein'gehen*, to enter the mind, to be understood; *ein'kommen*, to enter the thoughts, to enter the mind; *ein'leuchten*, to be evident, to appear; *fol'gen*, to follow; *froh'nen*, to do service without pay; *gebüh'ren*, to be due; *gedei'h'en*, to succeed, to prosper; *gehor'chen*, to obey; *gefäl'sen*, to please; *gera'then*, *geling'eu*, to succeed; *glei'chen*, to be like; *gezie'men*, to become, to besit; *hel'fen*, to help; *nüt'zen*, to be useful, to be of use; *ob'liegen*, (*ei'ner Sach'e*), to apply one's self to a thing — also (as an impersonal) to be incumbent upon; *unterlie'gen*, to be overcome, to yield; *scha'den*, to hurt; *schei'nen*, to seem; *schmei'cheln*, to flatter; *steu'ern*, to check, to restrain; *trot'zen*, to bid defiance; *wch'ren*, to check; *wei'chen*, *aus'weichen*, to give way, to yield; *sich wi'derset'zen*, to oppose, to resist; *widerste'h'en*, to resist; *wohl'wollen*, to wish well; *zu'fallen*, to fall to; *zu'hören*, to listen to, to hear; *zu'gehören*, to belong to; *zu'kommen*, to become, to be suitable, to belong to, to be due; *zu'reden*, to speak to, to exhort; and other compounds with *zu*: also these impersonals; *Es ah'net*, or *ah'ndet mir*, I have a misgiving, I foresee; *Es belicht'*, It pleases; *Es gebricht'*, It is wanting; *Es graunt mir*, I am fearful; *Es träumt mir*, I dream; *Es schei'net mir*, or *Es kömmt mir vor*, It seems to me; *Es schwin'dest mir*, I

am giddy; *Es schau'dert mir*, I shudder; *Es verschlägt' mir nichts*, It makes no difference to me.

3. After some verbs which may also be properly used with the accusative: *ankommen*, to come upon — *Mir*, or *mich*, *kommt Furcht an*, Fear comes upon me; *Mir*, or *mich*, *däucht*, It seems to me (the accusative is more usual); *Mir*, or *mich*, *e'felt*, I loathe. *Heißen*, to bid, to desire, occurs with the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing — *Wer hat dir das geheiß'en?* Who desired you to do that? but the person may also be put in the accusative, *Wer hat dich das geheiß'en?* The same may be said of *leh'ren*, to teach, which either is followed by two accusatives, one of the thing, and the other of the person; or by the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing.

*Observation.* The dative expresses advantage, or disadvantage, and answers to the English prepositions *to* and *for*; as, *Dir schein't die Sonne*, For thee the sun shines; *Dir lach'en die Feld'er*, To thee the fields smile; *Dir heu's'en die Win'de*, To thee (against thee) the winds howl.

### Exercises.

I did for him every thing (*which*) he commanded<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup>.

I told him so. I advised him to<sup>3</sup> resist<sup>4</sup> their<sup>1</sup> flattery<sup>2</sup>, and dissuaded him from<sup>4</sup> lending<sup>5</sup> them<sup>1</sup> any<sup>2</sup> thing<sup>3</sup>.

(Do) not<sup>3</sup> refuse<sup>1</sup> them<sup>2</sup> what they demand<sup>2</sup> from<sup>1</sup> you<sup>1</sup>, if it belongs<sup>2</sup> to<sup>1</sup> them<sup>1</sup>.

You can<sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> get<sup>5</sup> at<sup>4</sup> him<sup>2</sup>, as long as she defends<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup>.

You will meet with (*it will meet you*) what you have<sup>2</sup> deserved<sup>1</sup>; it will do<sup>3</sup> you<sup>1</sup> good<sup>2</sup>.

I apply myself to this business, although it is not incumbent upon me.

It seemed to me as if all that he related<sup>2</sup> to<sup>1</sup> you<sup>1</sup>, was aimed at me.

I fancied it to myself, although I shuddered<sup>4</sup> at<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup> thought.<sup>3</sup>

to do, *lei'sten*.  
every thing, *alles*.  
to command, *befeh'len*, *irr*.  
to tell, *sä'gen*.

so, *das*, (*dem. pron.*)  
to advise, *ra'then*, *irr*.  
flattery, *Schmeichelei'*, *f. I. d.*  
to resist, *widerste'hen*.

to dissuade, ab'rathen, <i>irr.</i>	to do good, wohl bekom'men.
any thing, ir'gend et'was.	to apply one's self, ob'liegen.
to lend, lei'hen.	business, Geschäfft', <i>n.</i> 3. b. b.
to refuse, verwei'gern.	although, wiewohl'.
to demand, ab'fordern.	to be incumbent, ob'liegen.
if, wenn.	(See Book II. Ch. 5. § 2. F.)
to belong, gehö'ren.	to seem, schei'nen, <i>irr.</i>
I can, ich kann, <i>mix.</i>	as if, als ob.
to get at, bei'kommen.	to relate, erzäh'len.
as long as, so lang als, or	to be aimed at, gel'ten, <i>irr.</i>
solang'.	to fancy, ein'bilden.
to defend, verthei'digen.	at, <i>ver.</i> ( <i>Dat.</i> )
I meet, es begeg'net mir.	thought, Gedank'e, <i>m.</i> 3. c. c.
to deserve, verdie'nen.	I shudder, mir schau'dert.

## RULE IV.

*The Accusative* is governed by active verbs ; as, Ich lie'be mein Va'terland, I love my country.

Neuter verbs also may sometimes be used actively, and govern an accusative ; as, Ei'nen gu'ten Kampf kãmpfen, To fight a good fight ; where kãmpfen, is joined with the accusative, though it is generally used without any case.

There are verbs that take a double accusative ; as, hei'sen, to call ; nen'nen, to name ; schel'ten, to abuse ; schimp'fen, to call by an opprobrious name. For example : Ich hei'se (or nen'ne) ihn ei'nen Hel'den, I call him a hero ; Er schalt (or schimpfte) ihn ei'nen Betrãger, He called him a cheat. To which may be added fra'gen, to ask, as, Ei'nen et'was fra'gen, To ask a person something ; but here it is as well to make use of a preposition ; as, Ei'nen um et'was fra'gen, To ask a person about something. Of leh'ren, to teach, and hei'sen, to command, which sometimes have a double accusative, mention has already been made (Rule III. 3.)

## Exercises.

He lived a hero's life, and died a hero's death.

He calls himself a self-taught (man), but others denominate him a bold empiric.

to live, le'ben.

hero's life, Hel'denleben, *n.* 3.

a. a.

to die, ster'ben, *irr.*

hero's death, Hel'dentod, *m.* 3.

b. b.

to call, *nen'nen*.  
 self-taught, *selbst'gelehrt*.  
 but, *a'ber*.  
 others, *an'dere*.

to denominate, *hei'sen*.  
 bold, *verme'gen*.  
 empiric, *Empi'rifer* *m. 3. a. a.*

## § 2. ARRANGEMENT.

### A. *Indicative Mood.*

The *Indicative Mood* generally stands after the subject, and before the object.

*Except,*

1. Those instances, mentioned in Book II. Ch. 2. § 2. Rules i. and ii.

2. When the verb must be at the end, that is to say, not only after the subject, but also after the object, and all words connected with it. This is necessary,

(1.) When the member of the sentence, to which the verb belongs, commences with a relative pronoun, as, *der, welcher, wer, was*; or a relative adverb, as, *daher'*, from whence; *darum'*, for what; *warum'*, *weshalb'* or *weshal'ben*, *weswe'gen*, for which reason, for which, wherefore; \* *von wau'nen*, from whence; *wo*, where; and the compounds of *wo*, as, *wovon'*; *woher'*, *womit'*, *woraus'*, &c. Examples: *Der Schrift'steller ist zu schät'zen, welcher die Beför'derung der Wahr'heit zum Zweck'e hat*, That writer is to be esteemed, who has the promotion of truth for his object. *Ich ken'ne ei'nen Mann, der sich mit Recht mei'nen Freund nennt*, I know a man who justly calls himself my friend. *Wer dem laster und des'sen Reiz'en folgt, berei'tet sich ei'ne schmerz'liche Reue*, He who follows vice and its charms, prepares for himself a painful repentance.

---

\* The signification of these words as relatives, must be distinguished from the other meanings which they bear, either as adverbs or conjunctions. *Daher*, thence, therefore; *darum*, for that reason, therefore; *warum'*, *weswe'gen*, why, for what reason, cause the subject to be placed after the verb.



The verb, in the foregoing examples, is at the end of that member of the sentence, to which the relative pronouns, *wel'cher, der, wer*, belong. It is thus with the adverbs alluded to: for instance, *Der Ort, wo ich heu'te mei'nen Freund sah*, The place where to-day I saw my friend. *Wohin' man das Au'ge nur wen'det, erblickt' man nichts als E'lend*, Wherever one turns one's eye, one perceives nothing but misery. The verbs *sah*, and *wen'det*, are put last, in consequence of *wo*, and *wohin'*.

(2) The verb is put at the end, after interrogatives (whether pronouns, adverbs, or conjunctions), when they form indirect questions. Examples: *Er fragt mich, wer die'sen Mor'gen bei Ih'nen war*, He asks me who was with you this morning. *Wissen Sie, welches Buch er heu'te in dem Gar'ten las?* Do you know what book he read to-day in the garden? *Sa'gen Sie mir, was für ei'nen Grund er für sein Aus'bleiben an'gibt*, Tell me what ground he alleges for his staying out. *Wer, welcher, was für ein*, interrogative pronouns, serve here to form indirect questions,\* and the verb stands last. *Ich kann nicht sa'gen, wie es sich zu'getragen hat*, I cannot tell how it has happened; *Ich möch'te wissen, ob vie'le Leu'te bei jet'ziger heißer Wit'terung auf dem Fel'de sein wer'den*, I should like to know, whether, during the present hot weather, many people will be in the field. *Wie*, and *ob*, constitute indirect questions, and the verb is at the end.

(3) After conditional, causal, and consecutive conjunctions. These are: *als, da, bevor', e'he, bis, dafern'*; *damit'* (in order that); *daß, auf daß*, (in order that); *falls, im Fal'le*, (in case that); *gleichwie'*; *indem'* (since, because); *nachdem'*; *nun* (when it signifies since, after — *Nun es ein'mal gesche'hen ist*, Since it once has been done); *ob, obschon', obgleich', obwohl', seit, and seitdem'*; *sin'temal* (since, whereas); *so* (when it means, if); *so bald, or so bald als*; *so lang'e or so lang'e als*; *so weit, or so weit als*; *wäh'rend, wäh'rend daß*;

---

\* It is probably understood by the reader, what is meant by *indirect* questions: but there will remain no doubt, if we change some of the foregoing into *direct* questions, to show the difference, viz. *Wer war bei Ih'nen?* Who was with you? *Wel'ches Buch las er?* What book did he read?

weil; wenn, wengleich', wennschon'; wie, wiewohl', wofern', wo nicht. To these is to be added the comparative conjunction *je*, which, beginning the prior member, removes the verb to the end. Example: *Als er den Aufruhr in der Stadt bemerk'te*, When he perceived the tumult in the city; *Bevor' ich den Wald erreicht' hat'te*, Before I had reached the wood; *bis die Son'ne die erstarr'ten Fel'der auflösen wird*, till the sun shall loosen the congealed fields; *Da der Gesand'te in London ankam*, When the ambassador arrived in London; *Je läng'er der Künst'ler die'se Gegenstände betrachtete*, des'to mehr bewunderte er sie, The more the artist contemplated these objects, the more he admired them.

By the force of the aforesaid conjunctions, the verb is put at the end of the member of the sentence to which it belongs, and sometimes even after a subordinate member, connected with it. For example: *Da ich den Mann, welcher so edel gedacht', eh're und lie'be*, Since I honor and love the man, who has thought so nobly. In this, the principal member is, *da ich den Mann eh're und lie'be*, with which is connected a subordinate or secondary member, *welcher so edel gedacht'*, and the verb of the former is placed after this. It need not necessarily be so; for the sentence might also run thus, *Da ich den Mann eh're und lie'be, welcher so edel gedacht'*. It depends upon euphony and perspicuity, whether the one or the other is to be preferred.

The same principles apply to the infinitive, with the preposition *zu*. The verb, influenced by the above conjunctions, may be put after the infinitive; as, *Weil ich mich nicht zu zank'en wünsch'e*, Because I do not like to quarrel; or before it, *Weil ich nicht wünsch'e, mich zu zank'en*. When the infinitive, with *zu*, has other words belonging to it, for instance, cases of declension which it governs, it is preferable, on account of the extent which it then assumes, to place it with its dependent words after the verb, lest the sentence should become heavy and intricate. Ex. *Da ich wünsch'te, al'le mei'ne Sach'en sobald' als mög'lich in Sich'erheit zu bring'en*, As I wished to bring all my things in safety, as soon as possible; here the sentence would be rendered heavy by placing the verb *wünsch'te*, after the infinitive *bring'en*.

The infinitive, without the preposition *zu*, is immediately governed by the verb, as much as a case of declension; and the verb, under these circumstances, must stand after it; as, *Wenn er das Buch les'en will*, If he will read the book;

where it would be less natural to let the infinitive follow after the verb, as, *Wenn er will das Buch lesen.*

### Exercises.

Whoever has a good conscience. He who understands it  
 The color with which the wall is covered.  
 Do you know what is meant by it?  
 Nobody knows whom he aims at.  
 As soon as we had recovered ourselves.  
 Unless all this be a delusion.  
 The more he saw of the country, so much the more he  
 disliked the thought of returning.  
 He is safe if he will follow my advice.

whoever, <i>wer nur.</i>	to recover one's self, <i>sich er-</i> <i>ho'sen.</i>
good, <i>gut.</i>	unless, <i>wosern' nicht.</i>
conscience, <i>Gewis'sen, n. 3. a.</i>	delusion, <i>Läu'schung, f.</i>
he who, <i>wer.</i>	the more, <i>je mehr.</i>
to understand, <i>versteh'en.</i>	of, <i>von. (Dat.)</i>
color, <i>Far'be, f.</i>	country, <i>Land, n. 3. b. c.</i>
with which, <i>womit'.</i>	to see, <i>se'hen, irr.</i>
wall, <i>Wand, f.</i>	so much the more, <i>desto mehr.</i>
to cover, <i>überzie'hen, irr.</i>	I dislike, <i>mir mis'fällt', irr.</i>
to know, <i>wissen, mix.</i>	thought, <i>Gedank'e, m. 3. c. c.</i>
by it, <i>damit'.</i>	to return, <i>zurück'kehren.</i>
to mean, <i>mei'nen.</i>	safe, <i>si'cher.</i>
nobody, <i>nie'mand.</i>	advice, <i>Rath, m. 3. b.</i>
at, <i>auf. (Acc.)</i>	to follow, <i>fol'gen. (Dat.)</i>
to aim, <i>ab'zielen.</i>	
as soon as, <i>so bald als.</i>	

### B. Subjunctive Mood.

The *Subjunctive Mood*, as to position, is subject to the same rules, as the indicative. When it denotes a wish, or surprise, it often begins the sentence; as, *Ge'be es der Him-mel!* May Heaven grant it! *Wäch'te die Son'ne doch schei'nen!* Oh, that the sun would shine! *Hät'te ichs doch nicht geglaubt!* I should not have thought it! This is always the case when the conditional conjunction, *wenn*, *if*, is omitted: *Wä're ich hier gewe'sen,* Had I been here; for *Wenn ich hier gewe'sen wä're,* If I had been here.

### C. Imperative Mood.

The *Imperative* precedes the personal pronoun, which is the subject. *Lo'be du*, praise thou; *lo'be er*, let him praise; *lo'ben sie*, let them praise.

### D. Infinitive Mood.

The *Infinitive* comes after the object, and the other words of a sentence, except the indicative and subjunctive, when these, for reasons assigned before, are put last. Examples: *Er wünscht die latei'nische Spra'che gründ'lich zu ler'nen*, He wishes to learn the Latin language accurately; *Dieser Mann kann Eng'lish, Franzö'sisch, Deutsch, und verschied'ene and're Spra'chen von Euro'pa re'den*, This man can speak English, French, German, and several other tongues of Europe. *ler'nen* and *re'den* are infinitives.

This rule affects the future tense, because it is composed of an infinitive and the third auxiliary. The infinitive, here, is placed in the same manner, as in the examples above stated, that is to say, after the object and other words; as, *Ich wer'de mor'gen die Ge'gend bese'hen*, I shall to-morrow take a view of the country. *Bese'hen* is the infinitive, belonging to the auxiliary *wer'de*, with which it constitutes the future tense; but this connexion does not alter its position in the sentence. — When the future in the indicative or subjunctive mood must be placed at the end, on account of some preceding word, which requires that collocation, the infinitive that is used in forming the future must be put before the auxiliary; as, *Man glaubt, daß der Kai'ser mit den Franzo'sen Frie'den mach'en wer'de*, It is thought that the Emperor will make peace with the French. Here the infinitive *mach'en*, is before the auxiliary *wer'de*. When the future tense of the passive voice stands in this predicament, the auxiliary verb, in the indicative or subjunctive, is often put before the infinitive, which is done to prevent, by means of the intervening participle, the immediate repetition of *wer'den*: for example, *Ich erwar'te, daß verschied'ene Sach'en nach un'serm Hau'se wer'den gebracht' wer'den*, I expect, that several things will be brought to our house.

Sometimes two infinitives stand together, one of which governs the other; then the governing one should be put

after that which is governed ; as, *Er woll'te sie nicht herein=kommen lassen*, He would not let them come in. Here *lassen*, the governing infinitive, is preceded by the other, *herein=kommen*, which is governed. But this rule is not always observed, as the following example proves ; *Er hat ihn schon mehr als zehn'mal müssen hö'ren*, He has been obliged more than ten times to hear him — instead of *hö'ren müssen*, which is also used.

The infinitive is found, now and then, at the very beginning of a sentence, and in that position bears a strong emphasis ; as, *Kom'men will ich zwar*, *Come*, indeed, I will ; *a'ber schrei'ben darf ich nicht*, but *write*, I must not.

The infinitive may be employed, in a substantive capacity, as the subject or object ; and is then placed accordingly.

### E. Participles.

#### RULE I.

When the participle, either present or past, is used as an adjective, it has its position accordingly. It precedes the noun, and follows the case it governs ; as, *die al'les bele'bende Son'ne*, the all-animating sun ; *der vom Bliß getroffene Baum*, the tree struck by lightning.

#### RULE II.

The participle, when it stands in apposition, is put after the words with which it is connected ; as, *das Buch, von dem Vater geschrie'ben*, the book written by the father ; *Der al'te Feld'herr, we'der dro'hend noch schmei'chelnd, son'dern ru'hig befeh'lend, still'te den Au'fruhr*, The old general, neither threatening nor flattering, but calmly commanding, quelled the sedition.

#### RULE III.

When combined with the auxiliary verbs, the past participle has its place after the object and other words ; and is, therefore, generally found towards the end of the sentence. *Er ist in Lon'don gewe'sen*, He has been in London — *ist gewe'sen*, the participle *gewe'sen* at the end. *Ich ha'be heut'e das Buch ge=le'sen*, I have read the book to-day — *ha'be gele'sen*. *Er wird*

mit Recht ein großer Mann genannt', He is justly called a great man. If the auxiliary, by the power of some pronoun or conjunction, be removed to the end, the past participle stands before it; as, Die Thaten, welche von dem Dichter geschil'dert wer'den, The deeds which are depicted by the poet: the auxiliary wer'den, at the end, because of the pronoun welche; the participle, geschil'dert, before it. Ich weiß es, weil ich den Mann selbst gese'hen ha'be, I know it, because I have seen the man myself: the conjunction weil, removes the verb ha'be to the end, and the participle gese'hen, precedes it. — When the past participle and the infinitive of an auxiliary verb come together, the participle is placed before the infinitive; as, gese'sen ha'ben, to have read; geliebt' wer'den, to be loved. Should it so happen, that the participle, the infinitive, and the verb definite, that is to say, either the indicative or subjunctive, meet together at the end of a sentence, the arrangement may either be thus, participle, infinitive, indicative or subjunctive, Nachdem' ich das Buch gese'sen ha'ben wer'de, After I shall have read the book; or the verb definite, may be put before the participle and infinitive, Nachdem' ich das Buch wer'de gese'sen ha'ben.

### Examples.

The lame courier. A much-promising commencement. Three roasted apples. Let us all, hoping (for) the best, and prepared for the worst, persevere in our undertaking. They have accomplished their task. The plant which is described by Linnæus, is not the same. Before the clock shall have ceased striking.

to be lame, hinf'en.	to prepare, fass'en.
courier, Bo'te, <i>m.</i> 2. a.	in, in. ( <i>Dat.</i> )
much, viel.	undertaking, Unterneh'men, <i>n.</i>
to promise, versprech'en.	3. a.
commencement, An'fang, <i>m.</i>	to persevere, behar'ren.
to roast, rö'sten.	task, Auf'gabe, <i>f.</i>
apple *Ap'fel, <i>m.</i> 3. a. a.	to accomplish, voll'en'den.
let us, las'set uns.	plant, Pflanz'e.
the best, das Bes'te.	by, von.
to hope, hof'sen.	to describe, beschrei'ben, <i>irr.</i>
for, auf. ( <i>Acc.</i> )	the same, (der, die, das) näm'liche.
the worst, das Schlimm'ste.	

before, e'he.  
clock, Gloc'ke, f.

to cease striking, aus'schla-  
gen, irr.

### F. Compound Verbs.

*Separable compound verbs* have the particle separated from the verb, when this is at the end of the sentence; and require it to be placed after the object and other words, including even a relative or intermediate member of the sentence. Ich neh'me Ihr Geschenk' mit Dank'barkeit an, I receive your present with gratitude; verb an'nehmen, to receive — the particle an, at the end. Sie ka'men in An'se-hung die'ser Sach'e bald überein', They soon agreed with respect to this matter; verb überein'kommen. Neh'men Sie das Buch mit, Take the book with you; verb mit'nehmen. Er sah diese Bege'benheiten, wel'che nun nicht mehr zu än'dern sind, voraus', He foresaw these events which are now no more to be altered. But the particle is generally put at the end of the first part of a sentence if the latter part is merely connected with it by a preposition; as, Er sah voraus', daß diese Bege'benheiten erfol'gen wür'den, He foresaw that these events would follow. In this sentence the particle voraus', before, cannot stand after wür'den. When the verb, in consequence of a pronoun, or a conjunction, is brought to the end of the sentence, the particle is not separated from it; as, Da ich Ihr Geschenk' mit Dank'barkeit an'nehme, As I received your present with gratitude. The verb an'nehme stands last, on account of the conjunction da, and remains, for this reason, united with the particle.

The infinitive mood, and the past participle have their place after the object, and at or near the end of the sentence; therefore the particle is not separated, except by zu, in the infinitive, and by ge, in the past participle; as, mit zu nehmen, mit'genommen. Zu, however, does not always accompany the infinitive. From what has been said, it appears, that the separation principally occurs in the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative moods.

### Exercises.

May it serve to your advantage.

Praise him.

He tries to find the philosopher's stone.

I shall now go to rest.  
 They hope that the war will be prolonged.  
 He predicts that one after the other will be arrested.  
 Why should we not<sup>2</sup> bid<sup>4</sup> him<sup>1</sup> go<sup>3</sup>.  
 He<sup>3</sup> indeed<sup>4</sup> can<sup>2</sup>not<sup>5</sup> flatter<sup>1</sup>, but he wishes to console.  
 Give up this plan! Could I foreknow this? They have sent off the girl. He continued to urge him eagerly.

to, zu. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	why, warum'.
advantage, Vor'theil, <i>m.</i> 3.	I shall, ich soll, <i>mix.</i>
b. b.	not, nicht.
to serve, die'nen.	to go, ge'hen.
to praise, lo'ben.	to bid, hei'sen.
to try, sich bemü'hen.	to flatter, schmei'cheln.
the philosopher's stone, der	I can, ich kann, <i>mix.</i>
Stein der Wei'sen.	indeed, freilich.
to find, fin'den.	but, a'ber.
to rest, zur Ru'he.	to wish, wün'schen.
to go, sich bege'ben.	to console, trö'sten.
to hope, hoffen.	to give up, auf'geben, <i>irr.</i>
that, daß.	plan, Plan.
war, Krieg, <i>m.</i>	to foreknow, voraus'wissen.
to be prolonged, sich in die	to send off, fort'schicken.
Läng'e zie'hen.	girl, Mäd'chen, <i>n.</i> 3. a. a.
to predict, voraus'sagen.	to continue, fort'fahren, <i>irr.</i>
after, nach. ( <i>Dat.</i> )	eagerly, heftig.
to arrest, verhaften.	to urge, zu'sehen. ( <i>Dat.</i> )

## CHAPTER VI.

### ADVERBS.

#### ARRANGEMENT.

##### RULE I.

An adverb joined to an adjective, must always stand before it; as, sehr gut, very good; nicht schlecht, not bad.



## RULE II.

When the adverb belongs to the verb, it is put after the verb (unless the verb be at the end of the sentence, Book II. Ch. 5. § 2. A.) and, in general, also after the object. *Er be-  
han'delt den Ge'genstand vortreff'lich*, He treats the subject  
excellently; *vortreff'lich* is the adverb. Such adverbs, how-  
ever, as denote time, (for example, *oft*, often; *häu'fig*, fre-  
quently; *heu'te*, to-day; *ges'tern*, yesterday, and the like,) are  
commonly placed immediately after the verb, and before the  
object. Besides the adverb cannot, with propriety, be placed  
after the infinitive, or past participle. Moreover, unless the  
verb be at the end, the adverb cannot stand between the sub-  
ject and the verb.

## RULE III.

For the sake of emphasis, the adverb may be removed from  
its place towards the beginning of the sentence; as, *Ich ha'be  
heu'te das Buch gele'sen*, I have to-day read the book; which  
makes the notion of *heu'te*, to-day, more perceptible than, *Ich  
ha'be das Buch heu'te gele'sen*. This seems to be the reason  
why adverbs implying time, are commonly placed before the  
object: namely, they are thus rendered more distinct. But  
to make the emphasis so evident that it cannot be mistaken,  
the adverb should be put at the beginning; *Heu'te ha'te ich das  
Nas'horu gese'hen*, To-day I have seen the rhinoceros. In this  
remark are not included the interrogative adverbs, such as,  
*wie*, how; *wann*, when; *warum'*, why; *weswe'gen*, wherefore;  
*wo*, where; which, as they can be placed nowhere but in  
the beginning, derive no particular distinction from that po-  
sition.

There are adverbs that in no place seem to be susceptible  
of an emphasis, viz. those which express chance, probabili-  
ty, and similar vague and undefined ideas — *vielleicht'*, per-  
haps; *vermuth'lich*, probably; *wahr'scheinlich*, very likely;  
and others. As no difference arises, in the purport of the  
sentence, from their situation, they may be put any where,  
even between the subject and the verb, where no other ad-  
verb is permitted to stand. *Dieser Mann vielleicht' wird es  
wissen*, This man perhaps will know it; *Sein Bru'der ver-  
muth'lich hat ihm das geschrie'ben*, His brother probably has

written that to him. If they have any effect when thus transposed, it may be, that they rather give force to the subject.

The negative, *nicht*, not, has its station commonly after the object; as, *Der Mann thut sei'ne Pflicht nicht*, The man does not do his duty. Here the action of the verb is accompanied by the negative. If it is to be particularly referred to the subject, or object, or any other word, it must be put before such word. *Nicht Reich'thum, sondern Zufrie'denheit macht die Men'schen glück'lich*, Not wealth, but contentment makes men happy. In this instance, the negative is applied to the subject, and stands before it. *Lass' uns nicht den Verlust' des Schiffes, sondern den Tod so vie'ler treff'licher See'leute beklagen*, Do not let us lament the loss of the ship, but the death of so many fine seamen. The negative before the object.

### Exercises.

A very just comparison. He experienced quite a different treatment. She sang this air beautifully. They wore their best dresses yesterday. It is by no means decided. In<sup>1</sup> order<sup>1</sup> to<sup>11</sup> ex<sup>10</sup>tricate<sup>12</sup> himself<sup>2</sup> as<sup>3</sup> soon<sup>4</sup> as<sup>5</sup> possible<sup>6</sup> from<sup>7</sup> his<sup>8</sup> embarrassment<sup>9</sup>. He will depart to-morrow. They will probably resort to this measure. He has not received your letter. Do not trouble yourselves about the past, but think of the future.

very, <i>sehr</i> .	to decide, <i>entschei'den</i> , <i>irr</i> .
just, <i>rich'tig</i> .	in order, <i>um</i> .
comparison, <i>Vergleich'</i> , <i>m</i> .	as soon as, <i>so bald als</i> .
b. b.	possible, <i>mög'lich</i> .
to experience, <i>erfab'ren</i> , <i>irr</i> .	from, <i>aus</i> . ( <i>Dat.</i> )
quite, <i>ganz</i> .	embarrassment, <i>Verle'genheit</i> ,
different, <i>verschie'den</i> .	<i>f</i> .
treatment, <i>Behand'lung</i> , <i>f</i> .	to extricate, <i>heraus'ziehen</i> .
to sing, <i>sing'en</i> , <i>irr</i> .	to-morrow, <i>mor'gen</i> .
air, <i>U'rie</i> , <i>f</i> .	to depart, <i>ab'reisen</i> .
beautifully, <i>schön</i> .	probably, <i>wahr'scheinlich</i> .
to wear, <i>trä'gen</i> , <i>irr</i> .	to, <i>zu</i> . ( <i>Dat.</i> )
yesterday, <i>gestern</i> .	measure, <i>Mas'regel</i> , <i>f</i> .
dress, <i>Kleid</i> , <i>n. 3. b. e</i> .	to resort, <i>grei'fen</i> .
by no means, <i>kei'neswegs</i> .	letter, <i>Brief</i> , <i>m. 3. b. b</i> .

to receive, <i>erhalten, irr.</i>	the past, <i>das Vergang'ene.</i>
to trouble one's self, <i>sich be-</i> <i>küm'mern.</i>	but, <i>a'ber.</i>
about, <i>um. (Acc.)</i>	to think of, <i>bedenk'en. (Acc.)</i> the future, <i>das Zu'künftige.</i>

## CHAPTER VII.

## PREPOSITIONS.

## § 1. AGREEMENT AND GOVERNMENT.

When the same preposition belongs to more than one noun, it need be only once expressed; as, *Von meinem Vater, meinem Bruder und meiner Schwester,* From my father, my brother, and my sister.

Some prepositions govern a genitive, some a dative, some either a genitive or dative, some an accusative, and some either a dative or an accusative.

## 1. Prepositions governing the Genitive.

*anstatt'*, instead; as, *anstatt' des Vaters,* instead of the father.

*Statt* is sometimes separated from *an*, as, *an Kindes statt,* instead of a child; in which case, this last word may also be considered as a substantive, and written with a capital letter, *Statt*, place.

*(halb)* is only used in compounds: particularly, *außerhalb*, out of; as, *außerhalb des Hauses,* out of doors; *innerhalb*, in, within; as, *innerhalb dreier Tage,* within three days; *oberhalb*, above; as, *oberhalb der Stadt,* above the town; *unterhalb*, below; as, *unterhalb der Stadt,* below the town.

*hal'ben*, or *hal'ber* (when the noun has no article or pronoun before it), on account of, for the sake of; as, *des Friedens hal'ben*, for the sake of the peace; *Alters hal'ber*, on account of age; *deiner Lasten hal'ben*, on account of your vices. *Hal'ben* is often joined with the genitive of the personal pronouns, *ich, I, du, thou, wir, we, &c., gen. meiner,* of me, *deiner,* of thee, *unser,* of us, &c.; in which case the final *r* of these genitives is either changed into *t*, or a *t* is

- added ; as, *mei'nethalben*, for my sake ; *dei'nethalben*, for thy sake ; *sei'nethalben*, for his *or* its sake ; *un'serthalben*, for our sake ; *eu'r ethalben*, for your sake ; *ih'r ethalben*, for her *or* their sake. It is also joined with *deß*, of that, and *wesß*, of what *or* which ; as, *deß'halb*, on account of that ; *wesß'halb*, on account of which *or* what.
- dies'seits*, on this side of ; as, *dies'seits des Flusses*, on this side of the river.
- jen'seits*, beyond, on the other side ; as, *jen'seits des Ganges*, on the other side of the Ganges.
- kraft*, by virtue of ; as, *kraft meines Amtes*, by virtue of my office.
- laut*, according to, conformably ; as, *laut des o'brigkeitslichen Befehls'*, according to the command of the government.
- mit'telst* *or* *vermit'telst*, by, by means of ; as, *mit'telst* *or* *vermit'telst* *deines Beistandes*, by means of your assistance.
- un'geachtet* *or* *ohn'geachtet*, notwithstanding, sometimes precedes and sometimes follows the noun ; as, *un'geachtet aller Hindernisse*, notwithstanding all impediments ; *seines Fleißes un'geachtet*, notwithstanding his industry.
- un'weit* *or* *ohn'weit*, not far from ; as, *un'weit des Dorfes*, not far from the village.
- vermö'ge*, by reason *or* virtue of, by dint of, by means of ; as, *vermö'ge seiner Geburt'*, by reason of his birth ; *vermö'ge der Übung*, by dint of practice ; *vermö'ge des Fleißes*, by means of diligence.
- wäh'rend*, during ; as, *wäh'rend der Zeit*, during the time ; *wäh'rend des Krieges*, during the war.
- w'e'gen*, on account of, because of. It may stand before *or* after the noun ; *Ich that es meines Vaters wegen*, I did it because of *or* on account of my father ; *w'e'gen seines Fleißes*, on account of his diligence. *W'e'gen* is often joined with the genitive of pronouns, like *halb'en* ; as, *mei'netwegen*, for my sake ; *deß'wegen* on account of that ; *wesß'wegen*, on account of which *or* what, &c.

## 2. Prepositions governing the Dative.

- aus*, out of ; as, *aus dem Bet'te*, out of bed.
- au'ser*, out of, without, besides ; as, *au'ser Ordnung*, out of *or* without order ; *au'ser der Stadt*, out of the city *or* town ; *au'ser dem Hause*, out of the house ; *au'ser mir*, besides me.

**bei**, by, near; as, *bei dem Hause*, near the house; *bei der Hand*, by the hand.

**entge'gen**, against, towards; as, *dem Winde entge'gen*, against the wind; *Wir wol'len un'serm Freun'de entge'gen ge'hen*, We will go to meet our friend.

**gegenu'ber**, opposite to; as, *dem Hause gegenu'ber*, opposite to the house. It may be separated; as, *ge'gen mir u'ber*, opposite to me.

**mit**, with; as, *mit dem Vater*, with the father.

**nach**, 1. after, behind; 2. to *or* towards, with names of places, and verbs expressing motion; 3. according to, following; as, *nach mir*, after or behind me; *Wann ge'hen Sie nach der Stadt?* When do you go to town? *sei'ner Geburt' nach*, according to his birth; *dem Stro'me nach*, following the stream.

**nebst or sammt**, together with; as, *nebst or sammt dem Vater*, together with the father.

**seit**, since; as, *seit der Zeit*, since the time.

**von**, from, of, by; as, *von mir*, from me, of me; *Das Gedicht' ist von ihm*, That poem is by him.

**vor**, before; as, *vor mir*, before me.

**zu**, to, at, by, on, in; as, *zu mir*, to me; *zu Lon'don*, at *or* in London; *zu Hause*, at home; *zu Wasser*, by water; *zu Lan'de*, on land; *zu Fu'ße*, on foot.

**zunächst'**, next to; as, *Er saß mir zunächst'*, He sat next to me.

**zuwi'der**, contrary to, against; as, *mir zuwi'der*, against me.

### 3. Prepositions governing the Accusative.

**durch**, through; as, *durch den Wald*, through the wood; *durch dich*, through you.

**für**, for; as, *für mich*, for me; *für den Preis*, for the price.

**ge'gen**, against, opposite; as, *ge'gen den Wind*, against the wind; *ge'gen mich*, against me *or* towards me.

**gen** (contraction of *ge'gen*), towards, is applied to few objects; as, *gen Him'mel*, towards heaven. It is also used as a nautical phrase; as, *Nord gen Ost*, north by east.

**oh'ne, son'der,** } without; as, *oh'ne or son'der mich*, without me.

**um**, about; as, *um die Stadt*, about the city; *um mich*, about me.

**wi'der**, against, in opposition to; as, *wi'der mich*, euch, ihn, sie, es, sie, against me, you, him, her, it, them.

#### 4. Prepositions governing the Genitive, or Dative; and the Genitive, or Accusative.

*zufolge*, according to, before the substantive, with the genitive: as, *zufolge Ih'res Befehls'*, according to your command: but after the substantive with the dative; as, *Ih'rem Befehl' zufolge*, according to your command.

*längs*, along, generally with the dative, sometimes with the genitive; as, *längs dem We'ge*, along the way; and sometimes, *längs des We'ges*, along the way.

*ohne*, without, generally with the accusative; as, *ohne mich*, without me; but in some phrases, after the substantive, with the genitive; as, *Zweifels ohne*, without doubt.

#### 5. Prepositions governing the Dative, or Accusative.\*

*an*, at, in, on, with the dative; as, *an ei'nem Or'te*, in or at a place; as, *Er ist an al'len Or'ten*, He is at or in every place: but, *an*, to, with the accusative: as, *Er ge'het an al'le Or'te*, He goes to every place.

*auf*, in, upon, with the dative; as, *Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische*, The book lies upon the table: but, *auf*, into, on, with the accusative; as, *Le'ge das Buch auf den Tisch*, Lay the book on the table.

*hin'ter*, behind, with the dative; as, *Er ist hin'ter mir*, He is behind me: but with the accusative, in *Er stellt sich hin'ter mich*, He places himself behind me.

*in*, in, with the dative; as, *Er ist in dem Zim'mer*, He is in the room: in, into, with the accusative; as, *Er ge'het in das Zim'mer*, He goes into the room.

*ne'ben*, next to, with the dative; as, *Er wohnt ne'ben mei'nem Hau'se*, He lives next to my house: but with the accusative, in *Er zie'het ne'ben mein Haus*, He moves next to my house, *i. e.* He moves into the house next to mine.

*ü'ber*, above, with the dative; as, *Er wohnt ü'ber mir*, He lives over or above me: but *ü'ber*, over, with the accusative, in *Er spring'et ü'ber mich*, He jumps over me.

---

\* If they signify motion or rest *in* a place, the dative is used; but when motion *to* a place is expressed, the accusative is used.

*un'ter*, among, under, below, with the dative ; as, *Er ist un'ter den Leu'ten*, He is among the people ; *Er ist un'ter mir*, He is below me ; *Es liegt un'ter dem Ti'sche*, It lies under the table : but with the accusative, in *Er gehet un'ter die Leu'te*, He goes among the people ; *Er stellt sich un'ter mich*, He places himself below me ; *Ich wer'fe es un'ter den Tisch*, I throw it under the table.

*vor*, before, with the dative ; as, *Vor der Zeit*, Before the time ; *Vor mir stand ein Baum*, Before me stood a tree : but with the accusative, in *Er geht vor die Thür*, He goes before the door ; *Er tritt vor den Rich'ter*, He steps before the judge.

*zwischen*, between, with the dative ; as, *Er ging zwischen dir und mir*, He walked between you and me : but with the accusative, in *Er dräng'te sich zwischen dich und mich*, He forced himself between you and me.

## § 2. ARRANGEMENT.

### RULE I.

The preposition always continues with the case, and is usually prefixed to it.

*Hal'ben*, *hal'ber*, *entge'gen*, *zuiw'der*, are constantly put after their cases. *Durch*, *nach*, *gegenü'ber*, *un'gachtet*, *wegen*, *zu*, *zufol'ge*, sometimes before, and sometimes after. See § 1.

### RULE II.

The preposition together with its case may be looked upon in the position of words, as an adverb ; accordingly, its place is after the object. *Ich ha'be ein'en Brief aus Deutsch'land erhal'ten*, I have received a letter from Germany.

### RULE III.

The preposition with its case may be put before the object, for the purpose of emphasis : *Ich ha'be aus Deutsch'land ein'en Brief erhal'ten* — here the words *aus Deutsch'land* acquire energy from their position. But the stress is most forcible, when the preposition is placed at the beginning of the sentence : *Aus Deutsch'land ha'be ich ein'en Brief erhal'ten*, *From Germany* I have received a letter.

## RULE IV.

It cannot be inserted between the subject and the verb, unless it belongs exclusively to the former; as, *Der Mann mit dem blau'en Roc'ke hat es gethan'*, The man with a blue coat (that is wearing a blue coat) has done it. *Je'ner mit dem De'gen hat die That begang'en*, That one with the sword (that is, he who has the sword) has committed the deed. It is not said, that the first has done it with the blue coat, or that the second has committed the deed with the sword; this would be a false construction. But, from the collocation of the words, it is to be understood, that the one, who wears a blue coat, is charged with a certain deed, and the other, who has a sword, has committed the deed. Therefore, if the preposition, with its case, is not exclusively referred to the subject, it cannot be put, where we see it in the examples adduced.

## RULE V.

If an adverb and preposition meet in the same member of a sentence, the adverb should come before the preposition, especially, when the former consists only of one or two syllables; for example, *Er schreibt gut mit die'ser Fe'der*, He writes well with this pen; *Wir ge'hen heu'te auf die Jagd*, We go a hunting to-day; *Sie rei'seten ei'lig durch Lon'don*, They passed hastily through London; *Er wird mor'gen zu mir kom'men*, He will come to me to-morrow. The adverbs *gut*, *heu'te*, *ei'lig*, *mor'gen*, here stand before the preposition.

## Exercises.

Since this event. Contrary to my wishes. Opposite our garden. I have searched after this circumstance in all (the) records. That gentleman with the solemn air has made the remark. They were soon put to flight.

since, *seit*. (*Dat.*)  
 event, *Ereig'niß*, *n.* 3. b. b.  
 wish, *\*Wunsch*, *m.* 3. b. b.  
 contrary, *zuwi'der*.  
 opposite, *gegenü'ber*.  
 garden, *\*Gar'ten*, *m.* 3. a. a.  
 circumstance, *\*Um'stand*, *m.*  
 3. b. b.  
 record, *Ur'kunde*, *f.*

to search after, *nach'forsche'n*.  
 gentleman, *Herr*, *m.*  
 solemn air, *Amts'miene*, *f.*  
 remark, *Bemer'kung*, *f.*  
 to make, *mach'en*.  
 soon, *bal'd*.  
 to put to flight, *in die Flucht  
 schla'gen*, *irr.*



## CHAPTER VIII.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

## § I. AGREEMENT AND GOVERNMENT.

*The Conjunction so*

is employed to connect a sentence when the prior member of it begins with a consecutive, causal, or conditional conjunction. *Da wir in der Hauptsache einig sind, so lassen uns nicht über Kleinigkeiten uns entzweien*, As we agree in the essentials, let us not quarrel about trifles. *Wenn man sich in den Wissenschaften auszeichnen will, so muß man ununterbrochenen Fleiß besitzen*, If a person would distinguish himself in the sciences, he must possess unceasing industry. *So* is not always required after the consecutive and causal conjunctions, such as *da*, when; *als*, as; *wie*, as; *weil*, because: but it is rarely left out after the conditional conjunctions, such as, *wenn*, if; *obschon'*, *obgleich'*, *wennschon'*, *wengleich'*, although. When the conditional is not given in the prior member, but understood, it is common to make use of *so* in the subsequent member; as, *Hät'te ich das gewußt', so wä're ich nicht gekommen*, Had I known that, I should not have come; which stands for, *Wenn ich das gewußt' hät'te*, If I had known that;—therefore *so* must be inserted, in the following member. It is to be recommended after consecutive and causal conjunctions, when the antecedent member is of some length, or consists of several parts. *So* is also found after the verb in the imperative mood, but no conjunction; as, *Vertrau'e ihm, so wird er dir helfen*, Trust in him, and he will help thee.

*So* is used when *obgleich'*, *obschon'*, or a similar word, meaning *though*, *although*, precedes: *doch*, yet, or a synonymous conjunction, generally follows. *Ob er gleich jung ist, so hat er doch viele Erfahrung*, Although he is young, he has nevertheless great experience.

## § 2. ARRANGEMENT.

## RULE I.

The conjunction is, in general, placed at the beginning of the sentence, and before the subject.

## RULE II.

1. The following conjunctions join words and sentences without changing the position of the verb.

und, and ; as, Feu'er, Luft, Er'de, und Wasser sind die vier Element'e, Fire, air, earth, and water are the four elements ; Wir ge'hen und re'den mit einan'der, We walk and talk with one another.

auch, also, too ; as, Wir sind froh, und sic auch, We are glad, and they too ; Ich glau'be es auch, I think so too ; Ha'ben Sie auch geho'rt ? Have you heard also ?

a'ber, allein', son'dern, but ; as, Wir sind betru'bt', a'ber nicht entmu'thiget, We are afflicted, but not dismayed ; Wir fra'gen, allein' (a'ber) nie'mand ant'wortet, We ask, but nobody answers ; Wir ho'ren nichts Gu'tes, a'ber auch nichts Bo'ses, We hear no good, but nothing bad : Nicht er, son'dern ich, Not he, but I ; Ich ha'be es nicht nur gese'hen, son'dern auch geho'rt', I have not only seen it, but heard it also.

doch, jedoch', but, nevertheless, although, yet ; as, Sie droh'ten ihm, doch er blieb stand'haft, They threatened him, but he remained constant ; Er blei'bet doch mein Freund, He remains nevertheless my friend ; Er gestat'tete es, jedoch' (doch) un'getue, He granted it, although reluctantly.

denn, for, because ; as, Sie wisse'n es, denn ich sag'te es ih'nen, They know it, for or because I told (it to) them.

ent'weder, eith'er, o'der, or ; as, Ent'weder sic sind (or sind sic) falsche Freun'de, o'der offenba're Fein'de, Either they are false friends, or open enemies.

we'der, neither, noch, nor ; as, Sie sind we'der hung'rig noch dur'stig, They are neither hungry nor thirsty.

zwar, however, indeed ; as, Sie ha'ben es zwar, a'ber nicht mit Recht, They have it indeed, but not with justice.

2. The conjunctions, a'ber, but, and auch, also, may stand any where in the sentence. At the beginning, U'ber mein

Bru'der wei'gert sich, But my brother declines it. After another conjunction, Da a'ber mein Bru'der sich wei'gert. After an adverb, Nun a'ber befiehlt' es die Klug'heit, But now prudence commands it; or after a preposition with its case, Mit die'sen Leu'ten a'ber kann ich nichts an'fangen, But with these people I can do nothing. And it makes no alteration in the influence of other words upon the constitution of the sentence. Those for instance, which bring the subject after the verb, retain the same power, though a'ber be inserted after them; as appears from the preceding examples. It may also be placed after the subject, Die Franzo'sen a'ber haben den Eng'ländern den Krieg erklärt'. After the object, Die Franzo'sen haben den Eng'ländern den Krieg a'ber erklärt'. When not in the beginning of the sentence, it commonly gives energy to the word that precedes it. The personal pronouns are, generally, put before it, when the verb has quitted its original place; as, Da er a'ber nicht kommt, But since he does not come; Das wün'schen wir a'ber nicht, But this we do not wish; Das Geld verlang'e ich a'ber, But the money I demand. — What has been remarked of a'ber, may be applied to auch; though perhaps we should say, that auch has nearly, but not quite the same license of position. Moreover, when auch is placed at the beginning of a sentence, the subject *may* be placed after the verb; which would be wrong after a'ber. Ex. Auch glaubt sein Va'ter, His father also believes; or Auch sein Va'ter glaubt, Also his father believes.

## RULE III.

The following conjunctions, when taken relatively, require the verb to be placed at the end of the sentence; but their use will be best understood by examples, as they are not always used as relatives.

als, † as, when, than, like, but.	demnach', sin'temal, whereas.
bevor', before.	e'he, before.
bis, till.	falls or im Fall, in case.
da, when.	in so fern, in so much, if.
da, indem', as, since, whilst.	nachdem', after, after that.
daß, that.	weil, dirweil', because.
auf daß, damit', in order that.	ob, whether.

---

† Als has sometimes a comparative signification.

als ob, as if.	wiewohl',	} though, although.
wenn, if, when.	obwohl',	
wo, so, if.	obgleich',	
wosfern', sofern', dafern', if.	obschon',	
wo nicht, if not.	wenngleich',	
un'geachtet, or ohn'geachtet, notwithstanding.		

3. The following conjunctions require the verb to be placed at the end of the sentence, if used relatively; but otherwise the verb is put before the nominative.

daher', hence.		woher', whence.	
deshalb', or	} therefore, for which reason.	weshalb' or	} wherefore, for which reason.
deshal'ben,		weshal'ben,	
deswe'gen,		weswe'gen,	
um des'willen,		um wes'willen,	
darum',		warum',	

4. The following conjunctions require certain others after them, which frequently cause the nominative to be placed after the verb.

ent'weder, either,	requires	o'der, or.
w'e'der, neither,		noch, nor.
weil, because,		so.
da, when,		so.
je, the,		je, or des'to, the.
sowohl', as well, }		als, as. }
sobald', as soon, }		
		a'ber, allein', but.
		doch, den'noch, or jedoch', how- ever, yet.
zwar, indeed,		gleich'wohl, yet, for all that, notwithstanding.
		hing'e'gen, on the contrary.
		nichts des'to we'niger, never- theless.
wenn, if,		so.*

\* Observe, the word so is sometimes a conjunction, sometimes an adverb, and sometimes is used as a relative pronoun. Examples. 1. As a conjunction; So ihr lie'bet, die euch lie'ben,

wie, gleichwie', as,	requires	so.	
so, so,		so.	
nicht, not,		son'dern, but.	
nicht allein',	} not only,	} son'dern, but.	
nicht nur,			son'dern auch, but also.
obgleich',	} although,	} so, so.	
obschon',			} so — doch, den'noch, however, nevertheless.
obwohl',			
wenn schon,			
wenn auch,			
wiewohl',	so'nichts des'to we'niger, nev- ertheless.		

As the application of conjunctions may be better learned by examples than by rules, the following sentences are subjoined to exemplify their use.

Als wir zu A'bend geges'sen  
hat'ten, (so) ging'en wir spa-  
zie'ren.

When we had supped, we  
took a walk : or having sup-  
ped, &c.

So roth als ei'ne Ro'se.

As red as a rose.

Er ist äl'ter als ich.

He is older than I.

Er han'delt als ein rech't-  
schaffener Mann.

He acts like an honest man.

Als er den Auf'ruhr in der  
Stadt bemerk'te.

When he perceived the tu-  
mult in the city.

Er ist zwar mein Feind nicht,  
a'ber doch auch nicht mein  
Freund.

He is not my enemy in-  
deed, but yet he is not my  
friend.

Als ich in Lon'don an'kam.

When I arrived in London.

Bis die Son'ne die erstarr'ten  
Fel'der auflösen wird.

Till the sun shall loosen the  
congealed fields.

Da der Bo'te in Lon'don  
an'kam.

When the messenger arrived  
in London.

Vom Mor'gen bis zum  
A'bend.

From morning till evening.

If you love (those) who love you. 2. As an adverb ; Es ist so, wie ich gesagt' ha'be, It is so, as I said ; Wie so ? How so ? 3. As a relative pronoun ; Das Buch, so (wel'ches) ich gekauft' ha'be, The book which I have bought.

Da ich den Mann, welcher  
so e'del gehan'delt, eh're und  
lie'be; or,

Da ich den Mann eh're und  
lie'be, welcher so e'del gehan'  
delt hat.

Since I honor and love the  
man, who acted so nobly.

Wenn er das Buch lesen  
will.

If he will read the book.

Ich sah es; da'her weis ich  
es.

I saw it; thence, *or* for that  
reason, I know it.

Woher' wissen sie es?

Whence do they know it?

Er wuss'te es nicht, da'rum  
ha'be ich es ihm gesagt'.

He did not know it, there-  
fore I have told (*it*) him.

Bevor' ich den Wald er-  
reicht' ha'te.

Before I had reached the  
wood.

Als ich die'sen Mor'gen an  
dem Fen'ster stand, (da\*) sah  
ich die Solda'ten in die Stadt  
kom'men.

When, *or* as, I stood at the  
window this morning, *or* stand-  
ing at the window this morn-  
ing, I saw the soldiers coming  
into town.

Indem' or weil ich an dem  
Fen'ster stand, sah ich, &c.

Whilst I was standing at the  
window, I saw, &c.

Wie ich an dem Fen'ster  
stand, &c.

As I happened to stand, *or*  
as I stood at the window, &c.

Da ich an dem Fen'ster  
stand, &c.

When, *or* since, I stood at  
the window, &c.

Wiewohl' er sehr krank ist,  
so ist doch noch Hoff'nung  
vorhan'den, da's er wie'der auf-  
kommen wer'de, (or wird.)

Although he is very ill, yet  
there is room to hope that he  
will recover.

Ich vermach'e dir nicht al-  
lein' mein Haus, son'dern auch  
Ha'be und Gut.

I leave to thee not only my  
house, but also my goods and  
chattels.

Ich erwar'tete Ih're An-  
kunft nicht, des'to grö'ser ist  
mei'ne Freu'de.

I did not expect your arri-  
val, the greater therefore is  
my joy.

Je ru'higer das Le'ben ist,  
des'to geschick'ter ist es zum  
Nach'denken.

The more quiet life is, the  
more fit it is for reflection.

Ent'weder bist du toll, o'der  
du wirst es wer'den.

Either thou art mad, or thou  
wilt become so.

\* Da, in such cases, is frequently omitted and understood.

Er scheu'et we'der Gott noch  
Men'schen, we'der Tod noch  
Le'ben.

Ob ihr gleich gelehrt' seid, so  
gibt es doch (or gleich'wohl)  
noch viel, das ihr nicht wis'set.

Ob sie gleich reich sind, so  
kö'n'nen sie doch nicht al'len  
Leu'ten hel'fen.

Obwohl' es unmo'glich schien,  
nichts des'to we'niger versuch't  
ten wir es.

Indem' ich davon' sprach.

Ob er gleich mein Vet'ter ist,  
so kö'mmt er doch nicht zu mir.

Er hat es entwe'der gethan',  
o'der wird es noch thun.

Sie hat mir un'recht gethan',  
den'noch will ich ihr verge'ben.

So leicht'gläubig er ist, so  
treu'los ist er.

So lange er sich in den  
Schrank'en der Beschei'denheit  
hielt, war ich sein aufrichtig-  
ster Freund.

Ob er gleich alt ist, so hat  
er doch den völ'ligen Gebrauch'  
sei'ner Gei'steskräfte.

Ein Kind muß nicht nur den  
Va'ter, son'dern auch die Mut-  
ter eh'ren.

Sobald' (als) es vier geschla-  
gen hat.

Nachdem' wir Al'les wohl  
untersucht' hat'ten.

Ehe die Gloc'ke aus'geschla-  
gen hat.

Je mehr ich trink'e, des'to  
mehr ha'be ich Durst.

Je län'ger, je lie'ber.

22\*

He fears neither God nor  
men, neither death nor life.

Although you are learned,  
yet there is still much that you  
do not know.

Although they are rich, yet  
they cannot help every body.

Although it seemed impos-  
sible, we nevertheless at-  
tempted it.

Whilst I was speaking of  
it.

Although he is my cousin,  
yet he does not come to (see)  
me.

Either he has done it, or he  
will do it yet.

She has done me wrong, yet  
I will forgive her.

He is equally credulous and  
treacherous.

Whilst he kept himself  
within the bounds of modesty,  
I was his most sincere friend.

Although he is old, he still  
has the perfect use of his men-  
tal faculties.

A child must not only hon-  
or his father, but also his  
mother.

As soon as it has struck  
four.

After having well examined  
every thing.

Before the clock has done  
striking.

The more I drink, the more  
thirsty I am.

The longer, the dearer.

## RULE III.

Some conjunctions, when at the beginning, cause the subject to be placed after the verb. They are *da*, then; *daher'*, therefore; *dann*, *darauf'*, then; *darum'*, for that reason; *demnach'*, *folg'lich*, consequently; *den'noch*, *jedoch'*, nevertheless; *nun*, *jetzt*, now; *so*, therefore; *hingegen*, on the contrary; *indessen*, meanwhile; *ingleich'en*, likewise; *kaum*, hardly; *mithin'*, therefore; *noch*, nor; *übrigens'*, *übrigens*, besides. *Da kam der Mann*, Then came the man; *Mithin' irrt sich dein Bruder*, Consequently your brother mistakes. Excepting *da*, all of them may likewise be put after the verb; as, *Der Mann glaubt daher'*, The man thinks therefore; *Ich zweifle jedoch'*, I doubt however. *Ferner*, *folg'lich*, *hingegen*, *indessen*, *ingleich'en*, *übrigens'*, *übrigens*, may even stand between the subject and the verb: *Der Verfasser ferner behauptet*, The author moreover maintains. *Also*, therefore; *doch*, but; *entweder*, either; *weder*, neither; *zwar*, indeed; are to be added to the foregoing: for when they begin a sentence, they may, like these, bring the subject after the verb, though it is not necessary. It is right to say, *Also der Bruder hat geschrieben*, The brother then has written; and, *Also hat der Bruder geschrieben*. Likewise thus: *Der Bruder hat also geschrieben*, and *Der Bruder also hat geschrieben*. By this transposition, the force of the sentence may be varied, which is no small advantage in composition. The word *nämlich*, namely, which should be considered as a conjunction, may be included among those last mentioned: but when at the beginning of a sentence, it never causes the subject to be put after the verb.

## Exercises.

If you do not go immediately. Then we rejoiced. She nevertheless forgave him. Consequently his assertion rests on a wrong conclusion. Namely, the question arises, whether we shall remain or not. But the Tyrolese were not discouraged. This supposition also may easily be refuted.

if, *wenn*.  
 immediately, *sogleich'*.  
 to go, *ge'hen*, *irr*.  
 then, *da*.

to rejoice, *sich freu'en*.  
 nevertheless, *den'noch*.  
 to forgive, *verge'ben*, *irr*.  
 consequently, *demnach'*.



to rest, <i>beru'h'en</i> .	or, <i>o'd'er</i> .
assertion, <i>Behaup'tung, f.</i>	but, <i>a'ber</i> .
upon, <i>auf. (Dat.)</i>	Tyrolese, <i>Tyro's'er, m. 3. a. a.</i>
wrong, <i>falsch</i> .	discouraged, <i>entmu'thigt.</i>
conclusion, <i>Schluss, m. 3. b. b.</i>	supposition, <i>Bermu'thung, f.</i>
namely, <i>na'm'lich</i> .	also, <i>auch</i> .
question, <i>Fra'ge, f.</i>	may be, <i>la'sst sich (literally,</i>
to arise, <i>entste'h'en</i> .	<i>suffers itself.)</i>
whether, <i>ob</i> .	easily, <i>leicht</i> .
to remain, <i>blei'ben</i> .	to refute, <i>widerse'gen</i> .

## CHAPTER IX.

## INTERJECTIONS.

The interjection stands quite by itself; it neither governs nor is governed by any other part of speech. Therefore, the nominative and vocative, being independent cases, that is, such as are not governed by a preceding word, are most proper after interjections. *Ach! ich un'glu'cklicher Mensch, Ah me! unhappy mortal! Ei! der Schalk! Ah! the rogue! O! was fu'r ein Scheu'sal! O! what a horrible object! Ach! lie'ber Freund! Ah! beloved friend! O! theu'erster Va'ter, O! dearest father!*

The genitive case is found after interjections: for example, *Ach! des E'lendes, Ah! the misery! O! der Freu'de, Oh! what joy! Ach! des Un'dankbaren, Ah! the ungrateful wretch! Pfui! des scham'losen Men'schen! Fie! what a shameless man!*

The dative of advantage, or disadvantage, occurs after certain terms, that may be called interjections, though they are not strictly of that description; as, *Wohl ihm! Happy him! — Wohl dem Men'schen, Happy the man! — Weh mir! Woe is me!*

The position of the interjection is arbitrary; it may be placed wherever it presents itself, according to the emotion of the speaker or writer.

# BOOK III.

## PROSODY.

Prosody, containing the principles of syllabic division, quantity, accent, and verse, may be considered as the *syntax* of phonology, *i. e.* the doctrine of the sounds of the language, the elements of which form the first part of this grammar. See Book I. Part I. Ch. 4.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.\*

“IN the German language the division of words into syllables is not founded upon *derivation*, but on *pronunciation*; we therefore follow the principle, Divide as you speak.” †

1. The letters *ch*, *sch*, *ph*, and *th*, when they form simple consonants, can never be disconnected on account of any alteration of the word in which they occur; as, *Luch*, cloth, *Zu:ches* (not *Zuc:hcs*); *Tausch*, exchange, *tau:schen*, to exchange, (not *tauf:chen*); *Philosoph*, philosopher, *Philosv:phen*, philosophers; *Rath*, counsellor, *Rã:the*, counsellors.

2. The consonant *n* before *g* or *k* is not to be pronounced separately, although a vowel should follow the *g* or *k*; because the combination of *n* with *g* or *k* affects the pronunciation of both letters, by giving them a nasal sound. Thus the true sound of the verbs *sing'en*, to sing, and *danf'en*, to thank, would be spoiled by separating them in this manner, *sin:gen*, *dan:kcn*.

---

\* The mode of dividing words into syllables would not have been ranked among the parts of prosody, if this division were not founded altogether on principles of elocution.

† Heinsius's German Grammar.

3. A word compounded of several words is divided according to the words of which it consists. Thus *Werkstatt*, workshop, is divided *Werk-statt*; *vollenden*, to perfect, *voll-enden*.

4. A long vowel or a diphthong, followed by a simple or compound consonant, is pronounced with this consonant, if it terminates the word; as, *grün*, green; *meist*, most: but if a vowel with or without other letters is added to its end, the consonant, which before terminated the word, becomes the initial of the additional syllable; as, *grüner*, greener; *Meister*, master.

5. If a short vowel is followed by a double consonant and a vowel, the two consonants of which the double one consists, are commonly separated in pronunciation and spelling, the first of them being joined with the preceding vowel, and the second with the subsequent vowel; as, *Schiffe*, vessels; *Wetter*, weather.

6. A short vowel, followed by one or more consonants and a vowel, is commonly joined in pronunciation with the consonant by which it is followed; as, *Woch-e*, week; *Büsch-e*, bushes; *scher-zen*, to jest; *Fen-ster*, window.

*Observation.* Many German authors divide words into syllables according to *derivation*, without regarding their pronunciation; and others divide partly according to the former and partly according to the latter. We have in this grammar endeavoured to divide every word conformably to its true pronunciation, — taking together for each syllable so many letters as are necessary to produce each of the component sounds of the word.

&

## CHAPTER II.

### QUANTITY.

The quantity of a syllable consists in the duration of its sound. The principal difference between the ancient Greek and Latin languages and the German as well as other modern languages, in respect to quantity, consists in two things. First, there are in the ancient languages but two different

times of duration by which the quantity of syllables is determined. They are either long or short; and there is but one kind of length and of shortness, the time of two short syllables being equal to one long syllable.\* In German there is a great variety of longer or shorter syllables: thus in the word *Wohnungen*, habitations, the syllable *Woh* is longer than *nunq*, which surpasses in length the final syllable *en*.

The German also differs from the ancient languages in its not recognising the principle of *position*, that is, the effect of the meeting of two consonants, by which in the ancient languages the preceding syllable is rendered long. For although the concurrence of consonants has some influence upon quantity in German, yet this influence consists in nothing else than the natural effect of several consonants upon pronunciation. They lengthen a syllable by obstructing its utterance. Thus *ein* (indef. art.) is shorter than *eins*, one thing, and this is shorter than *einst*, once.

To facilitate the comprehension of quantity in German, three different times of duration have been adopted by prosodists, the long, the short, and the middle time, which are signified by these three signs, -, o, and o.† One long syllable is accounted equal to two short ones: while those of middle length are in themselves shorter than the former, and longer than the latter; but may sometimes be used as long, and sometimes as short syllables.

1. The following syllables are long: all monosyllabic nouns, adjectives, and verbs (if they are not used as auxiliaries); moreover, the radical syllable of every word, and those syllables which have the accent; ‡ as, *Wort*, word; *gut*, good; *sein* (*scyn*), to exist; *Erfreulichere*, something more pleasant, *antworten*, to answer.

---

\* Although there were syllables which were sometimes pronounced long and sometimes short (*ancipites*), yet they did not form a medium between long and short, but were pronounced either long or short.

† This sign (o) is here used to signify the *middle* time, as well as the *doubtful*, i. e. either short or long.

‡ The nature of this case will be explained in the next chapter.

2. The following syllables are short : the inseparable particles belonging to compound verbs, as, *be, ent, emp, er, ge, ver, zer*, (pages 108 — 110); the unaccented ending of words, as *e, de, te, el, em, en, er, es, et*; the definite article, and some adjective and adverbial endings, as, *en, lig, lich, and isch*. Examples, *berci'ten*, to prepare; *Tie'fe*, depth; (*er*) *lie'bet*, (he) loves; *ir'den*, earthen; *wa'hr'lich*, truly; *wei'bi'sch*, effeminate.

3. The following syllables are of middle length: monosyllabic pronouns, numerals, prepositions, conjunctions; some adverbs, interjections, and auxiliaries which consist of one syllable; the substantive endings, *end, ung, sein, niß, schaft, heit, feit*, (see page 20); and the adjective, adverbial, and participial endings, *bar, sam, ern, icht, ischt, end, elt, ert, erst*; as, *ich, I; drei, three; für, for; wenn, if; nun, now; o! O!*; (*er*) *hat (geliebt')*, (he) has (loved); *Bäu'm'lein*, little tree; *ge'har'ni'scht*, clad in armour; *zu'vör'der'st*, first.

*Observation.* It should be remembered, that this classification of syllables according to their length is only an approximation to a correct representation of their quantity, which in many cases depends on other circumstances besides those before mentioned; such as the sense of the words, the meeting of certain letters, and other things, which cannot be taught by rules, but must be acquired by induction, as one becomes familiar with the nature of the language.

### CHAPTER III.

#### ACCENT.

Accent consists in laying upon a particular syllable of a word, or upon a certain part of a sentence, a greater stress than upon the rest. Accordingly there are two kinds of accent, that which is laid upon a particular syllable, and that which belongs to a certain part of a sentence. In this sentence, *Die Grie'chen wa'ren sie'gr'eich*, The Greeks were victorious, the accent is to be placed on *Grie'chen*, *the Greeks*, if the intention of the writer is to exclude the idea that the enemies of the Greeks were victorious; but it must be

laid upon *sieg'reich*, *victorious*, if he meant to assert that the Greeks were not defeated, but gained the victory.\* This rule applies of course, as well to words of one, as of several syllables.

In order to determine which of several *syllables* of a word has the accent, we must, according to the above principle, examine which of them is the most important. The relative importance of each syllable, on which the place of the accent depends, is determined by the following rule. The greatest stress, and consequently the accent, lies generally on the *radical* syllable of the word, unless it be compounded with another word which implies a negation or limitation of the radical word. In this case the word which is joined as a limitation takes the *principal* accent; and the radical syllable of the main word retains only a *secondary* accent. Thus the words *ge'ben*, to give; *Gesell'schaft*, company; and most other words, have only one accent, viz. on the radical syllable of each of them (*geb*, *sell*). But in the words *auf'ge'ben*, to give up, *Rei'segesell'schaft*, company for travelling, the original words are essentially modified by the additions *auf*, *Rei'se*; these therefore take the principal accent, while only a secondary stress remains on the radical word. In speaking, the principal accent is generally expressed by the falling and the secondary accent by the rising inflection of the voice; in writing, the former is marked by the sign (´), and the latter by the sign (˘), after the last letter of the accented syllable.

It is to be observed that the accent is not moved from the radical syllable of a word on account of the addition of a syllable which either has no meaning by itself, or, at least, by being joined to another word, takes entirely the nature of those particles which have no meaning except in connexion with other words. This inseparable connexion makes them to be considered as parts of the radical word, rather than as limitations of its original meaning. Thus, with respect to compound verbs, the inseparable particles, *be*, *ge*, *ent*, &c (pages 108 — 110), do not alter the place of the accent; while all the

---

\* Accordingly the question, which of several words in a sentence is to have the accent, cannot be determined by the part of speech to which each of these words belongs, but only by the degree of importance which the meaning of the sentence assigns to each of them.

separable particles, as *an*, *on*, *ab*, *off*, *aus*, *out*, produce that effect. Examples : *set'zen*, to place ; *verset'zen*, to displace ; *ab'set'zen*, to depose ; *ge'hen*, to go ; *überge'hen* (inseparable), to pass over without noticing ; *ü'berge'hen* (separable), to go over to a different party. Those words, however, which are compounded with *un*, form exceptions ; because this negative particle does not occur by itself, and nevertheless produces so great an alteration of the sense that it generally takes the principal accent ; as, *freund'lich*, friendly ; *un'freundlich*, unfriendly ; *Fall*, case ; *Un'fall*, accident. The verb *ant'wor'ten*, to answer, composed of the ancient verb *wor'ten*, to represent in words, and the inseparable *ant*, forms a similar exception. In some instances the sense of the sentence and euphony alone can decide which of two syllables ought to have the principal, and which the secondary accent ; whether, for example, we ought to pronounce *voll'kom'men*, or *voll'kom'men*, perfect ; *un'entbehr'lich*, or *un'entbehr'lich*, indispensable. Sometimes even an unaccented syllable may be marked by a particular oratorical accent ; as in this phrase, *Die'se ha'ben un die'se Eh're sich be'wor'ben, a'ber Kei'ner hat sie er'wor'ben*, Many have aspired to this honor, but no one has obtained it.

Foreign words, which are Germanized by omitting the endings *es*, *us*, *us*, *ius*, *o*, *a*, &c., have the accent commonly on the final syllable ; as, *Achill'* (Achilles) ; *Olymp'* (Olympus) ; *Consulat'* (consulatus) ; *Virgil'* (Virgilius) ; *Apoll'* (Apollo) ; *Diplom'* (diploma).

*Observation.* Accent must not be confounded with quantity. The latter consists in the duration of the sound of a syllable ; while the accent marks the degree of emphasis employed in pronouncing certain syllables or words. If the accent is on a long syllable, it has no influence upon its quantity. But when it happens to fall on a short syllable, the accent does not actually make the syllable a long one, yet it produces a similar effect on its pronunciation ; that is, the rapid and emphatic manner in which the accented syllable is uttered, is followed by a pause preceding the pronunciation of the unaccented syllables ; and this pause, together with the accented syllable, equals the time of a long syllable, according to the above principles of quantity. Examples : *Müt'ter*, mother ; *Was'ser*, water.

## CHAPTER IV.

## GERMAN VERSE.

The German verse rests on a double foundation, Rhythm, or harmonious measure; and Consonance, or agreement of sounds, which is exemplified principally in *rhyme*. In the ancient Greek and Latin poetry, rhythm alone constituted the verse. For although we find rhyme sometimes employed (intentionally, as it seems), it must be considered as an incidental play upon certain sounds, rather than as an element of versification. In German, as in other modern languages, the principle still prevails, that there may be verses without rhyme, but none without rhythm. Nevertheless it is certain, that in some verses the rhythm, and in others the rhyme (or some other kind of consonance), determines the character of the verse.

§ 1. *Of Rhythm.*

The German language is capable of imitating all the ancient Greek and Roman metres; accordingly all the classical poetry of the ancients, even the choruses of the dramatic poets, have been translated into German verses of the same kind. But, in indigenous German versification, a freer use has been, and may be made of the rhythmical powers of the language, for adapting the measure entirely to the meaning of the words, without confining the poet to other rules than that measurement of time to which the composer of music is likewise subjected.

1. *The ancient Metres.* In using the ancient metres for German poetry, the above principles of quantity ought to be observed. The accent has no *direct* influence in this kind of versification; except so far as it coincides with the principles of quantity, and preserves euphony in general.

Each foot of the ancient metres may be rendered in German either by one or by more words. It will be sufficient to give here examples of all the feet of two and of three syllables.



## a. Feet of two syllables.

Spondee,	--	Kunst'werk, work of art.
Pyrrhich'ius,	υ υ	Syba-rit', * Sybarite.
Trochee,	- υ	al'le, all.
Iambus,	υ -	Gewalt', force.

## b. Feet of three syllables.

Molossus,	---	Feldhaupt'mann, commander.
Trib'rachys,	υ υ υ	gebene-deit', * blessed.
Antibacchi'us,	-- υ	Ein'wohner, inhabitant.
Bacchi'us,	υ --	Gewalt'that, violence.
Amphim'acer,	- υ -	ü'bergang, transaction.
Amphib'rachys,	υ - υ	Gefüh'le, feelings.
Dac'tylus,	- υ υ	Wan'derer, traveller.
An'apæst,	υ υ -	Diamant', diamond.

The following specimens will be sufficient to illustrate the use of ancient metres in German.

*Hexameter and Pentameter.*

- υ υ | - υ υ | -, υ υ | - υ υ | - υ υ | - υ  
 - υ υ | - υ υ | - | - υ υ | - υ υ | -

Plöz'lich erscholl' Schlacht'ruf; wild schmet'terten al'le Trom-  
 pe'ten,  
 Rasch wie der Klang in der Luft, stürm'ten die Fein'de mir  
 an.

Suddenly sounded the battle cry; wildly clanged all the  
 trumpets,  
 Quick as the clangor in the air, we rushed against the enemy.

---

\* As every word of more than one syllable has one of these long, the pyrrhichius and tribrachys can be formed only by monosyllables, or by the initial or final syllables of words of more than two syllables. Thus in the above examples the two first syllables of *Sybarit'* form the pyrrhichius, and the three first syllables of *gebenedeit'* form the tribrachys.

*The Sapphic Stanza.\**

- u		--	-	u	-	u	-	u
- u		--	-	u	-	u	-	u
- u		--	-	u	-	u	-	u

Un'ser Tag'werk en'det der stil'le Sab'bat,  
 Wie des Mit'tags Glut die erschn'te Mond'nacht.  
 Strebt und hofft! bis end'lich des ew'gen Sonn'tags  
 Mor'gen empor'steigt.

Our daily labor the still sabbath terminates, as the desired moonlight night (*terminates*) the heat of noonday. Strive, and hope! till finally the morning of the eternal Sunday rises.

*Observation.* It is an important principle particularly in ancient metres, that the natural division of every verse into words, should correspond in some measure with its division into feet, and the general character of the verse. Thus, a too frequent repetition of the amphibrachys spoils the character of the hexameter; as,

Lieb'lich ertön'ten die Flö'ten, es schweb'ten die Tän'zer im  
 Krei'se.

Sweetly sounded the flutes, the dancers moved in a circle.

This verse might be mended in this manner;

Dort tönt Flö'tenmuſik, dort ſchwing'en ſich Tän'zer im Krei'se.  
 There sounds the music of flutes, there the dancers move  
 in a circle.

2. *The German Rhythm.* The metres which are not borrowed from the Greeks, but originally German, are on the

---

\* The Sapphic stanza is here divided according to the simple mode of the old grammarians; because we think it preferable to that of Ausonius. We also think that the *uniform* cæsure after the first syllable of the third foot, as we find it in the odes of Horace, cannot be considered as an improvement on the original metrical construction which prevails in the poetical remains of Sappho.

whole founded upon the same principles of quantity, and may generally be analyzed into feet, like the ancient metres. But these principles of quantity and metrical division are modified by accent, euphony, and the sentiment that is to be expressed: so that frequently the character of the verse cannot be determined by each of its parts, but only by the whole of a poetical composition. Accordingly in native German poetry we find many deviations from the above stated common rules of quantity which ought strictly to be adhered to in imitating the ancient metres. Thus, a short syllable may be used for a long one particularly when it ends in a vowel, or in a liquid consonant; as in the Iambic measure of Bürger's *Lenore*.

5  
Wie don'ner'ten die Brüd'eu !  
How the bridges thunder !

On the other hand, long syllables may be used for short ones, particularly when, from the sense they express, they are comparatively of little importance in the sentence in which they occur. Thus in Schiller's *Maria Stuart*, Mary says, —

Dort legt ein Fisch'er den Rach'eu an ;  
Dieses e'leude Fahr'zeug könn'te mich ret'ten !

There a fisher fastens his boat to the shore ;  
This miserable vessel might rescue me !

Here the first as well as the second syllable of *die'ses* is used as short, so that this word together with the first syllable of *e'leude* forms an anapæst, and all the emphasis falls on *e'leude* (even such a *miserable* skiff as this, &c.)

But in most cases of this kind it cannot be said strictly, that short syllables are used as long ones, or long syllables as short ones. A good reader will take care, that the measure which would be disturbed by pronouncing a certain syllable according to its natural quantity, be restored by an appropriate pause, or by protracting or shortening the subsequent or preceding words, so as to restore the general character of the verse.

The most common measure is the *Iambic*, frequently interspersed with the spondee or anapæst, or a pyrrhichius used as an iambus. The spondee and the anapæst occur among

the iamboes not only in the odd places, as in the Greek trimeter, but in every place. Examples,

- -  
Dank, Dank die'sen freund'lich grü'nen Bäu'men!  
(Schiller.)

O thanks, thanks to these friendly green trees!

- -  
Ja, in der Fer'ne fühlt sich die Macht  
Wenn zwei sich red'lich lie'ben. (Göthe.)

Yes, at a great distance the power is felt, when two love each other truly.

Sometimes the iambic measure is interrupted by a trochee, for the sake of greater emphasis.

- -  
Kann ich doch für mich selbst nicht sprech'en, oh'ne euch  
Schwer zu verfla'gen. (Schiller.)

I indeed cannot speak for myself without accusing you grievously.

Next to the iambic, the *trochaic* measure is most frequent; oftentimes mixed with spondees and dactyls;

- - - -  
Die weit lie'ber ein frem'des Lied  
Als ihr eig'nes hö'ren. (Göthe.)

Who like to hear the song of another, rather than their own.

• The *amphibrachys* also not unfrequently constitutes the character of the verse.

Es don'nern die Hö'hen, es zit'tert der Steg,  
Nicht grauet dem Schüt'zen auf schwind'lichem Weg.

The heights thunder, the bridge trembles, the hunter is not afraid on the dizzy path.

Other verses derive their character from the dactyle, the anapæst, or other measures. Besides there is a great number of mixed verses; in some of them a regular change of cer-

tain feet is observed, while others, like the hymns of Pindar and the choruses of the Greek drama, vary according to the sentiment of the poet.

Most of the *regular* verses and stanzas, are the same in German and in English; particularly in modern German poetry, since the bold and high-wrought versification of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries has given way to simpler measures.

We will add a specimen of poetry, the rhythm of which is not determined by any certain measure, but by the sense of the words alone. It is taken from Schiller's *Maria Stuart* When the queen after a long and close imprisonment had obtained permission to walk in the park near the castle, she says to Lady Kennedy, her nurse, who vainly endeavoured to follow the quick step of the queen, —

Laß mich der neu'en Frei'heit genie'sen,  
 Laß mich ein Kind sein, sei es mit!  
 Und auf dem grü'nen Teppich der Wie'sen  
 Prü'fen den leich'ten, geflü'gelten Schritt.  
 Bin ich dem fin'stern Gefäng'niß entstie'gen,  
 Hält sie mich nicht mehr, die traur'ige Gruft?  
 Laß mich in vol'len, in dur'stigen Bü'gen  
 Trink'en die frei'e, die himm'lische Luft.  
 O Dank, Dank die'sen freund'lich grü'nen Bäu'men,  
 Die mei'nes Ker'kers Mäu'ern mir verstec'ken!  
 Ich will mich frei und glück'lich träu'men,  
 Warum' aus mei'nem sü'sen Wahn mich wec'ken?  
 Umfängt' mich nicht der wei'te Him'melschoos?  
 Die Blic'ke, frei und fess'ellos,  
 Erg'e'hen sich in un'gemessnen Räu'men.  
 Dort, wo die grau'en Neb'elberge ra'gen,  
 Fängt mei'nes Rei'ches Grän'ze an;  
 Und die'se Wol'ken, die nach Mit tag ja'gen,  
 Sie su'chen Frank'reichs fer'nen D'cean.

El'lende Wol'ken! Seg'ler der Lü'fte!  
 Wer mit euch wan'derte, mit euch schiff'te!  
 Grü'ßet mir freund'lich mein Ju'gendland!  
 Ich bin gefang'en, ich bin in Ban'den,  
 Ach, ich hab' kei'nen an'dern Gesand'ten!  
 Frei in Lü'ften ist eu're Bahn,  
 Ihr seid nicht die'ser Kö'nigin un'terthan.

Let me enjoy the new freedom,  
 Let me be a child, be one with me !  
 And on the green carpet of the meadows  
 (*Let me*) try the light, winged step.  
 Am I arisen from the dark prison,  
 Does the sad vault no longer hold me ?  
 Let me in full and thirsty draughts  
 Drink in the free, the heavenly air.  
 O thanks, thanks to these friendly green trees,  
 Which conceal from me the walls of my dungeon !  
 I will dream myself free and happy ;  
 Why wake me from my sweet delusion ?  
 Does not the wide canopy of heaven surround me ?  
 My looks, free and unconfined,  
 Wander over immense spaces.  
 There, where the grey, misty mountains rise,  
 The boundary of my kingdom commences ;  
 And these clouds which hasten towards the south,  
 Seek the distant ocean of France.

Hastening clouds, sailors of the air,  
 Would that I could wander and sail with you !  
 Salute for me friendly the land of my youth !  
 I am imprisoned, I am in fetters,  
 Alas, I have no other messenger !  
 Free in the air is your path,  
 You are not subject to this queen.

The first three lines consist of alternate dactyles and trochees. From the fourth line the emphasis rises, as Mary contrasts her present freedom with her late imprisonment ; and the metre hastens on in dactyls, to the eighth verse. In the ninth verse the feeling of gratitude changes the measure into the iambic, which continues to the nineteenth. From the twentieth verse her desire of deliverance from captivity in England, awakened by the sight of the distant mountains of Scotland, and the clouds flying towards France, changes the metre again into that of the first three lines, which describe her delight in her deliverance from her dungeon. The alternate dactyles and trochees sometimes terminate with a supernumerary (catalectic) syllable, as *mit, Schritt, Gruff, Luft*.

§ 2. *Of Consonance.*

Under the word *consonance* we comprehend three principal resemblances between successive sounds of the language, viz. *rhyme*, *assonance*, and *alliteration*.

1. *Rhyme* consists in the identity of certain vowels and consonants. This resemblance may exist between one, or two, or three syllables occurring in different words; as, *Schild*, shield, and *Bild*, image; *le'ben*, life, and *ge'ben*, to give; *min'iglich*, lovely, and *in'iglich*, intimately.

In a rhyme of more than one syllable the last may sometimes consist of a monosyllabic word; as,

Sei'nen Mei'ster  
liebt und preist er.

He loves and praises his master.

The rhyming syllables ought to be of the same quantity; and in rhymes of several syllables the principal emphasis should be on the first. Therefore we cannot make *sterb'lich*, mortal, rhyme with *erblich'*, imperfect of *erbsei'chen*, to grow pale; but we may make it rhyme with *erb'lich*, hereditary.

The rhyme is commonly found at the end, but sometimes (particularly in ancient German poetry) also in the course of the verse; as,

Aus Nacht erwacht'  
Der Son'ne Pracht.

Out of the night awakes the splendor of the sun.

In a monosyllabic rhyme the beginning of the rhyming syllables should not be the same, unless the two words express quite a different meaning. In rhymes of more than one syllable this remark applies to the first of those syllables. — Thus we cannot make *me'h'ren*, to augment, rhyme with *verme'h'ren*, to augment: but it is allowable to say,

Jeder ed'le Mensch vereh're  
Die'sen Mär'tyrer der Pflicht und Eh're!

Let every noble man revere this martyr of duty and honor.

We must notice here two kinds of impure rhymes which occur even in the works of the best poets. They consist in making to rhyme together vowels or consonants of a similar but not the same sound. With respect to vowels, we remark as being made to rhyme together, *e*, *ā*, and *ō*; *i* and *ī*; *ei* and *eu*; as, *Se'gen*, blessing, *wā'gen*, to weigh, and *mō'gen*, to be able; *Feind*, enemy; and *Freund*, friend. In regard to consonants, the sounds of *d* and *t* are particularly liable to be confounded; as, thus *Fel'der*, fields, and *Bel'ter*, palfrey.

2. *Assonance* consists in the rhyming of the vowels alone, and consequently differs from the full rhyme by the discrepancy between the consonants; as, *mild*, mild, and *Kind*, child; *lie'be*, love, and *Frie'de*, peace.

Since assonance does not so evidently combine several verses as rhyme, it is commonly oftentimes repeated, so that frequently the same assonance connects a whole poem. — Assonance is not so frequently used as rhyme.

3. *Alliteration* consists in the repetition of certain consonants particularly at the beginning of words. It is most common that the same consonant which begins the first verse, is repeated in the course of the same, and then at the beginning of the next verse. Example,

Wohl in des Wal'des  
Wil'dester Ein'samkeit  
Hört' ich den Har'fentlang,  
Hört' ich den Held'ruf.

Indeed in the wildest solitude of the forest I heard the sound of the harps, I heard the call of the heroes.

Alliteration, which was common in the old Scandinavian poetry, is now rarer than the two other kinds of consonance.



## APPENDIX.

---

### I.

As an exercise in reading and translating for beginners, we add here a passage of the New Testament, from the German version of Leander Van Esz.

#### ACTS ix. 1 — 28.

1. Sau'lus schnaub'te noch Wuth und Mord wi'der die Jüng'er des Herrn, ging zu dem Oberpriester.

2. Und lies sich von ihm Voll'machtsbriefe nach Damas'kus an die Synago'gen geben, kraft wel'cher er Män'ner und Frau'en, die er als An'hänger die'ser Leh're fän'de, gebun'den nach Jeru'salem füh'ren könn'te.

3. Auf die'ser Rei'se, schon na'he bei Damas'kus, umstrahl'te ihn plö's'lich ein Licht vom Him'mel.

4. Er fiel auf die Er'de, und hör'te ei'ne Stim'me, die zu ihm sprach: Saul, Saul, warum' verfolgst' du mich?

5. Er sprach: Herr! wer bist du? Der Herr sag'te: Ich bin Je'sus, den du verfol'gest. Es wird dir schwer werden, wi'der den Stach'el aus'zuschlagen.

6. Zit'ternd und angst'voll sprach er: Herr, was willst du, daß ich thun soll?

7. Der Herr ant'wortete ihm: Ste'he auf, und ge'he in die Stadt, da wird dir gesagt' wer'den, was du thun sollst. Be'stürzt' stan'den sei'ne Rei'segefährten da; denn sie hör'ten zwar die Stim'me, sa'h'en a'ber Nie'mand.

8. Sau'lus stand von der Er'de auf, konn'te a'ber, da er die Augen öff'nete, Nie'mand se'hen. Da nah'men sie ihn an der Hand, und leit'eten ihn nach Damas'kus.

9. Drei Ta'ge lang sah er nicht, und nahm we'der Spei'se noch Trank zu sich.

10. Nun war zu Damas'kus ein Jüng'er, Na'mens Anani'as; zu dem sprach der Herr in ei'ner Erschei'nung: Anani'as! Er sprach: Herr, hier bin ich.

11. Da sag'te der Herr zu ihm: Geh' unverzüglich in die so'genannte gera'de StraÙe und erkun'dige dich in Ju'das Hau'se nach ei'nem Saulus von Tar'sus; denn e'ben jezt be'tet die'ser Mann,

12. Und hat in ei'ner Erschei'nung ei'nen Mann, Na'mens Anani'as, zu sich herein'kommen gese'hen, der ihm die Hän'de auflegt, um ihn wie'der se'hend zu mach'en.

13. Anani'as erwie'derte Ihm: Herr, es ha'ben mir Vie'le von die'sem Man'ne erzählt', wie viel Bö'ses er dei'nen Hei'ligen zu Jeru'salem zu'gefügt;

14. Und auch hier hat er von den O'berpriestern Voll'macht, Alle in Ban'de zu le'gen, die dei'nen Na'men an'rufen.

15. Der Herr sprach zu ihm: Ge'he nur hin; e'ben die'ser ist mir ein aus'erlesenes Werk'zeug, mich unter Hei'den, vor Kö'nigen und den Kin'dern Israels bekannt' zu mach'en.

16. Denn ich wer'de ihm zei'gen, wieviel' er für mei'nen Na'men lei'den soll.

17. Anani'as ging also hin, kam in das Haus, leg'te ihm die Hän'de auf und sag'te: Bru'der Saul! der Herr, (Je'sus, der dir auf dem We'ge, den du ka'mest, erschien') hat mich gesandt', damit' du wie'der se'hend und voll des hei'ligen Gei'stes wer'dest.

18. Sogleich' war's, wie wenn Schup'pen von sei'nen Augen fie'len; er konn'te wie'der se'hen, stand auf und lies sich tau'fen.

19. Dann aß er, und stärk'te sich wie'der. Noch ei'nige Ta'ge blieb er bei den Jüng'ern zu Damas'kus;

20. Und sogleich' predigte er Je'sum in den Synago'gen, daß er der So'h'n So't't'es sei.

21. Alle, die ihn hör'ten, erstaun'ten und sprächen: Ist er es nicht, der zu Jeru'salem vertil'gen woll'te die, wel'che je'nen Na'men an'rufen? Ja gera'de da'rum ist er hieher' gekom'men, um sie in Verhaft' zu neh'men, und an die O'berpriester zu überlie'fern.

22. Saulus gewann' indes'sen im'mer mehr an Kraft, so daß er die Ju'den, die zu Damas'kus wohn'ten, ganz in Verwir'ung sezt'e, indem er stand'haft behaup'tete: die'ser ist Christus.

23. Ei'ne gera'ume Zeit nachher' hiel'ten die Ju'den Rath zusam'men, ihn un'zubringen.

24. U'ber ih're Nach'stellungen wur'den dem Saulus be'kannt'. Inzwi'schen hielt man Tag und Nacht die Tho're besetzt', um ihn zu töd'ten.

25. Da nah'men ihn die Jüng'er des Nachts und lie'sen ihn in ei'nem Kor'be an der Mau'er hinab'.

26. Da er hierauf nach Jeru'salem kam, such'te er sich an die Jüng'er anzuschließen; a'ber al'le fürchteten ihn, glaub'ten nicht, daß er ein Jüng'er sei.

27. Da nahm sich Bar'nabas sei'ner an, führ'te ihn zu den Aposteln und erzähl'te ih'nen, wie er auf sei'ner Rei'se den Herrn gese'hen und daß die'ser zu ihm gere'det, und wie freimüthig er zu Damas'kus für den Namen Jesu sich erklärt ha'be.

28. Von der Zeit an stand er zu Jeru'salem in vertrau'tem Umgange mit ih'nen und verkündigte freimüthig den Namen Jesu, des Herrn.

## II.

## FAMILIAR DIALOGUES.

## Er'stes Gespräch'.

*First Dialogue.*

Gu'ten Mor'gen, mein Herr, or  
Herr N. (i. e. the family  
name), Frau N, or *Madame*,  
mein Fräu'lein, or Jung'  
fer N. or *Mademoiselle*.

Good morning, Sir, or Mr. N.,  
Madam or Mrs. N., Miss N.

Gu'ten Tag, mein Herr, &c.

Good day, Sir, &c.

Gu'ten Abend.

Good evening.

Gu'te Nacht.

Good night.

Wie befin'den Sie sich?

How do you do?

Sehr wohl, ich dank'e Ih'nen.

Very well, I thank you.

Es ist mir lieb Sie zu se'hen.

I am glad to see you.

Ich hoffe Sie sind wohl.

I hope you are well.

Nicht sehr wohl.

Not very well.

Ich ha'be Sie lang'e nicht ge-  
se'hen.

I have not seen you for a long  
time.

Wo sind Sie gewe'sen?

Where have you been?

Ich bin in Paris' gewesen.	I have been in Paris.
Wie befin'det sich Ihr Herr Bru'der?	How does your brother do?
Er ist ziem'lich wohl.	He is tolerably well.
Ich glaube, er befin'det sich wohl.	I believe he is well.
Er befand' sich ges'tern A'bends wohl.	He was well last night.
Wie befin'den sich Ihr Herr Va'ter und Ih're Frau Mut'ter?	How are your father and mother?
Mei'ne Mut'ter befin'det sich nicht wohl.	My mother is not well.
Sie befand' sich ges'tern früh nicht wohl.	She was ill yesterday morn- ing.
Das thut mir leid.	I am sorry for it.

## Zwei'tes Gespräch'.

*Second Dialogue.*

Wie viel Uhr ist es?	} What o'clock is it?
Was ist die Uhr?	
Es ist ein Uhr.	It is one o'clock.
Es ist zwölf Uhr.	It is twelve o'clock.
Es ist ein Vier'tel nach zwölf.	} It is a quarter past twelve.
Es ist ein Vier'tel auf eins.	
Es ist halb ein Uhr.	} It is half past twelve.
Es ist halb eins.	
Es ist drei Vier'tel auf eins.	It wants a quarter of one.
Es ist ein Vier'tel auf drei.	It is a quarter past two.
Es ist zwanzig Minu'ten nach zwei.	It is twenty minutes past two.
Es ist zwanzig Minu'ten vor acht.	It is twenty minutes to eight.
Wie viel ist es auf zehn?	How much does it want of ten?
Es fehlt zehn Minu'ten zu zehn.	} It wants ten minutes of ten.
Es ist funfzig Minu'ten auf zehn.	
Es ist zehn Minu'ten vor zehn.	
Wann sind Sie gekom'men?	When did you come?

Ich kam un'gefähr um vier Uhr.	I came about four o'clock.
Es schlug e'ben sie'ben Uhr.	It just struck seven o'clock.
Hat es schon geschla'gen?	Has it already struck?
Es wird bald acht schla'gen.	It will soon strike eight.
Wie viel schlägt es jetzt?	What does it strike now?
Es muß auf den Schlag neun sein.	It must be about striking nine.
Das ist Ih're Zeit zu früh/ stücken, nicht wahr?	That is your time for break- fasting, is it not?

## Drit'tes Gespräch'.

*Third Dialogue.*

Sprech'en Sie Deutsch, mein Herr?	Do you speak German, Sir?
Ich sprech'e es ein we'nig.	I speak it a little
Ich verste'he es bes'ser als ich es sprech'en kann.	I understand it better than I can speak it.
Sprech'en Sie mit mir.	Speak with me.
Verste'hen Sie mich?	Do you understand me?
Sprech'en Sie mit ihm, (ihr.)	Speak with him, (her).
Ha'be ich rich'tig aus'gesprach- en?	Did I pronounce right?
Sie sprech'en sehr gut Deutsch.	You speak German very well.
Sind Sie in Deutsch'land ge- we'sen?	Have you been in Germany?
Nein, nie'mals.	No, never.
Wie lang'e ha'ben Sie ge- lernt'?	How long have you been learning?
Fünf Mo'nate.	Five months.
Das ist nur ei'ne kur'ze Zeit; ich wun'dere mich, daß Sie schon so gut sprech'en.	This is but a short time; I wonder you speak so well already.
Verste'hen Sie was Sie le- sen?	Do you understand what you read?
Ich verste'he mehr als ich re- den kann.	I understand more than I can speak.
Wie nen'nen Sie das auf Deutsch?	What do you call that in Ger- man?
lass'en Sie uns Deutsch sprech- en.	Let us speak German.

Das ist ein gu'tes Mit'tel es zu ler'nen.	That is a good way to learn it.
Mit wem sprech'en Sie?	With whom do you speak?
Was sa'gen Sie?	What do you say?
Wovon' sprech'en Sie?	Of what do you speak?
Sprech'en Sie zu mir?	Do you speak to me?
Sprech'en Sie ein we'nig lau'ter.	Speak a little louder.

## Vier'tes Gespräch'.

*Fourth Dialogue.*

Was ist es für Wet'ter?	What kind of weather is it?
Es ist schön (schö'nes) Wet'ter.	It is fine weather.
Scheint die Son'ne?	Does the sun shine?
Ja, mein Herr, und es ist sehr warm.	Yes, Sir, and it is very warm.
Das Wet'ter ist den gan'zen Tag schön gewe'sen.	The weather has been fine the whole day.
Wie ist das Wet'ter?	How is the weather?
Es ist nicht zu warm und nicht zu kalt.	It is neither too warm nor too cold.
Das Wet'ter hat sich geän'dert.	The weather has changed.
Es ist sehr win'dig.	It is very windy.
Die Wol'ken sind sehr dick.	The clouds are very thick.
Ich fürch'te wir wer'den Re'gen bekom'men.	I fear we shall have rain.
Es rie'selt, es wird reg'nen.	It drizzles, it will rain.
Es wird bald reg'nen.	It will soon rain.
Es fängt an zu reg'nen, schnei'en.	It begins to rain, to snow.
Es ist schlech'tes (schlecht) Wet'ter.	It is bad weather.
Es ist schmut'zig.	It is dirty (weather).
Es ist troc'ken, naß, reg'nicht, stür'misch, win'dig, verän'derliches Wet'ter.	It is dry, wet, rainy, stormy, windy, changeable weather.
Das Wet'ter klärt sich auf.	The weather clears up.
Dieser Re'gen wird bald vor'ü'ber sein.	This rain will soon be over.
Wir wer'den Don'ner ha'ben.	We shall have some thunder.
Der Don'ner rollt.	The thunder roars.

## Fünftes Gespräch.

## Fifth Dialogue.

Wo gehen Sie hin?

Ich gehe nach London.

Er geht nach Deutschland.

Wo wohnt er jetzt?

Er wohnt in der Stadt Hannover.

Er geht durch (über) Frankreich nach der Schweiz.

Er ist in (zu) Neapel, Rom, Wien gewesen.

Meine Schwester ist in (zu) Rom gewesen.

Mein Bruder war in Amsterdam gewesen.

Ich gehe auf das Land.

Wo kommen Sie her?

Ich komme von dem Lande.

Ich komme von (aus) der Stadt.

Ich komme aus (von) der Straße.

Wir kommen von der Börse.

Ich gehe nach Hause.

Ich komme aus (von) der Kirche.

Sie geht in die Kirche.

Er geht nach Hause.

Ich komme aus dem Zimmer.

Sie kommt aus der Stube.

Ich gehe in die Kammer, in die Küche, in den Keller, &c.

Sie sind in der Kammer, in der Küche, in dem Keller, in dem Hofe, &c.

Where are you going?

I am going to London.

He is going to Germany.

Where does he live now?

He lives in the town of Hannover.

He is going through (by the way of) France to Switzerland.

He has been in (at) Naples, Rome, Vienna.

My sister has been at Rome.

My brother had been in Amsterdam.

I am going to the country.

Where do you come from?

I come from the country.

I come from (out of) the city.

I come out of (from) the street.

We come from 'Change.

I am going home.

I come from church.

She is going to church.

He is going home.

I come out of the room.

She comes out of the parlour.

I am going into the chamber, into the kitchen, into the cellar, &c.

They are in the chamber, in the kitchen, in the cellar, in the yard, &c.

### III.

#### GERMAN ABBREVIATIONS.

A. C.	. . . . .	Anno Christi,	. . . . .	in the year of our Lord.
Antw.	. . . . .	Antwort,	. . . . .	answer.
A. T.	. . . . .	Altes Testament,	. . . . .	Old Testament.
Ausf.	. . . . .	Auslage,	. . . . .	edition.
Ausg.	. . . . .	Ausgabe,	. . . . .	edition.
ausg.	. . . . .	ausgenommen,	. . . . .	except.
B.	. . . . .	Buch, Band,	. . . . .	book, volume.
C. Cap., or Kap.	. . . . .	Capitel, or Kapitel,	. . . . .	chapter.
D.	. . . . .	Doctor,	. . . . .	Doctor.
d. h.	. . . . .	das heist,	. . . . .	that means.
d. i.	. . . . .	das ist,	. . . . .	i. e., viz.
dergl.	. . . . .	dergleichen,	. . . . .	of this kind.
Ev.	. . . . .	Evangeliuim,	. . . . .	Gospel.
Eu.	. . . . .	Euer,	. . . . .	your.
f. or folg.	. . . . .	folgend, ( <i>sing.</i> )	} the following.	
ff.	. . . . .	folgende, ( <i>plur.</i> )		
Fr.	. . . . .	Frau,	. . . . .	Lady, wife.
geb.	. . . . .	geboren,	. . . . .	born.
gest.	. . . . .	gestorben,	. . . . .	died.
Gr.	. . . . .	Groschen,	. . . . .	a coin in Germany, ( <i>groat.</i> )
h. S.	. . . . .	heilige Schrift,	. . . . .	Holy Scriptures.
Hr. Hrn.	. . . . .	Herr, Herrn,	. . . . .	Mr., Sir, Sirs, Messrs.
J. C.	. . . . .	Jesus Christus,	. . . . .	Jesus Christ.
l.	. . . . .	lies,	. . . . .	read.
M. or Maj.	. . . . .	Majestät,	. . . . .	Majesty.
Ms.	. . . . .	Manuscript,	. . . . .	Manuscript.
N. S.	. . . . .	Nachschrift,	. . . . .	Postscript.
N. T.	. . . . .	Neues Testament,	. . . . .	New Testament.



od.	oder,	or.
Rec.	Recensent,	reviewer, critic.
Rthlr.	Reichs Thaler,	rixdollar.
S.	Seite,	page (of a book).
S. or f.	siehe,	see, vide.
Se. Maj.	Seine Majestät,	His Majesty.
St.	Sanct,	Saint.
Thlr.	Thaler,	dollar.
u. a. m.	und andere mehr,	&c., farther.
u. d. g.	und dergleichen,	and the like.
u. s. f.	und so fort or ferner,	} &c.
u. s. m.	und so mehr,	
u. s. w.	und so weiter,	
V.	Vers,	verse.
v.	von,	of, from.
Z.	Zeile,	line.
z. B.	zum Beispiel,	} for example.
z. E.	zum Exempel,	

---

CAMBRIDGE:

CHARLES FOLSOM, PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY.







UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW

JUL 14 1915

JAN 25 1917

30m-1,'15

3500  
7/1/11

